



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### **Usage guidelines**

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### **About Google Book Search**

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

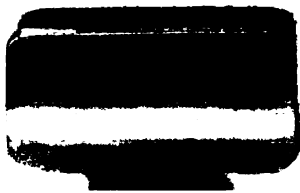


*copy*

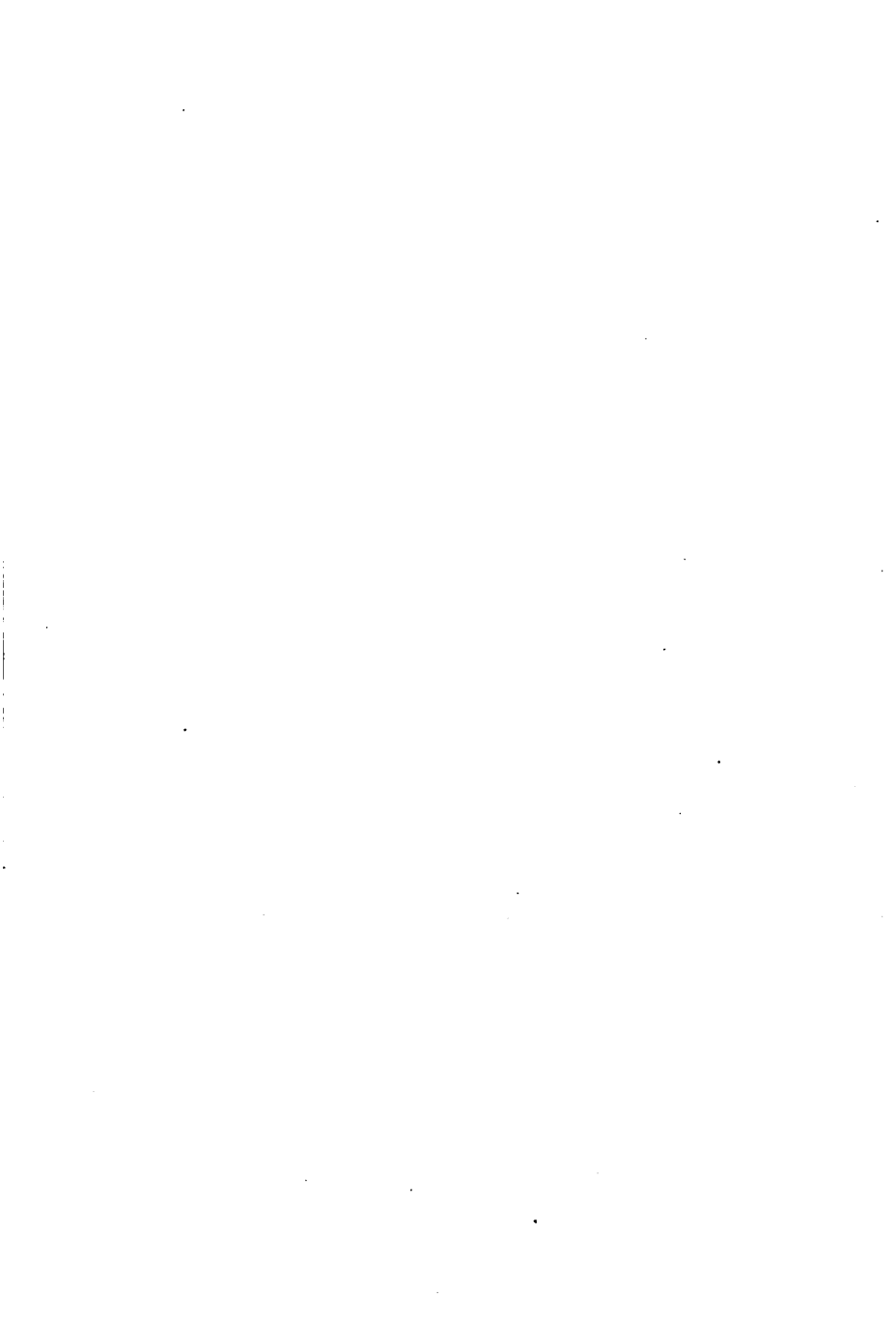
PRICE 25



786  
C673







# A SPANISH GRAMMAR

WITH PRACTICAL INTRODUCTORY  
LESSONS

BY

ALFRED COESTER, PH.D.

"

GINN AND COMPANY

BOSTON • NEW YORK • CHICAGO • LONDON  
ATLANTA • DALLAS • COLUMBUS • SAN FRANCISCO

TO THE  
ADMINISTRATIVE

PRESERVATION  
COPY ADDED  
MF 12/90

*Education dept.*

COPYRIGHT, 1912, BY  
ALFRED COESTER

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

415.12

**The Athenaeum Press**  
GINN AND COMPANY · PRO-  
PRIETORS · BOSTON · U.S.A.

## PREFACE

This book is the outcome of teaching Spanish for several years to different types of pupils. The author's purpose has been to supply a useful book to English-speaking students of Spanish. Usefulness has therefore been the standard in determining the arrangement of the material. The introductory lessons are easy and progressive, assuming little or no general knowledge of grammar and language. They attempt to take advantage of the strength of first impressions; for example, the use of **usted** is given prominence at the outset so that the pupil will be less likely at a later period to employ **tú** and the second singular in business correspondence. Other features of the book are, (1) exercises specially designed for drill on peculiarities of grammar that require habit to fix; (2) ample material for oral work; (3) a progressive vocabulary that attempts to include the commonest and hence most important words and phrases with many colloquial expressions that are necessary in social intercourse; (4) an order of development that has been proved of practical value.

In the first few lessons, sentences illustrative of the grammatical topic of the lesson have been given before the explanation, as it is intended that these sentences should be committed to memory before proceeding to the explanation. Special vocabularies to each lesson have been omitted because the preparation of such a special vocabulary is a useful exercise which is too often sacrificed in elementary books.

Part I furnishes an introduction to the chief characteristics of Spanish and is sufficient for a good working knowledge of the language. Part II takes up in systematic order those details of



grammar which were neglected or hastily passed over in the first part. As the second part will not be studied until the pupil finds his reading in a continued text, no Spanish exercises are given. On the other hand, abundant material is provided for the translation of English to Spanish. The sentences in these exercises are short, according to the author's principle of presenting to the pupil only a few difficulties at one time with ample practice on the point under discussion. As the English sentences are mainly translations of colloquial or literary Spanish, their rendering by the student should result in characteristically idiomatic expression.

The author wishes to thank Mr. E. S. Harrison for his suggestions and kindness in reading the manuscript and proof.

ALFRED COESTER

# CONTENTS

## PART I

### INTRODUCTORY LESSONS

LESSON	PAGE
I. CONJUGATION, PRESENT INDICATIVE. EXERCISE 1 . . . . .	10
II. GENDER AND NUMBER OF NOUNS. ARTICLES. EXERCISE 2 . . . . .	13
III. <b>Ser. Estar.</b> EXERCISE 3 . . . . .	16
IV. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES. EXERCISE 4 . . . . .	18
V. POSSESSION. DEMONSTRATIVES. EXERCISE 5 . . . . .	<u>21</u>
VI. PERSONAL SUBJECT PRONOUNS. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES. <b>Tener.</b> EXERCISE 6 . . . . .	24
VII. NUMERALS. DAYS. MONTHS. SEASONS. EXERCISE 7 . . . . .	27
VIII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. EXERCISE 8 . . . . .	32
IX. RADICAL-CHANGING VERBS. INDIRECT OBJECT. PERSONAL . a. EXERCISE 9 . . . . .	36
X. REFLEXIVE VERBS. EXERCISE 10 . . . . .	41
XI. PRETERIT TENSE. EXERCISE 11 . . . . .	45
XII. IMPERFECT TENSE. EXERCISE 12 . . . . .	49
XIII. PARTICIPLES. PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT TENSES. RELA- TIVES. EXERCISE 13 . . . . .	52
XIV. FUTURE TENSE AND CONDITIONAL. EXERCISE 14 . . . . .	57
XV. PERSONAL PRONOUNS. ADVERBS. EXERCISE 15 . . . . .	61
XVI. IRREGULAR VERBS. EXERCISE 16 . . . . .	66
XVII. IMPERATIVE MOOD. PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE AS IMPERATIVE. EXERCISE 17 . . . . .	71
XVIII. TWO OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS. EXER- CISE 18 . . . . .	76
XIX. INFINITIVE MOOD. EXERCISE 19 . . . . .	83
XX. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES. EXERCISE 20 . . . . .	92
XXI. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, IMPERFECT TENSE. EXERCISE 21 . . . . .	96
XXII. LETTER-WRITING. EXERCISE 22 . . . . .	100

## PART II

## SYSTEMATIC ACCIDENCE AND SYNTAX

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. ORDER OF WORDS. EXERCISE 23 . . . . .	107
II. ARTICLES. EXERCISE 24 . . . . .	111
III. NOUNS. EXERCISE 25 . . . . .	118
IV. ADJECTIVES. EXERCISE 26 . . . . .	126
V. ADJECTIVES, CONTINUED. EXERCISE 27 . . . . .	131
VI. NUMERALS. EXERCISE 28 . . . . .	139
VII. POSSESSIVES AND DEMONSTRATIVES. EXERCISE 29 . . . . .	147
VIII. RELATIVE PRONOUNS. EXERCISE 30 . . . . .	152
IX. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS. EXERCISE 31 . . . . .	159
X. INDEFINITE EXPRESSIONS. EXERCISE 32 . . . . .	163
XI. PERSONAL PRONOUNS. EXERCISE 33 . . . . .	171
XII. ADVERBS. EXERCISE 34 . . . . .	179
XIII. PREPOSITIONS, CONJUNCTIONS, INTERJECTIONS. EXERCISE 35	190
XIV. VERB FORMS. EXERCISE 36 . . . . .	204
XV. SYNTAX OF VERB. TENSES. IMPERSONALS. EXERCISE 37 . . . . .	241
XVI. PASSIVE VOICE. PARTICIPLES. EXERCISE 38 . . . . .	248
XVII. INFINITIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE MOODS. EXERCISE 39 . . . . .	255
XVIII. IDIOMATIC USES OF VERBS. EXERCISE 40. . . . .	263
APPENDIX I. VERB LIST . . . . .	271
APPENDIX II. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH CERTAIN VERBS BEFORE DEPENDENT INFINITIVES . . . . .	277
SPANISH-ENGLISH VOCABULARY . . . . .	285
ENGLISH-SPANISH VOCABULARY . . . . .	305
INDEX . . . . .	329

# SPANISH GRAMMAR

## PART I

### INTRODUCTION

1. **The Alphabet.** The Spanish alphabet has thirty different signs.

LETTERS	NAMES	LETTERS	NAMES	LETTERS	NAMES
<b>A</b>	a a	<b>J</b>	j jota	<b>R</b>	r ere
<b>B</b>	b be	<b>K</b>	k ka	—	rr erre
<b>C</b>	c ce	<b>L</b>	l ele	<b>S</b>	s ese
<b>Ch</b>	ch che	<b>Ll</b>	ll elle	<b>T</b>	t te
<b>D</b>	d de	<b>M</b>	m eme	<b>U</b>	u u
<b>E</b>	e e	<b>N</b>	n ene	<b>V</b>	v ve ( <i>or</i> u de corazón) (u consonante)
<b>F</b>	f efe	<b>Ñ</b>	ñ eñe	<b>W</b>	w doble u ( <i>or</i> ve doble)
<b>G</b>	g ge	<b>O</b>	o o	<b>X</b>	x equis
<b>H</b>	h (h)ache	<b>P</b>	p pe	<b>Y</b>	y griega ( <i>or</i> ye)
<b>I</b>	i i	<b>Q</b>	q cu	<b>Z</b>	z zeta

*a.* The names of the Spanish letters are feminine: **una b larga a long** *b* (that is, *b* not *v*).

*b.* The letters **k** and **w** are found chiefly in words adopted from foreign languages; the sound of **rr** at the beginning of words is represented by **r**.

2. **Vowels.** Spanish vowels have approximately the following values:

- a** as in *father*; **Ana**
- e** as *ā* in *gate*; **Pepe**
- i** as in *machine*; **Anita, María**
- o** as in *note*; **Manolo, Pedro**
- u** as *oo* in *moon*; **Tula**

a. At the end of a word, and when standing alone *i* is written *y*: *rey, king; y, and.*

b. The Spanish sounds of *e, o,* and *u* are simple and not diphthongal as frequently in English: *e* is not like *ey* in *they*, *o* is not like *o* in *no*, *u* is not like *u* in *cube*. Learners should try to acquire an accurate pronunciation of the simple sounds without the final glide which characterizes the English vowels.

c. In certain positions, especially before *l* and *r*, Spanish *e* has a more open sound like *e* of *met*: *papel, paper; tener, to have; ella, she; perro, dog; este, this*. The quality of the other vowels varies somewhat according as they stand in an accented syllable or not, but fine distinctions are unnecessary to the learner.

d. The quantity of Spanish vowels is short. The stressed syllable is not prolonged but merely pronounced with greater force.

e. The vowels *a e o* are called strong; *i* and *u* weak.

f. Spoken Spanish contracts two identical vowels into one syllable without lengthening: *as, de este = deste, cree = cre, la alta = lalta*.

**3. Diphthongs.** The strong vowels *a, e,* and *o* unite with the weak vowels *i* and *u* to form one syllable, called a diphthong. The weak vowels also combine with each other. Though each vowel keeps its own sound, the stress falls on the strong vowel, while the weak one is uttered rapidly: of two weak vowels, the last is stressed. The possible combinations are

ai (ay)	Maracaibo, Garay	ia	Santiago, Colombia
au	Cauca, Bautista	ua	Juan, Managua
ei (ey)	Leiro, Caney	ie	Oviedo, Cienfuegos
eu	Ceuta, Europa	ue	Buenos Aires
oi (oy)	oiga, Alcoy	io	Dios, Antonio
ou	Bouzas	uo	cuota, antiguo
iu	Liuva, ciudad	ui (uy)	Luis

a. Two strong vowels form distinct syllables: *Bil-ba-o, Le-ón, Lis-bó-a, Nar-vá-ez*.

b. If two vowels which commonly form a diphthong are pronounced separately, an accent mark is written over the vowel which bears the stress: *García, María, Valparaíso, Niobe, oído, fluído, Táy*.

**4. Triphthongs.** A strong vowel between two weak ones forms a combination which is pronounced as one syllable :

<b>íai</b>	<b>fiáis</b>	<b>uai (uay)</b>	<b>La Guaira, Paraguay</b>
<b>íei</b>	<b>fiéis</b>	<b>uei (uey)</b>	<b>acentuéis, buey</b>

**5. Consonants.** **b** denotes the same sound as **v**. It resembles English *b* only at the beginning of a word and after **m** or **n** : **bala**, **también**, **enviar** (pronounce *embiar*). In other positions **b** (or **v**) represents a bilabial sound not consciously used in English. To produce it, bring the lips together as if to pronounce *b*, but, instead of closing them, allow the breath to issue continuously as in uttering *v*. Avoid English *v*, which is produced by allowing the breath to issue between the lower lip and the upper teeth. This sound does not exist in Spanish. Ex. — **Bilbao**, **bilbaíno**, **bebe**. Before **s** and **t**, **b** has the value of **p** or is silent : **oscuro** (often spelled **osuro**), **subterráneo**, **absoluto**.

**c** represents two sounds :

1. A voiceless spirant, *th* in *thin*, before **e** and **i** : **Cervo**, **Ponce** ; **Cid**, **Cicerón**.

2. A voiceless guttural, *k*, before **a**, **o**, **u**, or another consonant, or when final : **Costa Rica**, **Cuba**, **Ciara**, **Tepic**, **lección**.

**ch** is pronounced like English *ch* in *church* : **Chilé**, **chileno**.

**d** represents the voiced sound of *th* in *though* : **Toledo**, **Granada** ; but approaches English *d* at the beginning of words or after **l** or **n** : **don**, **saldo**, **anda**. When final, **d** is usually silent : **Madrid**, **usted** ; but some speakers give the voiceless sound of *th* in *thin* : **sed**. Intervocalic **d** is often silent, especially in the termination **ado** : **Prado** = *Prao*, **comprado** = *compra*o.

**f** is equivalent to English *f* : **Flandes**, **flamenco**.

**g** denotes two sounds :

1. A voiced guttural, *g* as in English *go*, before **a**, **o**, **u**, or another consonant : **Galicia**, **gallego**, **gusto**, **grande**. To indicate this sound before **e** or **i**, a silent **u** is inserted : **Portugal**, **portugués** ; **guía**.

2. A strong aspirate before **e** and **i**, similar to German or Scotch *ch* in *loch* but frequently softened to a strong English *k* (see Spanish **j**): **Génova, genovés, Gibraltar.**

**h** is a silent letter in Castilian Spanish: **la Habana, habanero.** It is sometimes lightly pronounced before **ue**: **huevo.**

**j** (*jota*) denotes a strong aspiration, the same as **g** before **e** and **i**: **Jalisco, Jérez, Gijón.** When final, it is nearly or quite silent: **reloj** often written **reló.**

In some words the letter **x** used formerly to represent this sound, hence **México**, in Spain now spelled **Méjico**; **Xauza = Jauja.**

**k** is not a Spanish letter but is used in a few borrowed foreign words with the value of English *k*: **kilo, kodak.**

**l** is equivalent to an English *l* when pronounced clearly in the forward part of the mouth as in *bill*: **Lisboa, lisbonense.**

**ll** denotes a sound similar to *lli* in *million*: **Castilla, castellano.** At the beginning of a word this sound is difficult for English speakers, who had better practice the vulgarism pronounced like *y* rather than allow the sound to lapse into a simple **l**: **Llanos, llave, lleno, lluvia, llorar.**

**m** is equivalent to English *m*: **Manila, manileño.**

**n** is more clearly pronounced than English *n*: **Nápoles, napolitano.** Before the guttural sounds *k* and *g*, before "jota" (**j**, and **g** before **e** and **i**), and before **hue**, **n** becomes the velar nasal represented by *ng* in *thing*: **blanco, blanquear, ángel, naranja, un huevo.** The same value is often given to emphatic monosyllables: **ten, pon.**

**ñ** is a sign having a value similar to *ni* in *onion*. The Spanish name for the mark over the letter is *tilde*. **España, español.**

**p** is like English *p*: **Panamá, panameño.** Before **s** and **t**, **p** is commonly silent: **psicología, séptimo, septiembre** (usually spelled **sétimo** and **setiembre**).

**q** is used only before **ue** and **ui**, with the sound of *k*: **lorqueño** (from **Lorca**), **Quito, quiteño.** After **q** the **u** is silent.

**r** at the beginning of a word represents the value of **rr** (see below); but in the middle or at the end of a word it has a reduced value of the same sound, being pronounced with a single flick of the tongue. Care should be taken not to slur the sound at the end of a word but to pronounce it distinctly. Ex. — **perro, comparar.**

**rr** is a strong trill with the tip of the tongue, produced just back of the upper teeth: **perro, Navarra, navarro, Puerto Rico, portorriqueño.**

**s** initial, between vowels, and final, has the sharp hissing sound of English *s*, never the value of English *z*. Compare English *president* with Spanish **presidente**, *rose* with **rosa**. Before a consonant, and sometimes when final, **s** tends to be reduced to a breathing and even to become silent: **las niñas = lath niñas or la' niñas, más rico = ma' rico, dos = do', mismo = mi'mo.** Before **d, g, and m** in the same word, **s** sometimes resembles English *z*: **desde, musgo.** But students had better pronounce **s** as a sharp hiss in all positions: **Solís, Paso, los rusos.**

**t** is equivalent to English *t*, but more forcibly pronounced by bringing the tongue close to the upper teeth: **Trinidad, trinitario.**

**v** has the same values as **b**: **Valdivia, beber, vivir.**

**w**, used only in foreign proper names, has the foreign value: **Washington, Wagner.**

**x** is equivalent to English *x* pronounced like *ks*; before consonants, however, the sound tends to become a simple **s** and is so written in some words: **sexto (sesto), excelente.** Between vowels **x** is sometimes given the sound of *gs*: **examen.**

**y** as a vowel, see *i*. As a consonant **y** is like English *y* in *yes*, though strongly enunciated, not unlike the *y* in *Don't you*: **yo, Yucatán, yucateco.**

**z** has the sound of English *th* in *thin* (see *c* before *e* and *i*), and occurs before **a, o, and u**, final, and sometimes before another consonant: **Zamora, Zorita, Zurbarán, Vera Cruz, Guzmán.**

**6. Peculiarities.** In Spanish America and in parts of Spain the following peculiarities in pronunciation are common.



c before e and i is pronounced like s: **conocer, cita**, = *conoser* and *sita*.

d is silent between vowels: **matado = matao, vivido = vivio, nada = na**.

ll is like English y or even j in *jest*: **caballo = cabayo or cabajo, llega = yega or jega**.

r final is often silent: **mujer = mujé**.

s is reduced to a breathing or is silent: **tres = tre, usted = uté, refresco = refré'co**.

z is pronounced like s: **Zulia, Díaz**.

Dialectical peculiarities that are often heard are

**bue = güe : bueno = güeno**

**gua = wa : agua = awa**

**7. How to Spell certain Consonant Sounds.** The following table of spellings for certain consonant sounds before the five vowels and when final will be found useful for reference when forming plurals or derivatives of nouns and in conjugating verbs.

SOUND	a	e	i	o	u	FINAL
<i>th</i>	<b>za</b>	<b>ce</b>	<b>ci</b>	<b>zo</b>	<b>zu</b>	<b>z</b>
as in <i>thin</i>	<i>Zamora</i>	<i>andaluces</i>	<i>Andalucla</i>	<i>Arizona</i>	<i>Zurita</i>	<i>andaluz</i>
<i>k</i>	<b>ca</b>	<b>que</b>	<b>qui</b>	<b>co</b>	<b>cu</b>	<b>c</b>
	<i>Caracas</i>	<i>caraqueño</i>	<i>Turqula</i>	<i>turco</i>	<i>Cuba</i>	<i>Tepic</i>
<i>g</i>	<b>ga</b>	<b>gue</b>	<b>gui</b>	<b>go</b>	<b>gu</b>	
as in <i>go</i>	<i>Málaga</i>	<i>malagueño</i>	<i>Guillermo</i>	<i>Vigo</i>	<i>Guzmán</i>	
<i>jota</i>	<b>ja</b>	<b>je, ge</b>	<b>ji, gi</b>	<b>jo</b>	<b>ju</b>	
	<i>Jamaica</i>	<i>Jérez, Génova</i>	<i>Méjico, Gijón</i>	<i>Jorge</i>	<i>Julio</i>	
<i>gw</i>	<b>gua</b>	<b>güe<sup>1</sup></b>	<b>güi<sup>1</sup></b>	<b>guo</b>		
	<i>Guatemala</i>	<i>Mayágüez</i>	<i>Güines</i>	<i>antiguo</i>		
<i>kw</i>	<b>cua</b>	<b>cue</b>	<b>cui</b>	<b>cuo</b>		
	<i>Ecuador</i>	<i>Cuenca</i>	<i>Cuico</i>	<i>cuota</i>		

<sup>1</sup> The sign " over a letter is called a diæresis, and is used in Spanish to indicate that the u of the syllables *gue* and *gui* is not silent but pronounced.

**8. Accent.** One syllable of a Spanish word receives greater emphasis or stress of voice as in English, but without the slurring of other syllables peculiar to English. The accent falls regularly on —

1. The final syllable of words ending in a consonant except **n** or **s**: **señor, español, usted.**

2. The next to the last syllable (the penult) of words ending in a vowel: **padre, amigo, amigos, venden.**

Words contrary to this rule have the stress indicated by an accent mark: **López, ejército, inglés, Guzmán.**

**9. Where accents are used.** The accent mark is used —

1. To show a situation not in accord with the general rule: **lápiz, rubí.**

2. To separate a diphthong into its elements: **tío, sería, aún.**

3. To distinguish the interrogative use of certain pronouns and adverbs: **¿quién? ¿cuánto? ¿cómo? ¿dónde? ¿cuál?**

4. To indicate the nominal use of the demonstratives **éste, ése, and aquél.**

5. To discriminate pairs of words identical in spelling:

<b>de</b> , <i>of</i> (preposition)	<b>dé</b> , <i>give</i> (pres. subj. of <b>dar</b> )
<b>di</b> , <i>tell</i> (imperative of <b>decir</b> )	<b>dí</b> , <i>I gave</i> (1st sing. pret. ind. of <b>dar</b> )
<b>el</b> , <i>the</i> (definite article)	<b>él</b> , <i>he, him</i> (personal pronoun)
<b>ha</b> , <i>he has</i> (3d sing. pres. ind. of <b>haber</b> )	<b>há</b> , <i>ago</i>
<b>he</b> , <i>I have</i> (1st sing. pres. ind. of <b>haber</b> )	<b>hé</b> , <i>behold</i>
<b>mas</b> , <i>but</i> (conjunction)	<b>más</b> , <i>more</i> (adverb)
<b>mi</b> , <i>my</i> (possessive adjective)	<b>mí</b> , <i>me</i> (personal pronoun)
<b>se</b> , <i>self</i> (reflexive pronoun)	<b>sé</b> , <i>I know</i> (1st sing. pres. ind. of <b>saber</b> )
<b>si</b> , <i>if</i>	<b>sí</b> , <i>yes; self</i> (accusative of <b>se</b> , disjunctive form)
<b>solo</b> , <i>alone</i> (adjective)	<b>sólo</b> , <i>only</i> (adverb)
<b>te</b> , <i>thee</i> (personal pronoun)	<b>té</b> , <i>tea</i>
<b>tu</b> , <i>thy</i> (possessive adjective)	<b>tú</b> , <i>thou</i> (personal pronoun)
<b>ve</b> , <i>he sees</i> (3d sing. pres. ind. of <b>ver</b> )	<b>vé</b> , <i>go</i> (imperative sing. of <b>ir</b> )

*a.* Monosyllabic preterits bear written accents: **ví, víó, fui.**

*b.* The Spanish Academy authorizes the omission of accents from the words **a, to; e, and; o, or**, except between figures, **3 ó 4; u, or.**

6. Plurals require the mark when the addition of **es** causes the accent to fall on the third syllable from the end of the word: **examen, exámenes; orden, órdenes.**

*a.* On the other hand, the addition of **es** to words ending in **n** or **s** accented on the final syllable will cause the mark to be unnecessary: **inglés, ingleses; nación, naciones.**

7. Verb-forms to which pronouns are added require the accent mark whenever the stress falls on the third or fourth syllable from the end of the combination: **dígalo, diciéndolo, decírselo, hágamelo.**

*a.* But the addition of pronouns to verbs bearing marks does not cause the removal of the mark: **vióme, véte.**

8. Adverbs formed by the use of *mente*, and compound words, retain the stress and the accent marks of their component parts: **sólidamente, espantapájaros, décimoséptimo.**

10. **Division of Syllables.** Every Spanish word contains as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs; if possible each syllable should begin with a single consonant, though the digraphs **ch, ll, rr**, and combinations of a consonant plus **l** or **r** (except **rl, sl, tl**, and **sr**) are not separated:

<b>Az-cá-ra-te</b>	<b>Sim-pli-cio</b>	<b>To-rre-vie-ja</b>
<b>Ba-chi-ller</b>	<b>Pa-dre Is-la</b>	<b>Car-los Mi-tre</b>

*a.* The prefixes **ab, des, and sub** are kept intact: **sub-le-va-ción, ab-ro-gar, des-a-mor.**

*b.* The letter **s** before a consonant is kept with the preceding syllable: **in-cons-tan-te, ins-truc-cio-nes, en-hies-to.**

NOTE. In printing observe the following.

1. A syllable consisting of a single vowel should not stand at the beginning nor at the end of a line. Thus, **a-gudo** and **efectú-a** are not permissible.

2. Compound words which are distinctly felt as such may be divided accordingly: **nos-otros, extra-ordinario, cari-acontecido**; but derivation, except as indicated here and in section 10 a, is not considered: **de-lante, ma-lestar**.

3. The separation of contiguous vowels, even when not forming a diphthong, should be avoided, according to the general rule that each syllable should begin with a consonant: **geo-logía, arquea-do, poe-sía**.

**11. Punctuation.** Different from English is the use of the following marks of punctuation:

1. Inverted interrogation and exclamation points before questions and exclamations: **¿Quién es? Who is it? ¡Qué hermosa! How beautiful!**

2. Three dots (. . .) to indicate an incomplete sentence where English uses a dash.

3. A dash at the beginning of each speech in conversational matter where English uses quotation marks. See Exercise 6, B, 2.

The Spanish names of the marks of punctuation are

• punto final	. . . puntos suspensivos	¨ diéresis
, coma	¿ ? interrogación	« » comillas <i>or</i> cita
; punto y coma	¡ ! admiración	- guión
: dos puntos	( ) paréntesis	— raya

**12. Capitalization** in Spanish differs from its use in English mainly as follows. Not capitalized are

The pronoun **yo, I**.

Names of days and months.

Geographical adjectives (except sometimes when used as nouns denoting human beings).

# PRACTICAL INTRODUCTORY LESSONS

## LESSON I

13.

¿Habla Juan español?	<i>Does John speak Spanish?</i>
Sí, señor, habla español.	<i>Yes, sir, he speaks Spanish.</i>
¿Qué idioma habla usted?	<i>What language do you speak?</i>
Hablo inglés.	<i>I speak English.</i>
Carlos y María hablan español.	<i>Charles and Mary speak Spanish.</i>
¿No hablan inglés?	<i>Don't they speak English?</i>
No, señor, no hablan inglés.	<i>No, sir, they do not speak English.</i>
¿Vive usted en España?	<i>Are you living in Spain?</i>
No vivo en España.	<i>I do not live in Spain.</i>
¿Dónde vivimos?	<i>Where are we living?</i>
Vivimos en Nueva York.	<i>We live in New York.</i>
Y hablamos inglés.	<i>And we speak English.</i>

14. **Personal Endings.** Observe that the endings of the verb in the Spanish sentences above vary and correspond to the English pronouns. Note that no pronouns appear in the Spanish sentences, except *usted*, meaning *you*, which is used with the same ending as *he*. *Usted* is generally abbreviated to **V.** or **Vd.** The plural *ustedes* (**VV.** or **Vds.**) takes the same ending as *they*.

15. **Conjugations.** Verbs are divided into three classes or conjugations according to the endings of their infinitives: thus,

- I. hablar, *to speak*
- II. vender, *to sell*
- III. vivir, *to live*

If the ending of the infinitive is dropped, the stem, or radical, remains, to which are added the personal endings.

NOTE. — The infinitive is the name of the verb and is the form given in dictionaries.

## 16. Present Tense Indicative Mood.

## I

hablo	<i>I speak</i>	<i>I am speaking</i>	<i>do I speak ?</i>
habla	<i>he speaks</i>	<i>he is speaking</i>	<i>does he speak ?</i>
habla usted	<i>you speak</i>	<i>you are speaking</i>	<i>do you speak ?</i>
hablamos	<i>we speak</i>	<i>we are speaking</i>	<i>do we speak ?</i>
hablan	<i>they speak</i>	<i>they are speaking</i>	<i>do they speak ?</i>
hablan ustedes	<i>you speak</i>	<i>you are speaking</i>	<i>do you speak ?</i>

## II

vendo	<i>I sell</i>	<i>I am selling</i>	<i>do I sell ?</i>
vende	<i>he sells</i>	<i>he is selling</i>	<i>does he sell ?</i>
vende Vd.	<i>you sell</i>	<i>you are selling</i>	<i>do you sell ?</i>
vendemos	<i>we sell</i>	<i>we are selling</i>	<i>do we sell ?</i>
venden	<i>they sell</i>	<i>they are selling</i>	<i>do they sell ?</i>
venden Vds.	<i>you sell</i>	<i>you are selling</i>	<i>do you sell ?</i>

## III

vivo	<i>I live</i>	<i>I am living</i>	<i>do I live ?</i>
vive	<i>he lives</i>	<i>he is living</i>	<i>does he live ?</i>
vive Vd.	<i>you live</i>	<i>you are living</i>	<i>do you live ?</i>
vivimos	<i>we live</i>	<i>we are living</i>	<i>do we live ?</i>
viven	<i>they live</i>	<i>they are living</i>	<i>do they live ?</i>
viven Vds.	<i>you live</i>	<i>you are living</i>	<i>do you live ?</i>

a. Observe that the three English forms correspond to the one form of the Spanish verb. The *simple form*, "He speaks," is not used in English questions or negative statements; but instead, either the *progressive form*, "Is he speaking?" "He is not speaking," or the *emphatic form*, "Does he speak?" "He does not speak."

17. **Interrogative Sentences.** Questions are asked in Spanish by placing the subject of the sentence after the verb.

¿Habra Juan? *Does John speak? Is John speaking?*

a. As the subject is frequently placed after the verb even in affirmations, an inverted question mark ¿ precedes a question.

**18. Negation.** To make a sentence negative, place *no*, *not*, before the verb.

**No hablo.** *I am not speaking, I do not speak.*

#### VOCABULARY

a, <i>to</i>	leer, <i>to read</i>
allí, <i>there</i>	mal, <i>badly</i>
aprender, <i>to learn</i>	mucho, <i>much, a great deal</i>
bien, <i>well</i>	papel, m., <i>paper</i>
carta, f., <i>letter</i>	poco, <i>little</i>
comprar, <i>to buy</i>	qué, <i>what?</i>
comprender, <i>to understand</i>	quién, <i>who?</i>
con, <i>with</i>	señora, f., <i>madam</i>
escribir, <i>to write</i>	también, <i>also</i>
Inglaterra, f., <i>England</i>	tinta, f., <i>ink</i>

#### EXERCISE 1

A. 1. ¿Comprende Vd. bien? No, señor, comprendo mal.  
 2. ¿Comprenden Carlos y Juan? Sí, comprenden. 3. ¿Qué compra Juan? Compra papel y tinta. 4. ¿Quién vende papel? Carlos vende papel. 5. ¿Qué compran Vds.? Compramos también papel. 6. ¿Leen Vds. mucho? No, señora, leemos poco. 7. ¿Qué aprende Vd.? Aprendo a hablar español. 8. ¿Vive Vd. en Inglaterra? No vivo allí. 9. ¿Con qué escriben? Escriben con tinta en papel. 10. ¿A quién escribe Juan? Escribe a Carlos.

B. *Answer in Spanish with a sentence containing a verb:*  
 1. ¿Qué idioma habla María? 2. ¿Habla Carlos inglés? 3. ¿Vive Vd. en Inglaterra? 4. ¿Dónde viven Vds.? 5. ¿Quién compra papel? 6. ¿Qué compran Juan y Carlos? 7. ¿Escribe Vd. mucho en español? 8. ¿A quién escribe Vd.? 9. ¿Qué lee Vd.? 10. ¿Dónde venden tinta?

C. 1. Do you speak Spanish? No, sir, I speak English. 2. Do they understand? They do not understand. 3. Where do Charles and John live? They live in Spain. 4. Where do you (*plural*) live? We live in New York. 5. What does Charles buy? He is

buying paper and ink. 6. What language does he speak? He speaks Spanish. 7. To whom are you reading? I am reading to Mary. 8. Who understands? I understand; they understand. 9. We are writing to Charles. 10. They are learning to speak Spanish. 11. Are you writing to John? No, sir, I am not writing to John. 12. Who reads a great deal in Spanish? Mary and John read in Spanish.

## LESSON II

## 19.

Un hermano. *A brother.*

Un libro. *A book.*

El hombre. *The man.*

La mujer. *The woman.*

El inglés. *The Englishman.*

El idioma de la inglesa.

El idioma de las inglesas.

El color del papel.

Los colores de los papeles.

Juan escribe una carta á la señora.

¿Escribe Vd. cartas al señor?

Una hermana. *A sister.*

Una pluma. *A pen.*

Los hombres. *The men.*

Las mujeres. *The women.*

Los ingleses. *The Englishmen.*

*The language of the English woman.*

*The language of the English women.*

*The color of the paper.*

*The colors of the papers.*

*John writes a letter to the lady.*

*Do you write letters to the gentleman?*

**20. Gender.** Every Spanish noun is grammatically masculine or feminine.

1. Names of male beings are masculine: **el artista**, *the artist*; **el rey**, *the king*; of female beings feminine: **la mujer**, *the woman*; **la reina**, *the queen*.

2. Nouns ending in **o** are generally masculine; in **a**, feminine: **el libro**, *the book*; **la pluma**, *the pen*.

*a.* But there are many exceptions: **el día**, *the day*; **la mano**, *the hand*. These, like the gender of nouns ending in other letters than **o** or **a**, must be learned individually.

3. Nouns denoting persons, employments, or nationality may often be made feminine by changing final **o** to **a**, or by adding **a**:



**hermano**, *brother*; **hermana**, *sister*; **español**, *Spaniard*; **española**, *Spanish woman*.

**21. Articles.** Spanish has two articles, Indefinite and Definite. Each must agree in gender and number with the noun which it modifies.

1. Indefinite article.

MASCULINE	FEMININE
un	una
un libro, <i>a book</i>	una carta, <i>a letter</i>

2. Definite article.

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
SING.	el	la (el)	lo
PLUR.	los	las	(lacking)

*a.* Feminine **el** is an old form of the article which is still used before nouns beginning with a stressed syllable in **a** or **ha**: **el agua**, *the water*; **el hacha**, *the ax*; but **la América**, *America*.

*b.* The form **el** combines with **de**, *of* or *from*, to form **del**, *of the* or *from the*; and with **a**, *to*, to form **al**, *to the*.

*c.* The neuter article is used only with adjectives not modifying a noun: **lo mismo**, *the same*.

**22. Plural of Nouns.** To form the plural of nouns, add **s** to words ending in a vowel, **es** to words ending in a consonant.

el hombre, <i>the man</i>	los hombres, <i>the men</i>
la mujer, <i>the woman</i>	las mujeres, <i>the women</i>

NOTE. — For exceptions, see section 130.

*a.* Observe change of spelling: **el lápiz**, *the pencil*; **los lápices**, *the pencils*. The sound of *th* must be written **c** before **es**. See section 7.

*b.* Final **y** is treated as a consonant: **el rey**, *the king*; **los reyes**, *the kings*; **la ley**, *the law*; **las leyes**, *the laws*.

**23. Idiomatic Expressions.** No two languages correspond precisely in their methods of expressing ideas. Expressions which do not appear to follow a rule of grammar, or which vary from our own method, we term idiomatic: thus,

*A Spanish letter, una carta en español*

*A Spanish lesson, una lección de español*

### EXERCISE 2

*A. Give the feminine with the definite article, singular and plural:*  
El abuelo, *grandfather*. El primo, *cousin*. El tío, *uncle*. El hijo, *son*. El sobrino, *nephew*. El muchacho, *boy*. El panadero, *the baker*. El alemán, *the German*. El francés, *the Frenchman*.

*Give the plural and translate:* 1. El abuelo de la mujer. 2. El hermano del inglés. 3. Al tío del español. 4. La prima del señor. 5. Al hijo de la panadera.

*B. (The meaning of new words must henceforth be looked for in the vocabulary in the latter part of the book.) Translate:* 1. El hermano del español vive en España; no vive aquí. 2. ¿Escribe cartas al inglés? 3. Las hermanas del señor no viven en el país. 4. No comprendemos el idioma de la señora. 5. Escribimos una carta en español a un español. 6. Una mujer compra un libro y aprende a leer el español. 7. Escribo en el papel con una pluma y tinta. 8. Los ingleses viven en Inglaterra, los franceses en Francia, y los norteamericanos en la América del Norte. 9. El tío lee la carta del alemán. 10. La tía habla al panadero.

*C. Answer in Spanish:* 1. ¿A quién habla el tío de la inglesa? 2. ¿A quién escribe el señor? 3. ¿Qué lee la mujer? 4. ¿Dónde viven los ingleses? 5. ¿Quién vive en la América del Norte? 6. ¿En qué país viven los franceses? 7. ¿Con qué escribe Vd. la carta? 8. ¿Qué escriben Vds. al español? 9. ¿En qué idioma habla Vd. al señor? 10. ¿No comprende Vd. el idioma del hombre?

*D.* 1. To whom are you writing the letter? 2. Does John write Spanish letters to the Spaniards? 3. I do not understand the

language of the gentlemen. 4. We live in North America; the Frenchmen live in France. 5. Charles is writing to the girl cousin. 6. John and Mary write English letters to the grandfather. 7. Does he read the books of the Frenchman? 8. What language are you learning from the Spaniard? 9. The baker speaks German to the boy. 10. We write the Spanish lesson with pencils on the paper.

## LESSON III

## 24.

Soy americano.

Estoy en la América del Norte.

¿Quién es el profesor?

Es el señor Blanco.

¿Quiénes son Vds.?

Somos españoles, pero estamos en Nueva York.

Buenos días, ¿cómo está Vd.?

Estoy muy bien, gracias.

Y ¿Vd.?

Sin novedad.

*I am an American.*

*I am in North America.*

*Who is the teacher?*

*He is Mr. Blanco.*

*Who are you?*

*We are Spaniards, but we are in New York.*

*Good morning, how are you?*

*I am very well, thank you.*

*And you?*

*Same as usual (literally, without novelty).*

## 25. Present Indicative.

Ser	<i>to be</i>	Estar
soy	<i>I am</i>	estoy
es	<i>he is</i>	está
es Vd.	<i>you are</i>	está Vd.
somos	<i>we are</i>	estamos
son	<i>they are</i>	están
son Vds.	<i>you are</i>	están Vds.

a. Ser and estar both correspond to the English verb *to be*, but each has its distinctive meaning. **Estar** denotes position: **Está en Méjico**, *He is in Mexico*. **Ser** denotes character; hence must be used before all nouns standing in the predicate: **Es español**, *He is a Spaniard* (see section 26, 1).

*b.* With adjectives **estar** indicates a condition temporary in duration: **Está enfermo**, *He is sick*; while **ser** implies an essential quality of a person or thing: **El papel es blanco**, *The paper is white*.

*c.* When an adjective is used in the predicate with the meaning of a noun, the proper verb is **ser**: **Es rico**, *He is rich* (that is, *He is a rich man*); **Ella es joven**, *She is young* (that is, *a young woman*).

*d.* With **bueno**, *good*, and **malo**, *bad*, **estar** refers to health, while **ser** refers to character: **Es bueno, pero está malo**, *He is a good man, but he is sick*.

*e.* Idiomatic:

<b>Está bien.</b>	<i>All right.</i>
<b>¡Está bueno!</b>	<i>Good! Excellent!</i>

**26. Use of Articles.** 1. Before a predicate noun omit the indefinite article: **Es alemán**, *He is a German*.

2. Before a title use the definite article: **el señor González**, *Mr. González*; **el general O'Donnell**, *General O'Donnell*.

3. Before the name of a language, except after **hablar** and **en**, use the definite article:

<b>Aprendemos el español.</b>	<i>We are learning Spanish.</i>
<b>El general Gómez habla español.</b>	<i>General Gómez speaks Spanish.</i>

### EXERCISE 3

*A. Insert the correct form of the verb ser or estar in the following:* 1. Juan — en Méjico. 2. Carlos — un muchacho cubano. 3. ¿Quién — Vd.? 4. ¿ — Vd. en España? 5. Los muchachos — ingleses, pero no — en Inglaterra. 6. ¿ — María y Juana muchachas españolas? 7. ¿ Dónde — las muchachas? 8. El agua no — caliente, — fría. 9. El hombre no — rico, — pobre. 10. ¿ Cómo — el señor?

*B. Estamos ahora en una sala de clase. Arriba está el techo. Abajo está el suelo. Las ventanas están al lado de la sala. Al otro lado están las puertas. Contra las paredes están las pizarras. Escribimos en la pizarra con tiza.*

Somos discípulos del señor Blanco. Es el profesor de la clase. Delante del profesor está una mesa. El profesor está sentado en una silla. El discípulo debe estar de pie, cuando habla al profesor.

C. 1. ¿Dónde está Vd. ahora? 2. ¿Qué clase es? 3. ¿En qué clase estamos? 4. ¿Quién es el profesor? 5. ¿De quién son Vds. discípulos? 6. ¿Está Vd. de pie o sentado? 7. ¿Estoy de pie o sentado? 8. ¿Soy discípulo o profesor? 9. ¿Está Vd. sentado delante o al lado del profesor? 10. ¿Dónde está el techo? ¿el suelo? ¿la puerta?

D. 1. They are Cubans, but they live in New York. 2. Are you a Cuban or a Spaniard? 3. Where is Mexico? It is in North America. 4. I am not the teacher of the Spanish class. 5. Where are you seated? I am sitting in front of the table. 6. Good morning! How is Mr. Blanco? He is very well, thank you. 7. Are the letters from the German? Where are they? 8. They are on the chair on the other side of the room. 9. Is the ceiling above or below? The floor is below, the ceiling above. 10. We are Americans, but Mr. Romero is a Spaniard. 11. The brother of Mr. González is a merchant, not a physician. 12. They are not writing on the walls, but<sup>1</sup> on the blackboards. 13. We stand when we speak to the teacher. 14. We are not rich men. <sup>1</sup> *sino*. See section 232, 4.

## LESSON IV

### 27.

El libro blanco.	<i>The white book.</i>
La casa blanca.	<i>The white house.</i>
Los libros son blancos.	<i>The books are white.</i>
Las casas son blancas.	<i>The houses are white.</i>
El libro está cerrado.	<i>The book is shut.</i>
La puerta está abierta.	<i>The door is open.</i>
¿Están abiertas las ventanas?	<i>Are the windows open?</i>
No, señor, están cerradas.	<i>No, sir, they are shut.</i>

28. **Agreement of Adjectives.** Spanish adjectives take the gender and number of the nouns which they modify. This rule is true

also when the adjective is used after *ser* and *estar*. See section 27 for examples.

*a.* The attributive adjective is usually placed after the noun: *el hombre cortés, the polite man; la mujer hermosa, the beautiful woman.*

**29. Gender of Adjectives.** If a masculine adjective ends in *o*, the feminine substitutes *a* for *o*: *blanco, blanca, white; negro, negra, black.*

Adjectives ending in *e* or a consonant have the same form in both genders:

*el papel verde, the green paper*  
*el color azul, the blue color*

*la casa verde, the green house*  
*la luz azul, the blue light*

*a. Exception.* Adjectives of nationality add *a* to words ending in a consonant: *inglés, inglesa, English; alemán, alemana, German.*

(For other exceptions see section 135.)

**30. Plural of Adjectives.** Like the plural of nouns, the plural of adjectives is formed by adding *s* to words ending in a vowel and *es* to words ending in a consonant: *los papeles verdes, the green papers; las luces azules, the blue lights.*

**31. Idiomatic Expressions.** *a. There is or there are, hay.*

*There are two doors here.*

*Hay dos puertas aquí.*

*There is no paper.*

*No hay papel. (The negative must precede the verb.)*

*b.* A question introduced by *¿por qué?* *why*, may be answered by *porque, because*, with a clause, or by *para, for* or *in order to*, followed by an infinitive.

*¿Por qué aprende Vd. el español?*

*Why are you learning Spanish?*

*Porque voy a España.*

*Because I am going to Spain.*

*Para escribir cartas en español.*

*In order to write Spanish letters.*

## EXERCISE 4

A. 1. From each of the following,

un papel —

una casa —

Los papeles son —

Las casas son —

make four phrases or sentences (sixteen in all) by substituting for the dash the correct form of the adjectives

blanco, *white*

azul, *blue*

negro, *black*

verde, *green*

2. Use both adjectives in turn,

limpio, <i>clean</i> ,	}	<i>with</i>	{	El papel está —
sucio, <i>dirty</i> ,				El suelo está —
				La casa está —

3. Put the finished sentences of 2 in the plural.

4. Explain why *ser* and *estar* are the proper verbs in the respective sentences of 1 and 2.

B. Para estar bien de salud es preciso habitar una casa sana. En tal casa admitimos el aire y la luz del sol por anchas ventanas. Si no hay luz, las habitaciones están oscuras y vemos mal. En los Estados Unidos alumbramos la casa por medio del gas o de la luz eléctrica y entonces todo está claro. Como el sentido de la vista está en los ojos, debemos tener bastante luz para ver bien sin hacer daño a los ojos. Una madre cubre los tiernos ojos del niño, cuando hay demasiada luz en la habitación, para guardar el niño de la ceguedad. Los hombres que no ven son ciegos.

C. 1. ¿Cómo está Vd. de salud? 2. ¿Por qué admitimos el aire en la casa? 3. ¿Por qué necesitamos la luz? 4. ¿Cuál sentido está en los ojos? 5. ¿Está oscura la sala? 6. ¿Cómo está alumbrada? 7. ¿Por qué alumbramos la casa? 8. ¿Hay bastante luz aquí para ver bien? 9. ¿Cuándo ven Vds. bien? 10. ¿Qué es un ciego?

D. 1. The gentlemen are English, the ladies German. 2. Are the little children happy or unhappy? 3. The light of the sun is

very bright and gives bright colors to the world. 4. There are many electric lights in the house. 5. In a clean house the floors of all the rooms are clean. 6. The president of the United States lives in the White House. 7. We are not blind, because we see very well. 8. We need the air in order to breathe. 9. Is there air enough? 10. The room is too dark to see well. 11. The collar and cuffs of the shirt are dirty. 12. He wears a brown cap to protect his head. 13. The nuts are yellow because they are not ripe. 14. There is no soap nor clean towel. 15. The ladies are sad because the children are sick. 16. The Spanish flag is yellow with red stripes.

## LESSON V

32.

¿ De quién es este sombrero ?

*Whose is this hat ?*

¿ Es el sombrero de Juan ?

*Is it John's hat ?*

Este viejo sombrero es de Juan.

*This old hat is John's.*

¿ Dónde compra Vd. un sombrero nuevo ?

*Where do you buy a new hat ?*

En casa de Wanamaker.

*At Wanamaker's.*

Ese libro es de Pedro.

*That book (near you) is Peter's.*

Aquel libro es de Carlos.

*That book (over there) is Charles's.*

La familia de un hombre.

*A man's family.*

**33.** Possession is expressed in Spanish by the preposition *de* before the name of the possessor: *el lápiz de Paco, Frank's pencil; los zapatos de mi abuelo, my grandfather's shoes.*

*a.* English *at* may be rendered *en casa de*, when *at* is followed by a noun in the possessive case without the name of the thing possessed; as, *at Henry's*, meaning *at Henry's house, office, or store, en casa de Enrique.*

*b.* The possessive interrogative pronoun *whose* is expressed in Spanish by *de quién*, which is usually separated from the name of the thing possessed by the verb:

¿ De quién es el cortaplumas ?

*Whose penknife is it ?*

¿ De quién es aquella casa ?

*Whose house is that ?*



### 34. Demonstratives. The demonstrative adjectives are

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER	
SING.	<b>este</b>	<b>esta</b>	<b>esto</b>	<i>this</i>
PLUR.	<b>estos</b>	<b>estas</b>	(lacking)	<i>these</i>
SING.	<b>ese</b>	<b>esa</b>	<b>eso</b>	<i>that</i> (near you)
PLUR.	<b>esos</b>	<b>esas</b>	(lacking)	<i>those</i>
SING.	<b>aquel</b>	<b>aquella</b>	<b>aquello</b>	<i>that</i> (yonder)
PLUR.	<b>aquellos</b>	<b>aquellas</b>	(lacking)	<i>those</i>

a. Distinguish carefully between **ese**, meaning *that* near the person addressed, and **aquel**, *that*, distant from both speaker and person addressed.

b. Corresponding to the adjectives *this* and *that* are the adverbs *here* and *there* :

**este** libro aquí, *this book here*  
**ese** libro ahí, *that book there* (near you)  
**aquel** libro allí, *that book* (over) *there*

c. When the demonstratives are not followed by a noun, they are pronouns, taking the gender and number of the noun to which they refer, and are marked by an accent.

**Aquí** tengo dos plumas : **ésta** es de Juan, **aquella** de María. *Here I have two pens : this one is John's, that one is Mary's.*

d. The neuter forms stand for things not mentioned by name : **¿Qué es esto?** *What is this?* or for clauses or ideas : **¡Eso no!** *Not that* (what you say). **Por eso**, *for that* (reason), *therefore*.

#### EXERCISE 5

A. a. *Substitute Spanish for the English in these sentences and translate* : 1. Esta pequeña casa aquí es *Henry's*. 2. Aquellos libros allí son *Mary's*. 3. La familia *John's* está aquí. 4. Vivo at *Charles's*. 5. *Whose* son estos cuellos?

b. *Put the Spanish words for this and that (both forms) with each of the following words ; also give plurals* : 1. — puerta cerrada. 2. — ventana abierta. 3. — muchacho inglés. 4. — casa verde. 5. — papel azul.

*c. In the expressions written for b, insert the proper form of ser or estar between the noun and the qualifying adjective.*

*B.* Esta parte del cuerpo es el brazo. Al extremo de los brazos están las manos. Ésta es la mano derecha y ésta otra la izquierda. Éstos son dedos. Con los dedos tocamos las cosas para sentir si son blandas o duras, suaves o ásperas; pero el sentido del tacto está en la piel suave que cubre todo el cuerpo. Si toco la madera, hallo que es dura, pero si tomo el pan fresco en la mano, es blando. Si compro pan en casa del panadero, pregunto si está fresco.

También las partes interiores del cuerpo conocen el tacto con otras substancias: y por eso sentimos las comidas y bebidas frías o calientes cuando bajan por la garganta al estómago. El tacto ayuda al sentido de la vista: por eso sabemos que todos los objetos no están a igual distancia, sino que uno está delante y otro detrás, que los unos están cerca y los otros lejos.

*C.* 1. ¿Cuál es la mano derecha? ¿y la izquierda? 2. ¿Qué está en las manos de Enrique? 3. ¿Quién está sentado a la derecha de Vd.? 4. ¿Son de Carlos o de María aquellos libros allí? 5. ¿Cuál sentido está en la piel? 6. ¿Cómo sentimos si una cosa es blanda? 7. ¿Dónde compra Vd. pan fresco? 8. ¿Está duro o blando aquel pan? 9. ¿Están abiertas esas ventanas? 10. ¿De quién son esos sombreros ahí?

*D.* 1. These windows are open; those (yonder) are closed. 2. That door (near you) is locked. Is the key there? 3. There is no key for this door. 4. He asks if this child lives in that house. 5. John's brother lives in Mexico. 6. Henry is seated at Mary's right hand. 7. That baker's bread is not fresh; I buy Genaro's bread. 8. This is a child's hat. 9. Whose new books are these? Charles' books. 10. Who is at that gentleman's? 11. The servant cleans Alfred's shoes. 12. That penknife does not cut well. 13. These matches do not burn; they are no good. 14. Whose napkin is this here on the floor?

## LESSON VI

## 35.

Yo tengo mi libro.

*I have my book.*

Tú tienes tu libro.

*Thou hast thy book.*Él } tiene su libro.  
Ella }He } has { his } book.  
She } her }  
It } its }

Usted (Vd.) tiene su libro.

*You have your book.*

Nosotros tenemos nuestro libro.

*We have our book.*

Vosotros tenéis vuestro libro.

*You have your book.*

Ellos, ellas tienen su libro.

*They have their book.*

Ustedes (Vds.) tienen su libro.

*You have your book.*

## 36. Personal Subject Pronouns have the following forms :

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. yo, <i>I</i>	nosotros } (fem.) nosotras } <i>we</i>
2. tú, <i>thou</i>	vosotros } (fem.) vosotras } <i>you</i>
3. él, <i>he</i> ella, <i>she</i> } or <i>it</i>	ellos } (fem.) ellas } <i>they</i>

a. The pronoun **tú** and its plural **vosotros**, with their corresponding verb-endings, are used in speaking to members of the family, to children, or to inferiors. Foreign speakers must use **usted** (Vd.) with the 3d person singular of the verb. **Usted** is a contraction of **vuestra merced**, *your grace*, which was formerly used in polite intercourse.

b. The personal subject pronouns, commonly omitted, are used —

(1) When there is no verb: ¿Quién es? Yo. *Who is it? I.*

(2) To emphasize the subject of the verb, since it is not possible to stress the verb-ending: ¿Tiene él mi libro? *Has he my book?*

(3) To mark a contrast between two persons: Él es alemán, pero ella es española, *He is German, but she is Spanish.*

## 37. Possessive Adjectives.

mi (mis), *my*nuestro (-a, -os, -as), *our*tu (tus), *your*vuestro (-a, -os, -as), *your*su (sus), *his, her, its; your (for usted)*su (sus), *their; your (for ustedes)*

a. These adjectives must be plural before plural nouns: **mis zapatos**, *my shoes*; **sus pantalones**, *his trousers*.

b. **Nuestro** and **vuestro** have feminine forms: **nuestra casa**, *our house*; **vuestras familias**, *your families*.

c. Possessive adjectives must be repeated before each noun modified: **mi padre y mi madre**, *my father and mother*.

For exceptions see section 141.

**38. Idiomatic Expressions.** a. A statement about one's residence may be made by **tener su casa**, *to have one's house, reside*.

**Tengo mi casa en el Hotel Inglaterra.** *I live at the Hotel Inglaterra.*

b. Note the idiomatic meaning of the subject pronouns when used with **ser**.

<b>Soy yo.</b>	<i>It is I.</i>	¿ <b>Es Vd.?</b>	<i>Is it you?</i>
<b>Somos nosotros.</b>	<i>It is we.</i>	¿ <b>Son ellos?</b>	<i>Is it they?</i>

The pronoun may also precede:

<b>Él es.</b>	<i>It is he.</i>	<b>Yo soy.</b>	<i>It is I.</i>
---------------	------------------	----------------	-----------------

c. Reference to a person's relatives is politely made by prefixing the titles **señor**, **señora**: **su señor padre**, *your father*.

d. To inquire if another agrees with a statement you have just made:

¿ <b>No es verdad?</b> or simply ¿ <b>verdad?</b>	<i>Isn't it true?</i>
<b>Viene mañana,</b> ¿ <b>no es verdad?</b>	<i>He comes to-morrow, doesn't he?</i>

e. Leave-takings: **hasta mañana**, *till to-morrow*; **hasta luego**, *farewell for a little while*; **adiós**, *good-by*.

#### EXERCISE 6

A. a. *Learn the complete conjugation of the present tense, indicative, with and without the personal subject pronouns, of comprar, vender, vivir, ser, and estar. See sections 240 and 250.*

b. *Insert subject pronouns and possessive adjectives for the blanks in the following sentences:* 1. ¿ **Tiene Vd.** — libro en la mano? 2. — **no tengo** — libro. 3. **Juan tiene** — lápices. 4. — **vivimos en** — casas. 5. — **no viven en** — casas. 6. **María**

escribe a — madre pero — no contesta. 7. ¿Está Juan o María a la puerta? Es — y no —. 8. — tengo — libros pero no — pluma. 9. Carlos escribe a — hermano pero — no contesta. 10. ¿Tienen Vds. — libros españoles?

*B.* 1. Nuestra familia consta del padre, de la madre y de los hijos, dos niños y una niña. Mi abuelo es el padre de mi madre; por eso, soy su nieto. El hermano de mi padre es mi tío, y su esposa es mi tía. Yo soy su sobrino y sus hijos son mis primos. Tenemos nuestra casa en la calle de Fulton, número dos, de esta ciudad.

2. — ¿Quién es?

— Soy yo, Juan. Su señor padre está en casa, ¿no es verdad?

— No está. Estamos todos malos aquí y está él en la fábrica.

— ¿Quiénes son todos?

— Somos nosotros la madre, el hermano y yo.

— ¿Está visible su madre?

— Ella no, porque está en cama muy enferma.

— Es lástima. Hasta mañana.

— Adiós.

*C.* 1. ¿De quiénes consta su familia? 2. ¿Tiene Vd. un tío? ¿y primos? 3. ¿De quién son sus primos los hijos? 4. ¿Quién es el padre de su padre? ¿y la madre de su padre? 5. ¿Está en casa su señora madre? 6. ¿Qué tiene Vd. en la mano? 7. ¿De quién tiene Vd. el lápiz? 8. ¿Dónde tienen Vds. su casa en esta ciudad? 9. ¿En qué ciudad tenemos nuestra casa? 10. ¿De quién es la casa en que vive Vd.?

*D.* 1. I have John's pencil and he has my pen. 2. What has Charles in his right hand? He has Peter's books. 3. Is your father at home? No, sir, he is at my aunt's. 4. Their children are my father's nephews. 5. Our family consists of the father and<sup>1</sup> the mother and<sup>1</sup> my brothers. Our grandmother resides with us.<sup>2</sup> 6. Where do you reside? We reside on Macon St. 7. Mary writes to her cousin Jane, but she does not answer. 8. Who are you? It

<sup>1</sup> Insert *de*.

<sup>2</sup> *nosotros*.

is I, Peter, with my cousin. He has a letter for<sup>a</sup> you. 9. This house has all the windows shut. 10. These United States have many large cities. 11. Who has George's cap? Have you the cap? 12. Whose Spanish letter is this here in the yellow envelope? 13. This umbrella is a gift from your father, isn't it? 14. My shirts and collars and all my clean clothes are in my brother's trunk. 15. You have my grammar and he has my Spanish dictionary.

<sup>a</sup> para.

## LESSON VII

## 39. The Cardinal Numerals are

0	cero	22	veinte y dos (veintidos)
1	un-o, -a	30	treinta
2	dos	40	cuarenta
3	tres	50	cincuenta
4	cuatro	60	sesenta
5	cinco	70	setenta
6	seis	80	ochenta
7	siete	90	noventa
8	ocho	100	ciento
9	nueve	200	doscientos (-as)
10	diez	300	trescientos (-as)
11	once	400	cuatrocientos (-as)
12	doce	500	quinientos (-as)
13	trece	600	seiscientos (-as)
14	catorce	700	setecientos (-as)
15	quince	800	ochocientos (-as)
16	diez y seis (dieciséis)	900	novecientos (-as)
17	diez y siete (diecisiete)	1,000	mil
18	diez y ocho (dieciocho)	2,000	dos mil, <i>etc.</i>
19	diez y nueve (diecinueve)	100,000	cien mil
20	veinte	200,000	doscientos (-as) mil, <i>etc.</i>
21	veinte y uno (veintiuno)	1,000,000	un millón

a. The cardinal numerals are invariable except **uno** (*una casa, one house*) and the compounds of **ciento** (*doscientas mujeres, two hundred women*).

b. **Uno** drops **o** before masculine nouns even in compound numerals: **un hombre**, *one man*; **treinta y un libros**, *thirty-one books*.

c. **Ciento** becomes **cient** before nouns: **cient pesos**, *one hundred dollars*; **cient mil**, *one hundred thousand*. But **101**, **ciento uno**, etc.

d. With **ciento** and **mil** the indefinite article is not used: **ciento**, *one hundred*; **mil**, *one thousand*.

e. Above 900, Spanish speakers do not count by hundreds; **1200**, for example, is **mil doscientos**.

f. The conjunction **y**, *and*, is used only before the last numeral in a series: **1555**, **mil quinientos cincuenta y cinco**.

g. After **un millón**, the preposition **de** is required: **un millón de duros**, *a million dollars*.

#### 40. The Ordinal Numerals are

1st primero	5th quinto	9th noveno ( <i>or nono</i> )
2d segundo	6th sexto ( <i>or sexto</i> )	10th décimo
3d tercero	7th séptimo ( <i>or sétimo</i> )	11th undécimo
4th cuarto	8th octavo	12th duodécimo

a. Abbreviations according to gender and number are **1<sup>o</sup>**, **2<sup>a</sup>**, **3<sup>os</sup>**, **4<sup>as</sup>**, etc.

b. In titles of sovereigns, chapters of books, names of streets, etc., the ordinals are used only to tenth:

<b>Carlos Quinto</b> , <i>Charles the Fifth</i> .	<b>la avenida tercera</b> , <i>Third Avenue</i> .
<b>Alfonso Trece</b> , <i>Alfonso XIII</i> .	<b>la calle catorce al este</b> , <i>East Fourteenth St.</i>
<b>página veinticinco</b> , <i>page twenty-five</i> .	<b>la calle 42 al oeste</b> , <i>West 42d St.</i>

c. In giving dates, **primero** is used for the first day of the month, but the cardinal numerals are used for the other days. The proper form for writing a date is **el 2 de mayo de 1808**, *May 2d, 1808*. In letters, the name of the place and the date appear in the same line without the article: **Madrid, 8 de abril de 1910**.

d. To inquire the date: **¿A cuántos estamos?** In replying, begin with **a**: **a quince de octubre**, *the fifteenth of October*.

41. *Ve* expresses repetition :

<i>una vez, once</i>	<i>cuántas veces, how often</i>
<i>dos veces, twice</i>	<i>muchas veces, often</i>
<i>tres veces, three times</i>	<i>algunas veces, sometimes</i>
<i>la primera vez, the first time</i>	<i>raras veces, seldom</i>
<i>cada vez, each time</i>	<i>repetidas veces, repeatedly</i>

a. The English indefinite article after such expressions is rendered by *al, por*, or the definite article : *¿cuántas veces la semana, al día, por año ? how often a week, a day, a year ?*

42. *Los doce meses del año*, the twelve months of the year :

<i>enero, January</i>	<i>julio, July</i>
<i>febrero, February</i>	<i>agosto, August</i>
<i>marzo, March</i>	<i>septiembre, September</i>
<i>abril, April</i>	<i>octubre, October</i>
<i>mayo, May</i>	<i>noviembre, November</i>
<i>junio, June</i>	<i>diciembre, December</i>

43. *Los siete días de la semana*, the seven days of the week :

<i>lunes, Monday</i>	<i>jueves, Thursday</i>
<i>martes, Tuesday</i>	<i>viernes, Friday</i>
<i>miércoles, Wednesday</i>	<i>sábado, Saturday</i>
	<i>domingo, Sunday</i>

<i>el lunes, on Monday</i>	<i>el jueves pasado, last Thursday</i>
<i>los martes, on Tuesdays</i>	<i>el último día del mes, the last day</i>
<i>el miércoles que viene, next</i>	<i>of the month</i>
<i>Wednesday</i>	

a. The names of the months, days, and seasons are usually written without capitalization.

b. The definite article is required before expressions of time that are modified by an adjective : *la semana pasada, last week.*

c. In expressions of time the definite article appears where English uses the preposition *on* : *el viernes, on Friday. El vapor sale el quince del mes, The steamer leaves on the fifteenth of the month.*



## 44. Las estaciones del año, the seasons of the year:

la primavera, *spring*el otoño, *autumn*el verano, *summer*el invierno, *winter*

## 45. Las divisiones del día, the divisions of the day:

la mañana, *morning*ayer, *yesterday*el día, *day*hoy, *to-day*la tarde, *afternoon*mañana, *to-morrow*la noche, *night*anoche, *last night*de día, *by day*esta noche, *to-night*mañana por la mañana, *to-morrow morning*

## EXERCISE 7

## A. 1. Read in Spanish. Add in Spanish.

5	21	16	105
2	33	45	250
8	15	62	500
7	18	75	725
4	9	26	375

2. Read. El 4 de julio de 1776.  
El 12 de octubre de 1492.  
El 1° de enero de 1911.

## 3. Give in Spanish the date of to-day.

Give in Spanish the date of your birthday (día de cumpleaños).

B. 1. Medimos el tiempo así: sesenta segundos hacen un minuto; sesenta de éstos componen una hora; veinticuatro horas un día; siete días una semana; cuatro semanas y media un mes; doce meses un año y cien años un siglo.

2.

Amigo mío: NUEVA YORK, 17 de mayo de 1912

Por la noche estudio mis lecciones de aritmética y de español para la mañana. Pero esta noche no estudio porque tengo un periódico de hoy. Leo que éste es el día de cumpleaños de Alfonso

Trce, rey de España. Su esposa y Jorge Quinto de Inglaterra son primos. Dice el periódico que los reyes van a estar juntos en Londres el verano que viene desde el martes hasta el sábado.

C. 1. ¿Cuáles son los días de la semana? ¿los meses del año? ¿las estaciones? 2. ¿Cuántos días tiene una semana? ¿el mes de enero? 3. ¿Cuántos días hay en el año? 4. ¿Qué día de la semana tenemos hoy? 5. ¿A cuántos estamos hoy? 6. ¿Quién es el rey de España? ¿el rey de Inglaterra? 7. ¿Cuál es su día de cumpleaños? 8. ¿Cuál es la fecha del periódico de hoy? 9. ¿Qué lecciones tiene Vd. el lunes por la mañana? 10. ¿Estudian Vds. sus lecciones por la tarde o por la noche? 11. ¿Cuántas veces lee Vd. cada frase? 12. ¿Cuántas veces al día sale un tren para Chicago?

D. 1. The months of spring are March, April, and May; of summer, June, July, and August. 2. There are three hundred and sixty-five days in this year. Next year has three hundred and sixty-six days because it is leap year. 3. To-day's paper has the date Wednesday, the second of May. 4. I am living at 245 East 3d St. 5. On Tuesday morning we have lessons in (de) arithmetic and Spanish. 6. My brother's birthday is July 7, 1898. 7. The father of the king of Spain, Alfonso the Twelfth, was the son of Isabella the Second. 8. This is the twentieth century. 9. Summer begins on the twenty-first of June. 10. August is the eighth month of the year. 11. There are a hundred days from January first to the tenth of April. 12. When we study the Spanish lesson, we read each sentence several times. 13. My brother comes home twice a day. 14. December is the last month of the year. 15. These children are in their seventh year. 16. The lesson is on page forty-five, from the third to the thirtieth line. 17. The magazine comes on Fridays. 18. The office is at number fifty East 23d St. 19. He is sick for the first time in (de) his life. 20. The steamer leaves to-morrow morning. 21. The steamer for Málaga leaves twice a week. 22. It is the third of October. 23. A million dollars is enough for any (cualquier) man. 24. The year 1492 is in the fifteenth century.

## LESSON VIII

**46. Shortened Form of Adjectives.** 1. Before a masculine singular noun the following adjectives drop the final *o* :

uno, <i>one, an or a</i>	bueno, <i>good</i>	primero, <i>first</i>
alguno, <i>some</i>	malo, <i>bad</i>	tercero, <i>third</i>
ninguno, <i>no, none, no one</i>		postrero, <i>last</i>

un buen hombre, *a good man*  
 mal tiempo, *bad weather*  
 algún día, *some day*  
 el primer mes, *the first month*

But  
 un hombre malo, *a bad man*  
 el primero del mes, *the first of the month*

2. **Grande** becomes **gran** before either a masculine or a feminine singular noun that begins with a consonant :

un gran señor, *a great lord*  
 una gran casa, *a great house*

But grande hombre, *great man*  
 un grande amigo, *a great friend*

*a.* When **grande** refers to size it is frequently placed after the noun :  
 el río grande, *the big river*                      casa grande, *big house*

**47. Comparison of Adjectives.** The comparative degree of Spanish adjectives is formed by using **más**, *more*, with the positive. The superlative is made by prefixing the definite article to the comparative.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>rich</i>	<i>richer</i>	<i>richest</i>
rico	más rico	el más rico
rica	más rica	la más rica
ricos	más ricos	los más ricos
ricas	más ricas	las más ricas

*a.* In forming the superlative degree, a possessive adjective may be substituted for the definite article :

mi caballo más fuerte, *my strongest horse*  
 nuestra mejor tinta, *our best ink*

**48. Irregular Comparison.**bueno, mejor, el mejor, *good, better, best*malo, peor, el peor, *bad, worse, worst*grande, mayor, el mayor, *great, greater, greatest; older, oldest*pequeño, menor, el menor, *small, smaller, smallest; younger, youngest*

a. Grande and pequeño are also compared regularly. In speaking of persons mayor means *older*, menor *younger*, while the regular comparison refers to size. **Mi hermano mayor**, *my older brother*. **Mi hermano es más grande que yo**, *My brother is taller than I*.

b. Corresponding to these adjectives are the following adverbs:

bien, mejor, *well, better or best*mal, peor, *badly, worse or worst*mucho, más, *much (a great deal), more or most*poco, menos, *little, less or least*

1. Mucho and poco are also adjectives.

2. The superlative of an adverb is usually the same as the comparative. See section 145, 6.

**49. Than** after comparatives is **que**; but when the comparison means *a greater number than* or *a less number than*, **de** must be used.

Tiene más dinero que yo. *He has more money than I.*

Tiene más de mil pesos. *He has more than a thousand dollars.*

**50. Comparison of Equality.** The comparison of things by the correlative words *as . . . as*, *as (so) much . . . as*, *as (so) many . . . as*, is called the comparison of equality. Before nouns *as (so) much*, *as (so) many*, are adjectives; hence **tanto** and its feminine and plural forms **tanta**, **tantos**, **tantas** are used. Before adjectives *as (so)* is an adverb and the short invariable form **tan** is required. The invariable **como** introduces the second term of the comparison.

Tengo tanto pan y tantas manzanas como Juan. *I have as much bread and as many apples as John.*

Son tan ricos como reyes. *They are as rich as kings.*

**51. Agreement of Adjectives.** An adjective agreeing with two nouns is put in the plural.

If the nouns are of different genders, the masculine plural adjective is generally used.

**El hombre y la mujer son ricos.** *The man and the woman are rich.*  
**El presidente y sus hijas están enfermos.** *The president and his daughters are ill.*

**52. Position of Adjectives.** Spanish adjectives are usually placed after their nouns ; but common adjectives like **bueno**, **malo**, **pequeño**, **grande**, **mucho**, and numerals generally precede the noun :

un libro rojo, *a red book*  
 el pequeño sombrero, *the little hat*  
 cinco hombres, *five men*

*a.* An adjective modified by an adverb is usually placed after its noun : **un buen caballo**, *a good horse*, but **un caballo muy bueno**, *a very good horse*.

*b.* A superlative adjective has the article before the noun while the remainder may follow the noun :

la roca **más elevada**, *the highest rock*  
 el buey **más fuerte**, *the strongest ox*

*c.* Some adjectives have a different meaning according as they precede or follow the noun. For these and for further discussion of the position of adjectives see section 139.

**53. Idiomatic Expressions.** *a.* After a superlative adjective, use the preposition **de** :

*the youngest in the family*, **el menor de la familia**  
*the prettiest girl in the town*, **la niña más linda de la ciudad**

*b.* To express age, use the verb **tener**, *to have*.

¿ Qué edad tiene Vd. ? (lit. *What age have you ?*)  
 ¿ Cuántos años tiene Vd. ? (lit. *How many years have you ?*) } *How old are you ?*

**Tengo veinte años.** *I am twenty years old.*

**Mi padre es mayor que mi madre,** *My father is older than my mother,*  
**pero no tiene tantos años como mi tío.** *but not so old as my uncle.*

## EXERCISE 8

A. a. Use the Spanish adjectives for good, bad, great, first, best, richest, with each of the following; then, put in the plural.

El hombre	La casa
La mujer	El libro

b. Supply the proper word for than and translate: 1. Es más rico — yo. 2. Tiene más — cinco perros. 3. Un peso vale más — una peseta. 4. Yo tengo menos — una peseta. 5. Carlos tiene diez años más — yo. 6. Juana es menor — su hermano.

B. 1. La tierra no tiene la superficie plana sino cortada por alturas que son las montañas. Los terrenos llanos entre dos cordilleras son valles. Los montes están formados en su interior de piedra, de donde sacan los hombres las varias clases de minerales y metalés como el carbón, el hierro, la plata y el oro. Los montes dan origen a las fuentes y a los ríos que riegan los bosques y las selvas que suministran al hombre la madera para su casa, y los pastos de muchos animales.

2. Algunos animales son muy útiles. El elefante es el animal más grande del mundo; pero el caballo es mejor para el trabajo, aunque menos fuerte. Son también buenos el buey y la vaca. De la piel de estos animales hace el hombre la mejor clase de cuero para los zapatos que protegen sus pies. Para abrigar su cuerpo contra el tiempo frío, el hombre emplea la lana de la oveja, de la cual hace vestidos, un sombrero para la cabeza, una jaqueta para cubrir la espalda, el pecho y los brazos, pantalones para las piernas. El hombre come la carne de los animales, especialmente la carne de vaca, de carnero y de cerdo. La leche es también un alimento de grande importancia.

C. 1. ¿Qué clase de metales saca el hombre de las montañas? 2. ¿De dónde sacan los hombres el oro y la plata? 3. ¿Sacan tanto hierro como oro? 4. ¿Qué saca el hombre de los bosques? 5. ¿Cuál es el animal más grande del mundo? 6. ¿Qué vestidos hace el hombre de la lana? 7. ¿Tiene Vd. un hermano mayor?

¿una hermana menor? 8. ¿Cuántos años tiene ella? 9. ¿Es un hombre tan fuerte como un caballo? 10. ¿Qué clase de carne comen Vds.? 11. ¿Beben Vds. tanta leche como agua? 12. ¿Cuál es el mejor alimento para los hombres?

*D.* 1. From the forests (the) men get wood for their houses. 2. They do not get as much gold as silver. 3. My older brother has a better horse than I. 4. We use sheep's wool for our best garments. 5. What animal is as strong as the ox? 6. Do you eat as much meat as bread? 7. Bad work is worse than no work. 8. A man wears a hat to protect his head. 9. I have more animals than you. I have more than a hundred. 10. A good cow and a good horse are very useful for men. 11. John is the oldest boy in the class. His sister is the prettiest girl in the town. 12. A great man does not always live in a large house. 13. January is the first month in the year. 14. Beef and mutton are a better food than pork. 15. Our richest friends live in London.

## LESSON IX

**54. Radical-changing Verbs.** Many Spanish verbs having the radical vowel *e* or *o* change the vowel in the present tense when the radical is stressed in pronunciation: *e* becomes *ie*, *o* becomes *ue*. The radical in the present tense is stressed in the 1st, 2d, and 3d person singular, and the 3d person plural.

(To find the radical of a Spanish verb, drop the ending of the infinitive: e.g. *pensar*, radical *pens*.)

### PRESENT INDICATIVE

<b>Pensar, to think, intend</b>	<b>Encontrar, to find, meet</b>
SING. 1. <i>pienso, I think</i>	SING. 1. <i>encuentro, I find</i>
2. <i>piensas, thou thinkest</i>	2. <i>encuentras, thou findest</i>
3. <i>piensa, he thinks</i>	3. <i>encuentra, he finds</i>
PLUR. 1. <i>pensamos, we think</i>	PLUR. 1. <i>encontramos, we find</i>
2. <i>pensáis, you think</i>	2. <i>encontráis, you find</i>
3. <i>piensan, they think</i>	3. <i>encuentran, they find</i>
¿Piensa Vd.? <i>Do you intend?</i>	¿Encuentra Vd.? <i>Do you find?</i>

**Querer, to desire, wish, be willing**

- SING. 1. **quiero, I wish, am willing**  
 2. **quieres, thou wishest**  
 3. **quiere, he wishes**

- PLUR. 1. **queremos, we wish**  
 2. **queréis, you wish**  
 3. **quieren, they wish**

¿Quiere Vd.? *Will you?*

**Sentir, to feel, perceive, regret, be sorry**

- SING. 1. **siento, I feel, am sorry**  
 2. **sientes, thou feelest, art sorry**  
 3. **siente, he feels, is sorry**

- PLUR. 1. **sentimos, we feel, are sorry**  
 2. **sentís, you feel, are sorry**  
 3. **sienten, they feel, are sorry**

¿Siente Vd.? *Do you feel?*

**Poder, to be able, can**

- SING. 1. **puedo, I can**  
 2. **puedes, thou canst**  
 3. **puede, he can**

- PLUR. 1. **podemos, we can**  
 2. **podéis, you can**  
 3. **pueden, they can**

¿Puede Vd.? *Can you?*

**Dormir, to sleep**

- SING. 1. **duermo, I sleep**  
 2. **duermes, thou sleepest**  
 3. **duerme, he sleeps**

- PLUR. 1. **dormimos, we sleep**  
 2. **dormís, you sleep**  
 3. **duermen, they sleep**

¿Duerme Vd.? *Do you sleep?*

Some verbs of the *ir* conjugation change *e* to *i*, as

**Pedir, to ask for**

- SING. 1. **pido, I ask**  
 2. **pides, thou askest**  
 3. **pide, he asks**

- PLUR. 1. **pedimos, we ask**  
 2. **pedís, you ask**  
 3. **piden, they ask**

¿Pide Vd.? *Do you ask?*

**55. The Infinitive.** A verb depending on another verb is frequently put in the infinitive mood; sometimes with a connecting preposition, but many verbs, such as **poder, querer, sentir, pensar, ver, oír**, are followed directly by the infinitive.

**Pienso ir a Cuba.**

¿Puede Vd. dormir?

**Queremos saber.**

*I intend to go to Cuba.*

*Can you sleep?*

*We wish to know.*



**56. Indirect Object.** The indirect object of a verb is that person or thing interested in the action expressed by the verb, but neither performing the action nor receiving it directly; thus, in *He writes Charles a letter*, "Charles" is the indirect object. In English the indirect object is often indicated by merely placing it before the direct object. If the indirect object is placed elsewhere in the sentence, it is preceded by some preposition, usually *to*: thus, *He writes a letter to Charles*. In Spanish, **Escribe una carta a Carlos**; but the preposition **a** must always precede the indirect object in Spanish no matter what its position in the sentence: thus, **Escribe a Carlos una carta**.

*a.* Verbs denoting separation require the preposition **a** before the name of the person from whom things are obtained just as though it were an indirect object. Hence **a** translates 'from' in such expressions as the following:

**comprar a un español**, *to buy from a Spaniard*  
**pedir un favor a mi padre**, *to ask my father a favor*  
**oír el cuento a una gitana**, *to hear the story from a gypsy woman*  
**robar el dinero al ciego**, *to steal the money from the blind man*

*b.* In speaking of the person or clothing, the definite article is used instead of the possessive adjective, and the indirect object indicates the person if necessary:

<b>Salvó la vida al hombre.</b>	<i>He saved the man's life.</i>
<b>El viento llevó el sombrero a mi padre.</b>	<i>The wind carried off my father's hat.</i>
<b>En vez de contestar: — No puedo ir, — tomo el sombrero y voy.</b>	<i>Instead of replying, "I cannot go," I take my hat and go.</i>
<b>Romperé la cabeza a quien quiera oponerse a mi entrada.</b>	<i>I will break the head of any one who tries to oppose my entrance.</i>

**57. Direct Object. Personal a.** The direct object of a verb is that person or thing which suffers the action of the verb. In Spanish, when the direct object denotes a definite person or personified thing, or is a proper noun, the preposition **a** must precede it.

<b>Encuentran un peso.</b>	<i>They find a dollar.</i>
<b>Encuentran a su padre.</b>	<i>They find their father.</i>
<b>Visitán a Valparaíso.</b>	<i>They visit Valparaiso.</i>

The use of the preposition **a** before the direct personal object is very important in Spanish. It permits placing the direct object before the verb. **A Eduardo Séptimo sigue Jorge Quinto, George the Fifth succeeds Edward the Seventh.**

**58. Idiomatic Expressions.** *a.* In regard to the weather, use the impersonal verb **hace, it makes** :

¿ Qué tal tiempo hace ?	<i>What kind of weather is it ?</i>
Hace mal tiempo.	<i>It is bad weather.</i>
Hace buen tiempo.	<i>It is good weather.</i>
Hace mucho calor.	<i>It is very warm.</i>
Hace mucho frío.	<i>It is very cold.</i>
Hace viento.	<i>It is windy.</i>

*b.* When the conditions of the weather concern visible objects, **hay, there is**, introduces the expression :

Hay sol. <i>The sun is shining.</i>	Hay lodo. <i>It is muddy.</i>
Hay polvo. <i>It is dusty.</i>	Hay neblina. <i>It is foggy.</i>
Hay luna esta noche.	<i>There is a moon to-night.</i>

*c.* Statements concerning the person commonly employ **tener, to have**, instead of the verb *to be*, as in English.

Tengo frío. <i>I am cold.</i>	Tengo hambre. <i>I am hungry.</i>
Tenemos sueño. <i>We are sleepy.</i>	Tengo sed. <i>I am thirsty.</i>
Tengo mucho calor.	<i>I am very warm.</i>
Tienen prisa.	<i>They are in a hurry.</i>
Tiene los ojos azules.	<i>His eyes are blue.</i>

*d.* As the words **calor, frío**, etc. used with **hace, hay**, and **tener** are nouns, the adverb **muy, very**, cannot be used, but instead of it the adjective **mucho**, which must agree with the noun : thus, **Tengo mucho calor y mucha sed, I am very hot and thirsty.**

*e.* **Querer** is a very important verb. Its general meaning, *to desire, to wish*, includes all kinds of willing.

Will you ?	} = ¿ Quiere Vd. ?	<i>If you please. Si Vd. quiere.</i>
Are you willing ?		
Will you have ?		

*To mean, querer decir*; as, *What does this word mean ? ¿ Qué quiere decir esta palabra ?*

## EXERCISE 9

A. a. Find in the vocabulary the infinitive of *despierta*, *muere*, *vistes*, *sirvo*, *cuentan*.

b. Insert the preposition *a* in the following sentences. Tell why it is necessary. 1. La madre da una manzana — su niño. 2. El chico pide un vaso de agua — su madre. 3. Juan ama — su madre. 4. Este señor escribe — su sobrino. 5. No encontramos — nuestra hermana.

c. Translate: 1. He asks for an apple. 2. We can see. 3. I wish to ask. 4. I can sleep. 5. They are sorry. 6. We are cold. 7. They are very hungry. 8. It is warm. 9. What will you have? 10. I intend to study. 11. How much does he ask? 12. What do you mean? 13. Is the sun shining? 14. It is not cold. 15. I am very warm.

B. Cuando Enrique toca una campanilla u otro instrumento, suena; y él oye el sonido porque tiene el sentido del oído. Un sonido confuso es un ruido. Algunas veces no podemos oír bien a causa del ruido de la calle.

Los demás sentidos son la vista, el gusto, el olfato y el tacto.

Los ojos son los órganos del sentido de la vista. Hay hombres que no pueden ver: estos pobres son ciegos. Y en la obscuridad estamos todos ciegos, porque sin luz no es posible ver.

Enrique siente el sabor de los alimentos en la boca donde tocan la lengua. Pues el chico no quiere el café amargo, ni la fruta ácida, pide a su madre azúcar que es dulce. Ella da el azúcar a su hijo.

La nariz de Enrique sirve para sentir los olores. Puede percibir que una flor huele bien o mal, y que la habitación huele a tabaco.

El sonido que de la garganta viene a la boca es la voz; recibe varias modulaciones de la lengua, de los dientes y de los labios. Enrique grita o habla en voz alta a su abuelo porque éste es sordo: pero a su madre puede hablar en voz baja porque ella no tiene el oído duro<sup>1</sup> y está cerca. Pero si está lejos, habla en voz alta también a su madre.

<sup>1</sup> tener el oído duro = ser sordo.

C. 1. ¿Cuántos sentidos tienen Vds.? ¿Cuáles son? 2. ¿Oye Vd. el sonido del piano? 3. ¿Cuándo hay mucho ruido en la calle? 4. ¿Quiere Vd. la fruta ácida o dulce? 5. ¿Qué pide Enrique a su madre para hacer dulce el café? 6. ¿Para qué sirve la nariz? 7. ¿Cómo huele una rosa? 8. ¿Qué es un sordo? 9. ¿Qué quiere decir la palabra *sordo*? 10. ¿Puede Vd. oír si hablo en voz baja? 11. ¿Tiene Vd. frío o calor? ¿Mucho? 12. ¿Por qué tienen Vds. frío? 13. ¿Hace frío cuando hay sol? 14. ¿A quién sigue Jorge Quinto?

D. 1. When the bell rings, John opens the door. 2. A deaf man cannot hear so well as you. 3. When the coffee is bitter, I ask for sugar. 4. Do you wish sugar in your coffee? 5. I do not sleep well when there is a great noise in the street. 6. In the street there is a man who<sup>1</sup> says, "Who wants oranges?" How much does he ask? 7. I wish to give my sister a sweet orange. 8. I can hear Henry's voice; he is shouting. 9. Can you see Charles? He is ringing the bell. 10. The Spanish word *la voz* means the sound which comes from the throat, but the plural *las voces* means 'words.' 11. Will you give this poor man a dollar? He is blind. 12. When I am hungry I wish to eat, and when I am thirsty I wish to drink. 13. John's eyes are blue. 14. If you visit London, you will see<sup>2</sup> the king. 15. On account of the darkness we cannot see the persons in the room.

<sup>1</sup> que dice.

<sup>2</sup> verá.

## LESSON X

**59. Reflexive Verbs.** A reflexive verb is one which represents the subject as acting on itself: as, *He cuts himself*.

a. The Spanish reflexive pronoun for the third person is *se*, which is appended to the infinitive: *cortarse*, to cut oneself.

b. In Spanish many verbs are reflexive in form though not so in English: *levantar*, to raise; *levantarse*, to raise oneself, i.e. to get up.

c. In conjugating a reflexive verb, the pronouns are usually put before the verb; but the infinitive, the present participle, and the imperative without *no*, add the pronoun as another syllable.

**Levantándose.** *Getting up.*

**Levántese Vd.** *Get up.*

**Siéntese Vd.** *Sit down.*

**Sentándose.** *Sitting down.*

**No se levante Vd.** *Don't get up.*

**No se siente Vd.** *Don't sit down.*

## 60. Present Indicative.

**Levantarse, to get up**  
**me levanto, I get up**  
**te levantas, you get up**  
**se levanta, he gets up**  
**nos levantamos, we get up**  
**os levantáis, you get up**  
**se levantan, they get up**

¿ Se levanta Vd.? *Do*  
*you get up?*

**Ir a levantarse, to be going to get up**  
**voy a levantarme, I am going to get up**  
**vas a levantarte, you are going to get up**  
**va a levantarse, he is going to get up**  
**vamos a levantarnos, we are going to get up**  
**vais a levantaros, you are going to get up**  
**van a levantarse, they are going to get up**

¿ Va Vd. a levantarse? *Are you going*  
*to get up?*

a. It is always necessary to learn the special meaning of a reflexive verb, as it often differs in translation from the simple verb; as, *ir, to go, irse, to go away; morir, to die, morirse, to be dying.*

61. The Spanish reflexive verb is often used in a general sense where English uses the passive voice.

**Aquí se habla español.**

**El muchacho se llama Juan.**

¿ Cómo se llama Vd.?

**Me llamo Francisco.**

*Spanish (is) spoken here.*

*The boy is called John.*

*How are you called? or, more idiomatically, What is your name?*

*My name is Francis.*

62. **Idiomatic Expressions.** a. When referring to parts of the body or clothing it is customary to use the definite article instead of the possessive adjective. A pronoun before the verb shows what person is meant whenever necessary: **Se pone el sombrero, He puts on his hat; Me quito el sombrero, I take off my hat; Se corta el dedo, He cuts his finger.** (See section 56, b.)

*b.* To express the time of an action **al** with the infinitive is common: **Al levantarme, me lavo la cara**, *On getting up (or When I get up), I wash my face*; **Al cerrar yo la puerta, gritaron**, *Upon my closing the door (or When I closed the door), they shouted*.

## EXERCISE 10

*A. a.* Write the conjugation and then translate the present tense indicative of **llamarse, sentarse, acostarse, ir a sentarse (sentarse and acostarse are radical-changing)**.

*b.* Supply reflexive pronouns and translate: 1. Juan — sienta a la mesa. 2. Siéntese — Vd. aquí. 3. Los muchachos — llaman Pablo y Pedro. 4. — llamamos Juan y María. 5. El hombre — lava la cara. 6. Voy a lavar — las manos. 7. Yo — acuesto temprano. 8. ¿ — acuesta Vd. tarde? 9. — sentamos a la mesa. 10. ¿Cómo — llama ella? 11. Al levantar —, Pedro — lava la cara.

*c.* After reading Exercise 10, B, 1, change the Spanish verbs into the third person singular.

*d.* Translate: 1. I cut myself. 2. They cut themselves. 3. He gets up. 4. Do you get up? 5. We sit down. 6. I go to bed. 7. We go to bed. 8. We are going to sit down. 9. They are called (*or*, they call themselves). 10. He takes off his hat. 11. Pedro does not wash his face. 12. On sitting down. 13. On washing my face. 14. Why don't you wash your face? 15. Why don't you sit down?

*B.* 1. Por la noche me quito los vestidos y me acuesto. Al despertarme por la mañana, despierto a mis hermanos. Nos levantamos, nos lavamos la cara y las manos con jabón y agua, nos secamos con una toalla, y nos ponemos los vestidos. Entonces me siento a la mesa para el almuerzo. Tomo café con leche, pan y mantequilla, huevos o carne. Para el servicio de la mesa me sirvo de un cuchillo, un tenedor y una cuchara. Después me marchó al despacho. Allí no me divierte mucho.

2. La tierra se mueve alrededor del sol, inclinándose<sup>1</sup> un poco hacia una parte, de lo cual<sup>2</sup> resulta que una mitad del año los pueblos de la mitad superior de la tierra tienen los días más largos que las noches. En la otra parte del año sucede lo contrario y de este modo se verifican las estaciones del año. El invierno es cuando los rayos del sol vienen más inclinados y son los días cortos; por esto hace mucho frío. En la primavera crecen la hierba y las plantas. En el verano hace mucho calor. En el otoño se cogen los frutos del campo mientras caen las hojas de los árboles.

3. El hombre nace, vive y muere sobre la tierra. En su figura se asemeja ésta bastante a una naranja un poco aplastada por los dos extremos, que en geografía se llaman los polos. Los rayos del sol alumbran y calientan la tierra, que da vuelta alrededor del sol, y con este movimiento se determinan cuatro puntos cardinales que son norte, sur, este y oeste. Se llama este aquella parte del cielo en que vemos el sol al amanecer. Oeste se llama la parte opuesta por donde se oculta el sol al anocheecer.

C. 1. ¿Se despierta Vd. temprano o tarde? 2. ¿Qué hace Vd. después de despertarse? 3. ¿Dónde se sienta Vd. para el almuerzo? 4. ¿De qué se sirven Vds. para el servicio de la mesa? 5. ¿A dónde se marcha Vd. después del almuerzo? 6. ¿Se divierten Vds. mucho en el colegio? 7. ¿Cuándo tenemos los días más cortos que las noches? 8. ¿Por qué tenemos el día y la noche? 9. ¿Qué estación del año tenemos ahora? 10. ¿Por qué hay estaciones? 11. ¿Qué tal tiempo hace en el invierno? ¿en el verano? 12. ¿Cómo se llaman los puntos cardinales?

D. 1. In the morning we wake up early and wake up our friends. 2. The bell wakes John; he cannot wake up without the bell. 3. My brother does not have a good time at the office: he works. 4. We have (the) day and (the) night because the earth moves around the sun. 5. We have seasons because the earth is inclined towards one side. 6. It is very cold this winter, but in the spring it is much

<sup>1</sup> inclinándose, present participle of inclinarse. <sup>2</sup> de lo cual, from which.

warmer. 7. The two ends of the earth are called the North Pole and the South Pole. 8. When I face the north, the east is on the right, and the west on the left. 9. French is spoken in France, but English is spoken here. 10. What is your name? — My name is Peter Lucas, but they call me Uncle<sup>1</sup> Licurgo. 11. In this season I wake early, but when it is cold weather I rise late. 12. During this part of the year, the nights are longer than the days.

<sup>1</sup>Add the definite article; do not capitalize.

## LESSON XI

**63. Preterit Tense.** The Spanish preterit tense, indicative mood, denotes that a single act was performed and completed in past time. It corresponds to the English past tense: *He saw, Vió. Did you see?* ¿**Vió Vd.?**

## -ar VERBS

SING. I. compré, <i>I bought</i>
2. compraste, <i>you bought</i>
3. compró, <i>he bought</i>
PLUR. I. compramos, <i>we bought</i>
2. comprasteis, <i>you bought</i>
3. compraron, <i>they bought</i>
¿Compró Vd.? <i>Did you buy?</i>

## -er AND -ir VERBS

SING. I. vendí, <i>I sold</i>
2. vendiste, <i>you sold</i>
3. vendió, <i>he sold</i>
PLUR. I. vendimos, <i>we sold</i>
2. vendisteis, <i>you sold</i>
3. vendieron, <i>they sold</i>
¿Vendió Vd.? <i>Did you sell?</i>

a. Note the importance of the written accent: **compro**, present tense, *I buy*; **compró**, preterit tense, *he bought*.

b. In conjugating the preterit tense, certain changes of spelling must be borne in mind. The radical of a verb must keep the same final consonant sound which it has in the infinitive: consequently verbs ending in **car**, **gar**, and **zar** are spelled in the first person singular of the preterit like the following models:

**sacar** : saqué, *I drew out*, sacaste, etc.  
**llegar** : llegué, *I arrived*, llegaste, etc.  
**empezar** : empecé, *I began*, empezaste, etc.

See table of spellings, section 7; and also section 242.



c. Verbs of the *-ir* conjugation that change the radical in the present tense change *e* to *i*, and *o* to *u*, in the third person singular and plural of the preterit tense.

<b>Sentir, to feel</b>		<b>Pedir, to ask for</b>	
SING. I.	<b>sentí, I felt</b>	SING. I.	<b>pedí, I asked</b>
	2. <b>sentiste, you felt</b>		2. <b>pediste, you asked</b>
	3. <b>sintió, he felt</b>		3. <b>pidió, he asked</b>
PLUR. I.	<b>sentimos, we felt</b>	PLUR. I.	<b>pedimos, we asked</b>
	2. <b>sentisteis, you felt</b>		2. <b>pedisteis, you asked</b>
	3. <b>sintieron, they felt</b>		3. <b>pidieron, they asked</b>
	¿ <b>Sintió Vd.?</b> <i>Did you feel?</i>		¿ <b>Pidió Vd.?</b> <i>Did you ask?</i>

<b>Dormir, to sleep</b>			
SING. I.	<b>dormí, I slept</b>	PLUR. I.	<b>dormimos, we slept</b>
	2. <b>dormiste, you slept</b>		2. <b>dormisteis, you slept</b>
	3. <b>durmió, he slept</b>		3. <b>durmieron, they slept</b>
	¿ <b>Durmió Vd.?</b> <i>Did you sleep?</i>		

d. Spanish spelling requires that the letter *i* unaccented should not stand between two vowels; consequently, verbs whose stem ends with a vowel have *y* in the third person singular and plural of the preterit tense.

<b>Creer, to believe, to think</b>			
SING. I.	<b>creí, I believed</b>	PLUR. I.	<b>creímos, we believed</b>
	2. <b>creiste, you believed</b>		2. <b>creisteis, you believed</b>
	3. <b>creyó, he believed</b>		3. <b>creyeron, they believed</b>
	¿ <b>Creyó Vd.?</b> <i>Did you believe?</i>		

**64. Idiomatic Expressions.** a. The verb *hace, it makes*, is used with expressions of time to convey the same idea as the English word *ago*:

**hace un año, a year ago**      **hace una hora, an hour ago**

b. In reckoning time the Spanish count the day on which the calculation is made; hence,

**ocho días, a week**      **hace quince días, a fortnight ago**

- |                           |                          |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| c. ¿Qué hay de nuevo?     | <i>What's the news?</i>  |
| Nada de particular.       | <i>Nothing special.</i>  |
| d. Muchas gracias, señor. | <i>Many thanks, sir.</i> |
| No hay de qué.            | <i>Quite welcome.</i>    |

## EXERCISE 11

A. a. *Conjugate, with English meaning, the preterit tense of tomar, escribir, sentarse, servir (like pedir), oír, pagar, tocar.*

b. *Read Exercise 10, B, 1, putting the verbs in the preterit tense.*

c. *Translate:* 1. How much did he ask six months ago? 2. How did you sleep? 3. What did they sell? 4. He took coffee. 5. Where was he born? 6. I felt cold an hour ago. 7. I went to bed. 8. They went away. 9. I got up. 10. How was he called? 11. His name was John. 12. They asked for oranges. 13. Did you hear the bell? 14. Did they read the newspaper?

B. 1. Ayer por la mañana me levanté — me lavé — medio me vestí — leí los periódicos — escribí dos cartas — almorcé — acabé de vestirme — me marché a casa de un amigo.

Por la tarde volví a casa. En la calle me encontré con un pobre — saqué una moneda de cobre del bolsillo — dí diez centavos al pobre — llegué a casa sin otra novedad.

Por la noche comí. Después de la comida me senté al balcón al fresco, y ahora tengo sueño y voy a acostarme.

2. Hernán Cortés, conquistador de Méjico, nació en 1485. Con once navíos y algunos centenares de soldados, desembarcó en el puerto de San Juan de Ulúa en 1519, fundó la fortaleza de Veracruz, quemó sus naves y marchó sobre Méjico. Venció a sus enemigos; sitió y tomó a Méjico donde se apoderó de Montezuma. El emperador Carlos Quinto, rey de España, nombró a Cortés capitán general de Nueva España, nombre que dió<sup>1</sup> al país que conquistó. Cortés volvió a España a contestar a las acusaciones dirigidas<sup>2</sup> contra él, y murió allí en 1547.

<sup>1</sup> dió, preterit of dar.

<sup>2</sup> directed.

3. Francisco Pizarro, célebre conquistador español, tenía más de cincuenta años cuando emprendió la conquista del más grande y rico imperio del nuevo mundo. Descubrió las costas del Perú en 1526. El ejército del inca Atahualpa atacó a los españoles, pero éstos salieron vencedores en aquel encuentro y quedaron dueños del imperio y de sus riquezas. Pizarro se casó con la hermana del inca Atahualpa. Fundó a Lima, capital desde entonces del Perú, donde murió en 1541 asesinado por sus enemigos.

C. 1. ¿Cuál periódico leyó Vd. ayer? 2. ¿A quién escribió Vd. las cartas hace ocho días? 3. ¿Con quién se encontró Vd. en la calle? 4. ¿Cuándo dió el señor el dinero al pobre? 5. ¿Qué hizo<sup>1</sup> Vd. después de la comida? 6. ¿Cuándo nació Hernán Cortés? 7. ¿Cuántos soldados desembarcaron con él en Méjico? 8. ¿A dónde marcharon? 9. ¿Qué nombramiento hizo el rey? 10. ¿Qué nombre tiene ahora el país de Nueva España? 11. ¿En qué año murió Cortés?

D. 1. Many years ago, Hernán Cortés and his soldiers besieged Mexico and conquered the country. 2. Charles the<sup>2</sup> Fifth appointed Cortés captain-general of New Spain. 3. My friend rose early in the morning and dressed himself. 4. In the evening he dined at home, and after dinner sat in the open air. 5. Yesterday he read two newspapers and wrote his brother a letter. 6. When I arrived in New York,<sup>3</sup> I took my book from my pocket. 7. When he sat down to the table,<sup>3</sup> he found his newspaper at his place. 8. With our breakfast this morning we took coffee with milk and sugar. 9. Did you sleep well last night? Yes, I slept till my brother arrived. 10. Did you pay the bill? I paid the tailor's bill a fortnight ago. 11. The soldiers died in defense of the city, April 25, 1695. 12. He washed his face and hands and went to bed. 13. Cortés gave the name of New Spain to the country which is now called Mexico. 14. Pizarro was born in the province of Estremadura, in the little village of Trujillo.

<sup>1</sup> hizo, preterit of *hacer*.

<sup>2</sup> Omit the article.

<sup>3</sup> Translate the clause in two ways.

## LESSON XII

**65. Imperfect Tense.** The Spanish imperfect tense, indicative mood, denotes a past action, either continuous or habitual in character. *He was singing, Cantaba. He used to write every day, Escribía todos los días.*

## -ar VERBS

- SING. 1. compraba, *I was buying, used to buy*  
 2. comprabas, *you were buying, used to buy*  
 3. compraba, *he was buying, used to buy*
- PLUR. 1. comprábamos, *we were buying, used to buy*  
 2. comprabais, *you were buying, used to buy*  
 3. compraban, *they were buying, used to buy*

## -er AND -ir VERBS

- SING. 1. vendía, *I was selling, used to sell*  
 2. vendías, *you were selling, used to sell*  
 3. vendía, *he was selling, used to sell*
- PLUR. 1. vendíamos, *we were selling, used to sell*  
 2. vendíais, *you were selling, used to sell*  
 3. vendían, *they were selling, used to sell*

a. To understand the imperfect tense, contrast its meaning with the preterit.

**Escribió una carta.**

*He wrote one letter.*

**Escribía cuando yo entré.**

*He was writing when I entered.*

**Estábamos a la mesa cuando sonó  
la campanilla.**

*We were at table when the bell  
rang.*

b. This tense is frequent in descriptive matter. Though usually translated as above, the simple form of the English past tense may occur: as, *When I lived in Cuba, I spoke Spanish.* As the verbs denote continued or habitual acts, the Spanish uses the imperfect tense, **Quando vivía en Cuba, hablaba español.**

**66. Idiomatic Expressions.** a. **Había, there was, there were,** imperfect tense corresponding to **hay, there is, there are.**

*b.* With expressions of time **todo**, *all*, in the plural means *every*: **todos los días**, *every day*; **todos los domingos**, *every Sunday*. But note in the singular **todo el mundo**, *everybody*.

*c.* Spanish uses the singular, not the plural, when speaking of objects one of which belongs to each member of a group. *The boys raised their heads*; as each boy has but one head, the Spanish says, **Los muchachos levantaron la cabeza**. *The servants did not occupy seats*, **Los criados no ocupaban asiento**.

### EXERCISE 12

*A. a.* Read Exercise 10, *B, 1*, substituting the imperfect tense.

*b. Translate:* 1. He was sleeping. 2. They used to read. 3. We were reading. 4. The bell was ringing. 5. Who was talking? 6. I was eating. 7. I was cold and hungry. 8. Every Monday he used to rise early. 9. In Spain we rose late. 10. It was cold. 11. How many were here? 12. The enemy (*plural*) were marching. 13. There were five apples on the plate. 14. He used to drink milk. 15. We took coffee every morning.

*B. 1.* Juanito cuando tenía hambre, quería comer; cuando tenía sed, quería beber. Cuando estaba cansado por haber corrido mucho, o tenía sueño, deseaba la cama para descansar; cuando tenía frío, deseaba el abrigo. Luego que satisfacía estas necesidades quedaba bien y contento.

2. Hace muchos años (¡ como que yo tenía siete ! ) que al obs-  
curecer de un día de invierno me dijo<sup>1</sup> mi padre: — Pedro, esta  
noche no te acuestas a la misma hora que las gallinas: ya eres  
grande y debes cenar con tus padres y con tus hermanos mayores.  
Esta noche es *Nochebuena*.

Un enorme tronco de encina chisporroteaba en medio del hogar; la negra y ancha campana de la chimenea nos cobijaba; en los rincones estaban mis dos abuelas, que aquella noche se quedaban

<sup>1</sup> dijo, preterit of decir.

en nuestra casa ; en seguida se hallaban mis padres, luego nosotros, y entre nosotros los criados — porque en aquella fiesta todos representábamos la *Casa*, y a todos debía calentarnos un mismo fuego. Los criados estaban de pie y las criadas de rodillas. Su respetuosa humildad les vedaba ocupar asiento. Los gatos dormían en el centro. Algunos copos de nieve caían por el cañon de la chimenea. Y el viento silbaba a lo lejos. Mi padre y mi hermana mayor tocaban el arpa. Las criadas se encargaron de la parte vocal y cantaron coplas como la siguiente :

« Esta noche es Nochebuena  
Y mañana Navidad. »

*C.* 1. ¿Qué deseaba Juanito cuando estaba cansado? 2. ¿Tenía Vd. hambre ayer? 3. ¿Cuándo es Nochebuena? 4. ¿Quiénes se quedaban en casa de Pedro la Nochebuena? 5. ¿Cómo se calentaban? 6. ¿Por qué no estaban sentados los criados? 7. ¿Qué hacían los gatos? 8. ¿Qué hacía el padre de Pedro? 9. ¿Qué instrumento toca Vd.? 10. ¿Había nieve y viento la Nochebuena? 11. ¿Qué cantaron las criadas? 12. ¿Dónde estaban Vds. hace un año?

*D.* 1. Johnny went to bed early because he was sleepy. 2. When he was reading the newspaper he found his name on the first page. 3. The snow was falling because it was very cold. 4. I know<sup>1</sup> that the sun was not shining because it was snowing. 5. On Christmas Eve they used to sing verses. 6. We were standing in the corner near the fire when they sang the verse. 7. The maidservants did not occupy seats that night. 8. Peter was seven years old when he dined with his older brothers. 9. Peter's cat used to sleep in front of the fire. 10. We used to sing when my sister played the piano. 11. I was in Mexico two years ago, when he bought the mine. 12. I was getting up when he called. 13. His older brother used to write Paul a letter every week. 14. We were washing our faces when our friends came in.

<sup>1</sup> I know = sé.

## LESSON XIII

**67. Participles.** Spanish verbs have two participles, the present (or gerund) and the past.

-ar VERBS	-er AND -ir VERBS
PRESENT <b>comprando</b>	<b>vendiendo</b>
PAST <b>comprado</b>	<b>vendido</b>

**68. Present Participle.** The Spanish present participle is invariable, and is used to express all sorts of relations much more freely than the present participle in English: **Siendo niño, vi al rey**, *When I was a child* (lit. *being a child*), *I saw the king*. See section 274.

a. The pronouns are appended to the present participle as an additional syllable, in which case an accent mark must be written over the stressed vowel of the ending: **levantándose**, *getting up*.

**69. Past Participle.** The past participle may be used like an adjective, and agrees with its noun in gender and number.

**las puertas cerradas**, *the closed doors*  
**las ventanas abiertas**, *the open windows*

a. Some past participles are irregular in form:

abrir; <b>abierto</b>	<i>to open; opened</i>
cubrir; <b>cubierto</b>	<i>to cover; covered</i>
descubrir; <b>descubierto</b>	<i>to discover; discovered</i>
escribir; <b>escrito</b>	<i>to write; written</i>
imprimir; <b>impreso</b>	<i>to print; printed</i>
romper; <b>roto</b>	<i>to break; broken</i>

b. The principal use of the past participle is in forming compound tenses with the auxiliary verb **haber**. The past participle remains unchanged in form.

**70. Perfect Tense.** The present tense of **haber** combined with the past participle of any verb gives the *perfect tense* of that verb.

## -ar VERBS

- SING. 1. he comprado, *I have bought*  
 2. has comprado, *you have bought*  
 3. ha comprado, *he has bought*
- PLUR. 1. hemos comprado, *we have bought*  
 2. habéis comprado, *you have bought*  
 3. han comprado, *they have bought*
- ¿Ha comprado Vd.? *Have you bought?*

## -er AND -ir VERBS

- SING. 1. he vendido, *I have sold*  
 2. has vendido, *you have sold*  
 3. ha vendido, *he has sold*
- PLUR. 1. hemos vendido, *we have sold*  
 2. habéis vendido, *you have sold*  
 3. han vendido, *they have sold*
- ¿Ha vendido Vd.? *Have you sold?*

**71. Pluperfect Tense.** The imperfect tense of *haber* combined with the past participle of any verb gives the *pluperfect* tense of that verb.

## -ar VERBS

- SING. 1. había comprado, *I had bought*  
 2. habías comprado, *you had bought*  
 3. había comprado, *he had bought*
- PLUR. 1. habíamos comprado, *we had bought*  
 2. habíais comprado, *you had bought*  
 3. habían comprado, *they had bought*
- ¿Había comprado Vd.? *Had you bought?*

## -er AND -ir VERBS

- SING. 1. había vendido, *I had sold*  
 2. habías vendido, *you had sold*  
 3. había vendido, *he had sold*
- PLUR. 1. habíamos vendido, *we had sold*  
 2. habíais vendido, *you had sold*  
 3. habían vendido, *they had sold*
- ¿Había vendido Vd.? *Had you sold?*



**72. The Parts of a Compound Tense** must not be separated by other words as in English.

*Have you written ?*

¿ Ha escrito Vd. ?

*I have not written.*

No he escrito.

*Has John always lived here ?*

¿ Ha vivido Juan siempre aquí ?

**73. Use of Perfect Tense.** The perfect and the preterit tenses both refer to action in past time. The perfect is used —

1. When the action is recent :

**Ha llovido mucho esta mañana.**

*It rained hard this morning.*

2. When the action, though performed in the past, still continues or affects the present :

**La España ha producido grandes hombres.**

*Spain has produced great men.*

**La Inglaterra se ha hecho señora del mar.**

*England has become mistress of the sea.*

If these acts were ascribed to a definite past time the preterit would be used.

**La España produjo grandes hombres en el siglo XVI.**

*Spain produced great men in the sixteenth century.*

**La Inglaterra se hizo señora del mar por la victoria de Nelson.**

*England became mistress of the sea through Nelson's victory.*

3. When the verb merely asserts the existence of a fact without referring the action to a definite time :

**Lo he dicho muchas veces.**

*I have often said so.*

**Lo dije ayer.**

*I said so yesterday.*

**74. Adverbs and Prepositions with Verbs.** 1. In English some verbs have their meaning so modified by adverbs as to form a class by themselves. Such compounds are expressed in Spanish by verbs having different roots and not by the same verb modified by different adverbs: as,

*go into, entrar*

*go up, subir*

*go out, salir*

*go down, bajar*

2. In both Spanish and English some verbs require a preposition before the object, but not necessarily the same verb in both languages. Examine the following :

*to answer a question, contestar a una pregunta*  
*to enter the house, entrar en la casa*  
*to ask for an answer, pedir una contestación*  
*to ask (i.e. to inquire), preguntar*  
*to go out of the room, salir de la habitación*

**75. Relative Pronouns.** The commonest relative pronouns are **que**, *which, who, that*; referring to both persons and things  
**quien (quienes)**, *who*; referring only to persons

a. After prepositions, **que** is used only to refer to things, **quien** to persons.

**El lápiz que tengo.**

*The pencil which I have.*

**La mujer que ví.**

*The woman whom I saw.*

**La casa en que vivo.**

*The house in which I live.*

**El hombre a quien dió el dinero.**

*The man to whom he gave the money.*

**Los señores de quienes hablábamos.**

*The gentlemen of whom we were speaking.*

### EXERCISE 13

A. a. *Form and translate the perfect tense of estar, mandar, ser, vivir, tener, escribir.*

b. *Form and translate the pluperfect tense of the same verbs.*

c. *Translate:* 1. What has he sold? 2. They have bought.  
 3. He had bought. 4. Where has Charles lived? 5. I have not been in Spain. 6. We have been here. 7. He had been a soldier.  
 8. They have covered the table. 9. I have had a present. 10. Writing a letter. 11. Having written a letter. 12. Having two dollars, I bought a book. 13. Being at home. 14. We had been there.

d. *After reading Exercise 13, B, 2, explain the use of the various tenses.*

B. 1. Quiero un viaje de un modo raro, por eso voy a recapitular mis viajes.

Yo he viajado ya en barco de vela y en vapor. También he viajado en ferrocarril, en coche, a caballo y en mula. He patinado y andado en trineo. He sido llevado a cuestras para pasar algunos ríos. He bajado a algunas minas colgado de una cuerda. He cabalgado siendo niño en carneros merinos y en perros de Terranova. También he nadado. He volado en sueños. He caído de una altura. He saltado más de cuatro arroyos.

Hasta aquí no he viajado en aeroplano, pero tengo esperanzas de viajar de esta manera. Tampoco he caminado sobre un camello como los árabes, ni sobre el lomo de un elefante como los indios.

2. Rodolfo tomó su sombrero, bajó la escalera y salió de la casa. Abajo al aire libre recobró su presencia de espíritu. — ¡Caramba! no he tratado la cuestión de más importancia.

Entró en la casa y subía la escalera en el momento en que bajaba Doña Ernesta. — Señora, dispense Vd. Quiero preguntar, ¿Ustedes han tenido gastos considerables; la educación y mantenimiento de ese joven ha producido desembolsos considerables?

La señora no contestó a la pregunta, levantó una mano y ¡zas! la mejilla derecha de Rodolfo se puso encardenada<sup>1</sup> y el sombrero cayó rodando por la escalera de arriba abajo.

C. 1. ¿Cuándo ha viajado Vd. en vapor? 2. ¿De qué manera ha viajado el señor? 3. ¿Cuántos viajes ha hecho<sup>2</sup> Vd. en ferrocarril? 4. ¿Cuándo ha pasado Vd. el río del Norte? 5. ¿A quién han escrito Vds. hoy? 6. ¿Cuántos gastos han tenido Vds. ayer? 7. ¿Por qué entró Rodolfo en la casa? 8. ¿A quién ha encontrado en la escalera? 9. ¿Qué ha preguntado a D.<sup>a</sup> Ernesta? 10. ¿Qué contestación ha recibido?

D. 1. Have you ever skated on the North River? 2. This man has traveled in many ways. 3. The Arabs travel on camels. Have

<sup>1</sup> se puso encardenada, *turned red.*

<sup>2</sup> hecho, past participle of *hacer.*

you ever traveled in this manner? 4. When he was (*use pres. part.*) in India, he rode on an elephant's back. 5. When he was (*use pres. part.*) a child, he had ridden on dogs and sheep and jumped brooks. 6. We had opened all the windows before he came into the room. 7. He asked who had come down stairs. 8. They answered that they had been in the room an hour. 9. Rodolfo had gone up stairs because he had not discussed the question of most importance. 10. We have not had much presence of mind. 11. The lady who had answered the question went out of the room. 12. The man who has crossed the river (by)<sup>1</sup> swimming is my brother. 13. The soldiers who have traveled by rail arrived yesterday. 14. The boys of whom I have spoken are the best in the class. 15. The ladies, to whom we had spoken, were cold and hungry.

<sup>1</sup> Omit.

## LESSON XIV

## 76. Future Indicative.

SING. 1. compraré, *I shall buy*  
 2. comprarás, *you will buy*  
 3. comprará, *he will buy*

PLUR. 1. compraremos, *we shall buy*  
 2. compraréis, *you will buy*  
 3. comprarán, *they will buy*

¿Comprará Vd.? *Shall you buy?*

SING. 1. venderé, *I shall sell*  
 2. venderás, *you will sell*  
 3. venderá, *he will sell*

SING. 1. viviré, *I shall live*  
 2. vivirás, *you will live*  
 3. vivirá, *he will live*

PLUR. 1. venderemos, *we shall sell*  
 2. venderéis, *you will sell*  
 3. venderán, *they will sell*

PLUR. 1. viviremos, *we shall live*  
 2. viviréis, *you will live*  
 3. vivirán, *they will live*

¿Venderá Vd.? *Shall you sell?*

¿Vivirá Vd.? *Shall you live?*

a. The future tense, indicative mood, of a Spanish verb is formed from the infinitive by adding the present tense of *haber*. The accent

falls on the ending, and (except in the first person plural) is written. The **h**, being a silent letter, is not written, nor the **hab** of the second person plural: **comprar(h)é, comprar(hab)éis.**

*b.* Frequently the expressions *will you, I will,* etc. mean *are you willing, I wish,* etc., in which case they should be rendered by the proper forms of **querer**: *will you buy?* ¿quiere Vd. comprar?

### 77. Conditional.

SING. 1. compraría, *I should buy*  
 2. comprarías, *you would buy*  
 3. compraría, *he would buy*

PLUR. 1. compraríamos, *we should buy*  
 2. compraríais, *you would buy*  
 3. comprarían, *they would buy*

¿Compraría Vd.? *Should you buy?*

SING. 1. vendería, *I should sell*  
 2. venderías, *you would sell*  
 3. vendería, *he would sell*

SING. 1. viviría, *I should live*  
 2. vivirías, *you would live*  
 3. viviría, *he would live*

PLUR. 1. venderíamos, *we should sell*  
 2. venderíais, *you would sell*  
 3. venderían, *they would sell*

PLUR. 1. viviríamos, *we should live*  
 2. viviríais, *you would live*  
 3. vivirían, *they would live*

¿Vendería Vd.? *Should you sell?* ¿Viviría Vd.? *Should you live?*

*a.* The conditional is formed from the infinitive by adding the endings of the imperfect tense of **haber**: **comprar(hab)ía.**

*b.* The conditional takes the name from its frequent use in the conclusion of a condition: **Si tuviese dinero, compraría el perro,** *If I had money, I should buy the dog.* The conditional is only used in connection with some verb in a past tense; hence, it stands for the future in a quoted statement depending on a verb denoting past time: **Compraré el perro,** *He will buy the dog;* **Dijo que compraría el perro,** *He said that he would buy the dog.*

*c.* *Should* in the sense of *ought* is rendered by some form of **deber**, or other word expressing obligation: *I should go because my father is sick,* **Debo ir porque está malo mi padre.**

**78. Idiomatic Expressions.** The Spanish word for *time* in the sense of *hour*, or *o'clock*, is **la hora.**

¿ Qué hora es ?

Es la una.

Son las dos.

Son las tres y cuarto.

Son las cuatro y diez minutos.

En mi reloj son las cinco y media.

Son las seis menos cuarto.

¿ A qué hora ?

A las doce del día.

A las doce de la noche.

A la media noche.

De la madrugada. }

De la mañana. }

De la tarde. }

De la noche. }

Por la mañana.

*What time (lit. what hour) is it ?*

*It is one o'clock. (Note the omission of hora.)*

*It is two o'clock. (Note the plural of verb and article. The verb may be omitted, but never the article.)*

*It is a quarter past three..*

*It is ten minutes past four. (The word minutos may be omitted.)*

*By my watch it is half past five.*

*It is a quarter to six (lit. six less a quarter. Between half past and the hour to come, state the next hour, less, menos, the minutes).*

*When ? (cuándo meaning when is more general, referring to any time except time of day.)*

*At twelve noon.*

*At twelve of the night.*

*At midnight.*

*A.M. { (From midnight till dawn.)  
(From dawn till noon.)*

*P.M. { (From noon till sunset.)  
(From sunset till midnight.)*

*In the forenoon. (When the time is indefinite use por, otherwise de.)*

#### EXERCISE 14

*A. a. Conjugate and translate the future and the conditional of hablar, comer, escribir, marcharse.*

*b. Translate: 1. He will speak. 2. He would speak. 3. Shall you write? 4. Will you write? 5. Would you write? 6. When will he arrive? 7. He will arrive at five o'clock. 8. When shall you go away? 9. I shall go away at half-past seven. 10. They shall go at once (en seguida). 11. Will you go with our family? 12. I do not wish to go to-morrow. 13. How much will you pay? 14. I am willing to pay ten dollars.*

B. 1. Año nuevo. Hoy los hombres saludan y felicitan a sus amigos escribiendo en la tarjeta de visita — Feliz año nuevo. En un año nuevo pueden suceder muchas cosas nuevas. Entre mañana y ayer está la vida. Ayer — esperaba: mañana — recordaré. Este año será tan largo como el pasado. Después veremos la fecha en la moneda. Pronto vendrá<sup>1</sup> la Primavera. Los valles y las laderas de los montes abrirán al público sus perfumerías. Del Sur llegarán compañías de pájaros a cantar; se tenderán alfombras de hierba en los campos: doseles de verdura cubrirán los bosques. Todo será luz, aroma y armonía.

2.

Muy señor mío y amigo:

NUEVA YORK, 2 de abril de 1912

En contestación a su tarjeta postal de ayer, tengo el gusto de participarle<sup>2</sup> que el cartero entregó la tarjeta a las once y media de la mañana. Me dijo<sup>3</sup> éste que si Vd. echaba sus cartas en el correo más temprano, llegarían con el tren correo de la noche y serían entregadas aquí a las ocho de la mañana.

Si Vd. manda valores, debe certificar la carta. En tal caso debe Vd. escribir su nombre y dirección en el sobre. El gasto del certificado importa diez centavos además del franqueo, que se paga en sellos pegados al sobre.

Saludo a Vd. y quedo como siempre su af.<sup>mo</sup><sup>4</sup> amigo.

CARLOS RODRÍGUEZ

C. 1. ¿A qué hora sale el tren para Sevilla? 2. ¿A qué hora principia la clase? 3. ¿Qué hora es en su reloj? 4. ¿Cuándo llegará su padre de Venezuela? 5. ¿Cuándo quiere Vd. ir a casa? 6. ¿Cómo felicitará Vd. a sus amigos el día de Año Nuevo? 7. ¿Cuándo será Año Nuevo? 8. ¿Cuándo se cubrirán los árboles de verdura? 9. ¿A qué hora llegará el correo? 10. ¿Quién traerá las cartas? 11. Explique Vd.<sup>5</sup> en español la palabra "correo."

<sup>1</sup> vendrá, future of venir, *to come*.<sup>2</sup> le = usted, *you*.<sup>3</sup> dijo, preterit of decir, *he told*.<sup>4</sup> af.<sup>mo</sup>, abbreviation for afectísimo, *sincere*.<sup>5</sup> Explique Vd., *explain*.

*D.* 1. The concert will begin at 8.30 P.M. 2. He will write Wednesday. He said that he would write Wednesday. 3. Mr. López went away yesterday. His daughter will go away to-morrow. 4. When will the train arrive from Madrid? My brother has written that he would arrive to-day. 5. It is ten o'clock by the cathedral clock; but by my watch I have seven minutes to ten. 6. I shall post my letters at nine P.M. 7. What should you send John? I should send money. 8. My friends will arrive in the morning. I shall go to the station at a quarter past eight. 9. The mail will be here at 10.30 A.M., and will be delivered at the post-office. 10. Where shall I buy stamps for these letters? 11. We shall send the money by registered letter on Wednesday. 12. How many stamps shall I stick on the envelope?

## LESSON XV

79.

¿ Tiene Ud. el libro ?	<i>Have you the book ?</i>
Ló tengo.	<i>I have it.</i>
¿ Tiene Ud. la pluma ?	<i>Have you the pen ?</i>
La tengo.	<i>I have it.</i>
¿ Tiene Carlos los libros ?	<i>Has Charles the books ?</i>
Los tiene.	<i>He has them.</i>
¿ Tiene él las plumas ?	<i>Has he the pens ?</i>
Las tiene.	<i>He has them.</i>
¿ Vió Ud. ayer a su madre ?	<i>Did you see your mother yesterday ?</i>
La ví.	<i>I saw her.</i>
¿ Me vió Ud. ayer ?	<i>Did you see me yesterday ?</i>
No le ví, señor.	<i>I did not see you, sir.</i>
¿ Qué mandó Ud. a su padre ?	<i>What did you send to your father ?</i>
Le mandé una carta.	<i>I sent him a letter.</i>
¿ Qué mandó Ud. a su madre ?	<i>What did you send to your mother ?</i>
Le mandé una carta.	<i>I sent her a letter.</i>
¿ A ella también ?	<i>To her also ?</i>
Sí, señor, a ella y a él.	<i>Yes, sir, to her and to him.</i>
Le hablé a usted, no a él.	<i>I spoke to you, not to him.</i>

NOTE. The arrow indicates the word to which the pronoun refers.



## 80. The Personal Pronouns have the following forms.

SINGULAR			
SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT	INDIRECT OBJECT	PREPOSITIONAL
1. yo, <i>I</i>	me, <i>me</i>	me, (to) <i>me</i>	mi, <i>me</i>
2. tú, <i>thou</i>	te, <i>thee</i>	te, (to) <i>thee</i>	ti, <i>thee</i>
3. él, <i>he</i> ella, <i>she</i> } <i>it</i>	le or lo, <i>him</i> la, <i>her</i> } <i>it</i>	le, (to) <i>him</i> le, (to) <i>her</i> } <i>it</i>	(to) él, <i>him</i> (to) ella, <i>her</i> } <i>it</i>
PLURAL			
1. nosotros(-as), <i>we</i>	nos, <i>us</i>	nos, (to) <i>us</i>	nosotros(-as), <i>us</i>
2. vosotros(-as), <i>you</i>	os, <i>you</i>	os, (to) <i>you</i>	vosotros(-as), <i>you</i>
3. ellos, <i>they</i> ellas, <i>they</i>	los, <i>them</i> las, <i>them</i>	les, (to) <i>them</i> les, (to) <i>them</i>	ellos, <i>them</i> ellas, <i>them</i>

a. **Usted** is represented by the pronouns of the third person according to gender and number.

usted, <i>you</i>	{ le, <i>you</i> (masc.) la, <i>you</i> (fem.) }	le, (to) <i>you</i>	usted, <i>you</i>
ustedes, <i>you</i>	{ los, <i>you</i> (masc.) las, <i>you</i> (fem.) }	les, (to) <i>you</i>	ustedes, <i>you</i>

b. The reflexive pronoun **se** has the prepositional form **si**: **Dios me llama a sí**, *God calls me to himself*.

81. The Objective Forms of the personal pronouns are placed before the verb, except the infinitive mood, the present participle, and the positive imperative. The pronouns follow these verb forms, and are written as one word with them. If the addition of this extra syllable causes the spoken accent to fall on any syllable farther back than the second from the end of the combination, the accented syllable must be marked by a written accent.

<b>Me habla.</b>	<i>He speaks to me.</i>
<b>Hábleme Vd.</b>	<i>Speak to me.</i>
<b>No me hable Vd.</b>	<i>Don't speak to me.</i>
<b>Quiere hablarme.</b>	<i>He wishes to speak to me.</i>
<b>Hablándome.</b>	<i>Speaking to me.</i>

a. The objective pronouns have no accent of their own, but are pronounced as a part of the verb to which they belong. **Me lo da**,

*He gives it to me*, is pronounced as if written *melodá*. **No me ha dado**. *He has not given me*, pronounced *Nomehadádo*.

b. On account of their close relation to the verb, the objective forms of the personal pronouns are also called "conjunctive."

**82. The Prepositional Forms** are used after prepositions: **una carta para él**, *a letter for him*. They may be stressed in pronunciation, so are used to explain or emphasize the unaccented objective forms: **Nos escribió a mí y a mi hermano** (explanatory), *He wrote to us*, (that is) *me and my brother*; **Me lo da a mí, no a ti** (emphasis), *He gives it to me, not to you*.

a. The forms **mí**, **ti**, and **sí** are not used after **con**. Instead, note the special forms **conmigo**, *with me*; **contigo**, *with thee*; **consigo**, *with himself*.

b. Being used apart from the verb, the prepositional forms are also called "disjunctive."

**83. Adverbs** in Spanish are formed from adjectives by the addition of **mente** to the feminine singular: **seguramente**, *safely*. Remember that the feminine of adjectives which do not end in **o** in the masculine, with a few exceptions (see section 135), is like the masculine: hence, **cortésmente**, *politely*; **alegremente**, *joyfully*.

a. If two or more adverbs follow each other, **mente** is added only to the last: **Of el toque clara y distintamente**, *I heard the signal clearly and distinctly*.

b. From nouns, adverbial expressions are formed by the use of prepositions: **con alegría**, *joyfully*; **sobre todo**, *especially, above all*; **en seguida**, *at once, immediately*.

c. Adjectives are sometimes used as adverbs: **Vivían dichosos**, *They lived happily*.

#### EXERCISE 15

A. a. *Supply the pronouns and translate*: 1. *To me mandó mi padre una carta. It recibí yo ayer.* 2. *Voy a contestar — him.* 3. *Tengo un buen libro. ¿It quiere Vd.?* 4. *¿Quién quiere mis perros? Them quiero yo.* 5. *¿Us vió su padre ayer? ¿You vió él también?* 6. *No me vió. Quiere ver — you.* 7. *¿Us espera Juan?*

Sí, *us* espera. 8. *Him* esperamos. *To him* escribí, *no to her*. 9. *To her* escribimos la carta. *It* recibió ella ayer. 10. ¿Tiene Vd. una carta para *me*? 11. ¿Quiere Vd. venir con *me*? Sí, quiero ir con *thee*.

b. *Translate*: 1. *Referring to a house (una casa)*. I saw it. He sold it. He wishes to sell it. We live in it.

2. *Referring to some books (libros)*. We have them. I am not reading them. Do you wish to read them? I gave two dollars for them.

3. *Referring to a horse (un caballo)*. We have bought it. He has sold it. They did not buy it. How much did he pay for it?

4. *Referring to some flowers (unas flores)*. He does not have them. I wish them. I wish to see them. How many are there of them?

5. *Referring to human beings*. I met you. I met her. What did he give you? He gave her some flowers. I shall send you my book. We met them (*masc.*). What did he give them? I saw them (*fem.*). I gave them the letter. I did not sell him the horse. He will send her a present. I wish to sell you my house.

c. *Make adverbs from these adjectives and give meanings*: **lento, fácil, claro, feliz, elegante, perfecto.**

*Supply two adverbs to modify habló, he spoke; escribe, he writes.*

B. 1. Hace muchos años un campesino regresó de un viaje a casa donde tenía una mujer hermosa y una pequeña niña muy bonita. A ti—dijo a su mujer—te he traído un espejo. Mífrale<sup>1</sup> y dime<sup>2</sup> qué ves dentro. Le dió<sup>3</sup> entonces una caja de madera donde, cuando la abrió ella, encontró el espejo. Allí vió la joven esposa una cara que la miraba y le sonreía alegremente. —¿Qué ves? preguntó el marido. —Veo a una linda moza que me mira y lleva un vestido azul exactamente como el mío. —Tonta, es tu propia cara, le contestó el marido. Encantada la mujer con el regalo pasó algunos días mirándose. Consideró el espejo como una alhaja de sobrado

<sup>1</sup> look at it.

<sup>2</sup> tell me.

<sup>3</sup> he gave.

precio; la guardó en su caja y la ocultó entre sus tesoros. Como no hablaba nunca del espejo, el padre lo olvidó completamente. Pasaron años y marido y mujer vivían muy dichosos. Pero llegó un día en que la madre cayó enferma y aunque la hija la cuidó con tierno afecto se fué<sup>1</sup> empeorando cada vez más. Cuando conoció ella que pronto debía abandonar a su marido y a su hija, se afligía por ellos, sobre todo por la niña. La llamó pues y le dijo<sup>2</sup>: — Querida hija mía, ya ves que estoy muy enferma y pronto voy a morir y a dejaros solos a ti y a tu padre. Prométeme que mirarás en el espejo todos los días al despertar y al acostarte. En él me verás y conocerás que estoy siempre velando por ti. Entonces le enseñó el sitio donde estaba oculto el espejo y la niña prometió con lágrimas lo que su madre le pedía, y ésta expiró a poco. En adelante la niña tomaba cada mañana y cada tarde el espejo del lugar donde estaba oculto y miraba en él por largo rato e intensamente. Allí veía la cara de su perdida madre. A ella confiaba de noche sus disgustos del día y en ella al despertar buscaba aliento y cariño.

2.

Muy señor mío,

SANTIAGO DE CHILE, 14 de julio

Adjunto le devuelvo el libro que me prestó Vd. hace ocho días. El portador de la presente le entregará también algunas cartas que nos escribió a mí y a mi hermano nuestro padre. Si le interesan, puedo enviarle otras. Al mismo tiempo si Vd. me manda otros libros, le quedaría muy agradecido. Dándole gracias anticipadas, quedo de Vd.,

Su amigo y at.<sup>to</sup> S.S.

ANDRÉS ROMERO

*C. Answer with pronouns for the italicized nouns:* 1. ¿Qué ha traído el señor a su *mujer*? 2. ¿Abrió ella la *caja*? 3. ¿Qué estaba en la *caja*? 4. ¿Qué vió la joven esposa en el *espejo*? 5. ¿Vió ella su propia *cara*? 6. ¿Dónde guardó la mujer el *espejo*? 7. ¿Hablabla el padre del *espejo*? 8. En la hora de su muerte, ¿qué dijo la

<sup>1</sup> *se . . . más, kept getting constantly worse.*<sup>2</sup> *said.*

mujer a su *hija*? 9. ¿Qué prometió la *hija* a su *madre*? 10. ¿Vió la niña en el *espejo* la *cara* de su madre?

*D.* 1. The young wife took the wooden box and opened it at once. 2. In it she found a mirror. 3. She used to hide it securely among her treasures. 4. She used to take it and look at herself every day. 5. As the father forgot the mirror completely, the mother did not speak to him about it. 6. The mother said: "I am going to leave you and your father alone." 7. The mother showed the little girl the place where she had hidden it. 8. She gave her the mirror and said: "In it you will see me." 9. The girl promised her that she would look at it. 10. Will you lend me a pencil? I shall send you one this afternoon. 11. Did I lend you a book yesterday? Yes, you lent me Don Quixote. 12. When will you send me the flowers? I shall send you the flowers to-morrow morning. 13. Will<sup>1</sup> you go to the theater with me to-night? A friend has presented me with<sup>2</sup> two tickets to the performance. 14. Mr. González spoke to us at once because he recognized us as<sup>3</sup> two young Americans. 15. We answered him politely but firmly that we could not accept his offer to<sup>4</sup> accompany us.

<sup>1</sup> See § 76, *b.*

<sup>2</sup> Omit.

<sup>3</sup> *por.*

<sup>4</sup> *de.*

## LESSON XVI

**84. Irregular Verbs.** Many common verbs are irregular in their conjugation. These are conveniently memorized by considering their forms as derived from six principal parts. See section 243.

### 85. Social Forms.

Para servir a Vd. } *At your service.* (When speaking of one's self or  
Servidor de Vd. } instead of answering one's own name.)

¿Tengo el gusto de hablar con Don Juan López? *Have I the pleasure of speaking with Mr. John López?*

Servidor de Vd. *At your service.*

¿Con quién tengo el honor de hablar? *With whom have I the honor of speaking?*

Con Juan López, para servir a Vd. *With John López, at your service.*

These forms may seem stilted. But as the Spanish are formal and courteous in their intercourse with strangers, the foreigner who wishes to succeed with them should cultivate their manners.

**Quiero presentarle a mi amigo, el Señor Menéndez.** *I wish to introduce you to my friend, Mr. Menéndez.*

**Mucho gusto en conocerle. Or** *Pleased to meet you.*

**Celebro la ocasión de conocerle.**

On taking leave of anybody (**despedirse**), it is good form to call your home his by saying **Tiene Vd. su casa, calle de León, número 75**. This is equivalent also to an invitation to call.

**Siento molestarle, señor.** *I am sorry to trouble you, sir.*

**No hay molestia.** *No trouble.*

**Me alegro de saber que su hermano de Vd. está mejor de salud.** *I am glad to learn that your brother is better in health.*

#### EXERCISE 16

A. a. *Learn the principal parts of ser, estar, tener, venir, ir, decir, hacer, querer.*

b. *Conjugate the present indicative and the preterit indicative of the above verbs; also the imperfect indicative of ser and ir.*

c. 1. *Use ser, to be.*

I am an American.

He is a Spaniard.

It is nine o'clock.

Are you<sup>1</sup> a Cuban?

We }  
They } are not Englishmen.

*Use both imperfect and preterit*

I }  
He } was a<sup>2</sup> soldier.

It was ten o'clock (*impf.*).

Were you a<sup>2</sup> lawyer?

We }  
They } were merchants.

2. *Use estar, to be.*

I am here.

Where is he?

How are you?

I }  
He } was in Mexico.

How long were you there?

<sup>1</sup> Use polite form.

<sup>2</sup> Omit. See section 26, 1.

Here<sup>1</sup> we are.  
Are they at home?

We }  
They } were not at home.

3. Use **tener**, to have.

I }  
We } have.  
They }  
Does he have?  
Do you<sup>2</sup> have?

I }  
We } did not have.  
They }  
What did { he }  
          { you<sup>2</sup> } have?

4. Use **venir**, to come.

I }  
You } come.  
We }  
They }  
He comes.  
I }  
He }  
You } came.  
We }  
They }

When does he come?  
I am coming.  
He is coming.  
We }  
They } are not coming.  
You }  
Where<sup>3</sup> did { he }  
              { you } come from?  
              { they }  
When<sup>4</sup> did you come?

5. Use **ir (a)**, to go (to); **irse**, to go away.

I am going now.<sup>5</sup> I }  
Where<sup>6</sup> is he going? He }  
We } went to Cuba. We }  
They } are going home. You<sup>2</sup> }  
You<sup>2</sup> } They }  
To-morrow I go away. { he } He was going away.  
Does he go away? Where<sup>6</sup> did { you<sup>2</sup> } go? I went away.  
When do they go off? { they } They went off.

<sup>1</sup> *here* = *ya*.

<sup>2</sup> Singular and plural.

<sup>3</sup> *where from*, ¿ *de dónde* ?

<sup>4</sup> Translate in two ways.

<sup>5</sup> *ya*. (Put before the verb.)

<sup>6</sup> *adónde*.

6. *Use decir*, to say, to tell.

I	} say.	I	} said.	I was saying.
We		We		You were saying — ? <sup>1</sup>
They		They		
He says.				
What is he saying?		What did	{ he you }	say then?
What do you say?			{ they }	

7. *Use hacer*; to make, to do.

I	} make.	I	} made.	What was he doing?
We		We		What were you <sup>2</sup> doing?
They		They		
What does he do?		What did	{ he you <sup>2</sup> }	do?
What are you <sup>2</sup> doing?				

8. *Use querer*, to wish, to desire.

I	} wish to go.	I	} wished to come.	
You		We		
They		They		
What does he wish?		What did	{ he you }	wish?
What do you wish?				

*B.* Una tarde cuando ya se anochecía Flor se encontró con el doctor Guzmán a la vuelta de una esquina, y éste se detuvo a saludarla.

— ¡Hola! exclamó él con alegría.)

— Para servir a Vd., doctor, contestó ella.

— ¿Adónde va por estos lados?

— Vivo muy cerca; vengo del trabajo y voy a casa.

— ¿Y qué hace Vd. ahora?

— Coser, coser y llevar esta vida con paciencia.

— Pero ¡qué bien la encuentro de salud!

— Después de Dios, gracias a Vd.

— Pues lo celebro mucho. He tenido gran placer en saludarla.

<sup>1</sup> ¿Decía Vd.? is the proper way to ask one to repeat what has not been understood. ¿Qué? *what*, is vulgar.      <sup>2</sup> Singular and plural.



— Adiós, adiós, doctor.

Y se estrecharon las manos.

Un domingo por la tarde Rosalía entró en casa de Flor. Estaba ésta en el jardín, regando las macetas. Confusa Flor salió a recibirla.

— Yo soy Rosalía de Valera: vivo en la calle de la Paz, casa número 36, y allí estoy a sus órdenes.

— Señora, muchas gracias. Tengo mucho gusto en conocerla, y en esta casa habita una servidora de usted.

— Me han dicho que usted hace muy bien toda clase de bordados.

— Sí, señora, puedo bordar lo que usted quiera.

— Pues bien, yo vengo a eso justamente. Puede usted hacerme el servicio de bordarme para dentro de dos meses cuatro fundas de almohada muy bonitas y vistosas. Las quiero así para un regalo, ¿sabe usted?

— No tengo inconveniente.

— Entonces ¿puedo contar con ellas?

— Sí, señora.

C. 1. ¿Dónde se encontró Flor con el doctor? 2. ¿Qué hizo él? 3. ¿Con qué saludo contestó ella? 4. ¿De dónde vino ella? 5. ¿Qué clase de trabajo tuvo? 6. ¿Qué hicieron al despedirse? 7. ¿Cómo se presentó a Flor la señora de Valera? 8. ¿Cómo le contestó Flor? 9. ¿Qué quiso la señora? 10. ¿Para cuándo quiere las fundas de almohada? 11. ¿Cómo las quiere? 12. ¿Qué es una almohada?

D. 1. Have I the pleasure of addressing Mr. Valera? At your service. 2. I am pleased to make your acquaintance. 3. How is your health to-day? Much better, thank you. I am glad. 4. My grandfather comes at three o'clock this afternoon. I shall meet him at three o'clock this afternoon. 5. He says that he is going to Cuba next month. I shall go with him. 6. One Tuesday morning<sup>1</sup> I went to his house and found him in bed very sick. 7. They said that they would go to Spain with me. 8. I wished to see him but he did not come to New York. 9. Where did he come from? He

<sup>1</sup> por la mañana.

came from Mexico because he wished to learn English.<sup>1</sup> 10. Yesterday they came at a quarter to five; and we were there to meet them. 11. What time was it when they went?<sup>2</sup> It was 9 P.M. when they said that they were going, but they did not go before 9.30. 12. The tailor who made me this suit said that it would be ready last week. 13. I told him that I wished it for Sunday. 14. We did not have the kind of goods which he wished. 15. They stopped on the corner of the street to greet us.

<sup>1</sup> Insert definite article.

<sup>2</sup> Use *irse*.

LESSON XVII

86. The Imperative Mood expressing command has these forms :

-ar VERBS		-er VERBS		-ir VERBS	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
2. compra	comprad	2. vende	vended	2. escribe	escribid

87. The Use of the imperative mood is limited to positive commands of the familiar form; that is, to children or intimate acquaintances. Formal or polite requests, and negative commands of the familiar form, are supplied from the present subjunctive. A complete scheme follows :

FAMILIAR		POLITE	
-ar VERBS			
SING. compra	no compres	compre Vd.	no compre Vd.
PLUR. comprad	no compréis	compren Vds.	no compren Vds.
<i>buy</i>	<i>don't buy</i>	<i>buy</i>	<i>don't buy</i>
-er VERBS			
SING. vende	no vendas	venda Vd.	no venda Vd.
PLUR. vendad	no vendáis	vendan Vds.	no vendan Vds.
<i>sell</i>	<i>don't sell</i>	<i>sell</i>	<i>don't sell</i>
-ir VERBS			
SING. escribe	no escribas	escriba Vd.	no escriba Vd.
PLUR. escribid	no escribáis	escriban Vds.	no escriban Vds.
<i>write</i>	<i>don't write</i>	<i>write</i>	<i>don't write</i>

**88. The Subjunctive Mood, present tense, has the following forms:**

<b>-ar VERBS</b>	<b>-er AND -ir VERBS</b>
SING. 1. <b>compre</b>	SING. 1. <b>venda</b>
2. <b>compres</b>	2. <b>vendas</b>
3. <b>compre</b>	3. <b>venda</b>
PLUR. 1. <b>compremos</b>	PLUR. 1. <b>vendamos</b>
2. <b>compres</b>	2. <b>vendáis</b>
3. <b>compren</b>	3. <b>vendan</b>

A translation of the forms is not given because it might lead to misconceptions. See section 109.

**89. Radical-Changing Verbs**, being accented on the radical, suffer a change of vowel in the 2d person singular of the imperative, and throughout the singular and in the 3d person plural of the present subjunctive. See sections 244-247 for models.

**90. The Present Subjunctive**, when not used in a clause dependent on another verb, is used independently to express (1) a command or (2) a wish.

1. English commands in the second person are given by the imperative, usually without a subject expressed; as, *Go*. English commands in the first person plural, and in the third person singular and plural, are given by a locution beginning with *let*; as, *Let us go*. *Let him go*. Spanish uses the subjunctive mood for all (except familiar commands, see section 87), but usually introduces the third persons by **que**. Note the forms:

*To speak, hablar*

- SING. 2. *Speak, Hable Vd.*  
 3. *Let John speak, Que Juan hable*  
*Let her speak, Que hable ella*
- PLUR. 1. *Let us speak, Hablemos*  
 2. *Speak, Hablen Vds.*  
 3. *Let them speak, Que hablen*

*To sit down, sentarse*SING. 2. *Sit down, Siéntese Vd.*

3. *Let him be seated, Que se siente*  
*Let her sit down, Que se siente ella*

PLUR. 1. *Let us sit down, Sentémonos*

2. *Sit down, Siéntense Vds.*  
 3. *Let them be seated, Que se sienten*

a. The present subjunctive is sometimes used for the imperative, even in affirmative commands. — **Sube al momento. No recibió contestación.** — **Que subas.** "*Come up at once.*" *He received no reply.* "*Come up.*"

b. The present indicative appears for the subjunctive in mild commands. **Vas allá y le suplicas y le ruegas.** *Go there and beg and entreat him.*

2. A wish is expressed in English by the subjunctive or by *may* followed by an infinitive. Spanish uses the subjunctive mood.

Viva el rey !	<i>Long live the king !</i>
Dios le ampare !	<i>God protect you !</i>
Sea Vd. feliz !	<i>May you be happy !</i>

91. Pronouns, with the imperative or the subjunctive used as imperative, follow the verb and are appended to it, unless the expression is negative or introduced by **que** or some other word, in which cases the pronoun precedes.

Hágalo Vd. <i>Do it.</i>	Dime ahora. <i>Tell me now.</i>
No lo haga. <i>Don't do it.</i>	No le digas. <i>Don't tell him.</i>
Hágalo Jorge, or Que Jorge lo haga. <i>Let George do it.</i>	

92. Reflexive Verbs have the following peculiarities :

1. The second plural imperative loses **d** before **os**, except **irse** :

**sentad + os = sentaos, be seated**  
 But **idos, go away**

2. The first plural drops **s** before **nos** :

**vamos + nos = vámonos, Let's go away**  
**sentemos + nos = sentémonos, Let's sit down**

**93. Idiomatic Expressions.** English *please*, introducing a request, may be rendered by various locutions as in the following :

<b>Tenga Vd. la bondad de cerrar la puerta.</b>	<i>Please</i> (lit. <i>Have the kindness to close the door.</i> )
<b>Hágame Vd. el favor de repetir.</b>	<i>Please</i> (lit. <i>Do me the favor to repeat.</i> )
<b>Sírvase Vd. traerme un vaso de agua.</b>	<i>Please bring me a glass of water.</i> ( <i>Sírvase</i> , from <i>servirse</i> , is less courteous than the other expressions. Use with persons under obligation to serve you; frequent in business letters.)
<b>Pase Vd.</b>	<i>Come in.</i>
<b>Pase Vd. adelante.</b>	<i>Go first.</i>
<b>Dispense Vd.</b>	<i>Excuse me.</i>

### EXERCISE 17

*A. 1. Express in the negative, familiar form :*

Speak, <b>habla</b> ( <i>hablar</i> )	Give, <b>da</b> ( <i>dar</i> )
Take, <b>toma</b> ( <i>tomar</i> )	Say, <b>di</b> ( <i>decir</i> )
Eat, <b>come</b> ( <i>comer</i> )	Come, <b>ven</b> ( <i>venir</i> )
Drink, <b>bebe</b> ( <i>beber</i> )	Go, <b>vé</b> ( <i>ir</i> )
Go up, <b>sube</b> ( <i>subir</i> )	Go away, <b>véte</b> ( <i>irse</i> )
Open, <b>abre</b> ( <i>abrir</i> )	Do, <b>haz</b> ( <i>hacer</i> )
Close, <b>cierra</b> ( <i>cerrar</i> )	Put, <b>pon</b> ( <i>poner</i> )

*2. Put all the above forms in the plural.*

*3. Express the same in the polite form, singular and plural, positive and negative.*

*4. Translate :*

*To get into the carriage, Subir al coche*

*To go away, Irse*

Get into the carriage, sir

Go away

Let him get in

Let him go away

Let Mary get in

Let Charles go away

Let us get in

Let us go away

Get in, gentlemen

Go away (*plur.*)

Let them get in

Let them go away

*B.* 1. Mozo, tráigame Vd. un vaso de agua y una taza de café. Sírvase Vd. echarme esta carta al correo. Dígame Vd. el nombre de este pescado. 2. Cochero, lléveme Vd. al teatro del Príncipe y no se pare Vd. hasta llegar. Espere un momento, he olvidado mi paraguas. Aguárdeme Vd. aquí. 3. Caballero, hágame Vd. el favor de indicar el camino de la casa de correos. Vaya Vd. derecho por adelante. 4. Sírvase hablar más despacio. No comprendo bien cuando Vd. habla tan de prisa. 5. Caballero, ¿por dónde se va al Hotel de Inglaterra? Siga Vd. hasta la esquina de la tercera calle y dé vuelta a la izquierda. 6. Tenga Vd. la bondad de repetir. Soy extranjero y no comprendo si Vd. no habla despacio. 7. Cochero, vaya Vd. más de prisa. No llegaremos a tiempo. Ya estamos. Bajemos. 8. Vamos a pie al parque y sentémonos debajo de los árboles. ¿No sería mejor ir en coche o en tranvía? 9. Ya estoy cansado de andar. Subamos al tranvía y regresemos a casa. 10. Conductor, hágame bajar en la esquina frente a la catedral. 11. Pase Vd., señor. Tome Vd. este asiento. No se vaya Vd. tan pronto. Quede Vd. un ratito. 12. Que el camarero me traiga el periódico de hoy. 13. Que el camarero me llame a las siete. 14. Que el mozo suba mi baúl a mi habitación.

*C.* *The answers to the following should contain a verb in the subjunctive mood expressing command:*<sup>1</sup> 1. ¿Quiere el señor leche en el café? 2. ¿Daré yo la carta al cartero? 3. Caballero, hágame Vd. el favor de indicar el camino del teatro del Príncipe. 4. ¿Quiere Vd. indicarme la casa de correos? 5. ¿Por dónde se va a la calle de Alcalá? 6. ¿Cómo iremos al parque? 7. ¿Quiere el señor el periódico de hoy? 8. ¿A qué hora quiere Vd. que le llame? 9. Señor, hay un caballero a la puerta, quien quiere entrar. 10. ¿Iremos al teatro en tranvía o en coche? 11. ¿En dónde quiere Vd. su baúl? 12. ¿Me comprende Vd.?

<sup>1</sup> The answers to *C* may be taken directly from *B* with some variations; for example, one answer to 12 might be, **No muy bien; sírvase hablar más despacio.**

*D.* 1. What street-car do I take to go to the park? Follow this street to the next corner and go south.<sup>1</sup> 2. Please give me a timetable of the trains for Chicago. Do the trains stop for meals? 3. Please tell me where is the railway station. Go straight ahead as far as the third corner and turn to the right. You will see it then. 4. Let's go to the theater. Shall we go on foot? No, let's take a carriage. 5. Driver, take me to the plaza and stop in front of the hotel. 6. Here<sup>2</sup> comes a car. Let's get in and go home. 7. Let us stay in the park to see the animals. Let's buy some bread to give them. 8. Let John bring me some fried eggs and a cup of coffee. 9. I cannot understand you if you speak fast. Please speak more slowly. 10. Call me at 6.30, as I wish to take the first train home. 11. Please ask the letter-carrier if he has any letters for me. 12. If Mr. González comes, let him come in at once. I wish to speak to him. 13. Please tell me if I am speaking to Mr. Genaro Chic? At your service. 14. Wait for me a moment. I am going to mail an important letter. 15. Can you show me Mr. López's house? I will show you his house, if you will accompany me as far as the next corner.

<sup>1</sup> Supply *a*l.

<sup>2</sup> *ya*.

## LESSON XVIII

**94. Two Pronouns.** When two objective pronouns occur with the same verb, the indirect object pronoun stands first.

**Me lo dió.**

*He gave it to me.*

**Dámelo.**

*Give it to me.*

**Si Vd. tiene mis libros, démelos.**

*If you have my books, give them to me.*

*a.* When the direct object is a pronoun of the first or second person, it is better to express the indirect object in the prepositional form preceded by *a*.

**Te presentó a mí.**

*He introduced you to me.*

**Presénteme Vd. a ella.**

*Introduce me to her.*

*b.* When two pronouns of the third person occur together, the indirect object pronouns **le** and **les** assume the form **se** (derived from Old Spanish **ge** and not the reflexive **se**). Thus:

<b>Escribí una carta a mi padre.</b>	<i>I wrote a letter to my father.</i>
<b>Le escribí una carta.</b>	<i>I wrote him a letter.</i>
<b>La escribí a mi padre.</b>	<i>I wrote it to my father.</i>
<b>Se la escribí.</b>	<i>I wrote it to him.</i>

*c.* The sentence **Se la escribí** may have six different meanings. To distinguish the various meanings of **le**, **les**, and **se**, use the prepositional forms of the pronouns: thus,

<b>se</b> } <i>to him, a él</i>	<b>se</b> } <i>to them (m.), a ellos</i>
<b>or</b> } <i>to her, a ella</i>	<b>or</b> } <i>to them (f.), a ellas</i>
<b>le</b> } <i>to you, a usted</i>	<b>les</b> } <i>to you (pl.), a ustedes</i>
<b>No se las escribí a ellos.</b>	<i>I did not write them to them.</i>
<b>Quiero decírselo a Vd.</b>	<i>I wish to tell it to you.</i>
<b>A él le mandé un paquete.</b>	<i>I sent him a package.</i>
<b>A ellas no les hablé.</b>	<i>He did not speak to them.</i>

In sentences like these an English speaker is tempted to omit the conjunctive form. Do not omit it, because the prepositional form merely explains the other and is not a substitute or alternative.

**95.** With **hay** the personal pronouns usually have the meaning of *some*.

See section 253 for conjugation of the impersonal verb **hay**.

¿ <b>Dónde hay sastrerías?</b> — <b>Las hay en la calle de Francos.</b>	"Where are there some tailors' shops?" "There are some in Francos street."
¿ <b>Hay huevos frescos?</b> — <b>Los hay de primera clase.</b>	"Are there any fresh eggs?" "First-class ones."

**96. Muy, very,** is a shortened form of **mucho**; and must be replaced by **mucho** when occurring alone. The intensified form is **muchísimo** (**muy mucho** is not allowable). English *much* before past participles is **muy**. (For examples see section 210.)



97. The Possessive Adjectives given in section 37 are shortened forms, used before nouns, of the following :

mío, <i>my</i>	nuestro, <i>our</i>
tuyo, <i>thy</i>	vuestro, <i>your</i> (plur. of tuyo)
suyo { <i>his</i> . . . (de él)	suyo { <i>their</i> (m.) . . . (de ellos)
<i>her</i> . . . (de ella)	<i>their</i> (f.) . . . (de ellas)
<i>your</i> . . . (de usted)	<i>your</i> . . . (de ustedes)

a. These forms are declined to agree with the thing possessed. They stand after the noun, being regularly employed in direct address.

Queridos hermanos míos y queridas *My dear brothers and sisters.*  
hermanas mías. (Used by preachers.)  
Amigo mío. *Dear Friend.* } (Complimentary  
Muy señores nuestros. *Dear Sirs.* } openings of letters.)

b. When the meaning is indefinite, these forms express the English idiom *of mine, of his, etc.* : as, *un amigo mío, a friend of mine ; ciertos libros suyos, certain books of his.*

c. On account of the several meanings of *su* and *suyo*, the prepositional forms of the personal pronouns may be added after the nouns modified, in which case the possessive adjective may be replaced by the definite article : *No tengo su libro de ella, or el libro de ella, I do not have her book.*

98. Possessive Pronouns are formed from the possessive adjectives by prefixing the article.

## SINGULAR

1. el mío (la mía, los míos, las mías), *mine*
2. el tuyo (la tuya, los tuyos, las tuyas), *yours, thine*
3. el suyo (la suya, los suyos, las suyas), *his, hers, its, or yours*

## PLURAL

1. el nuestro (la nuestra, los nuestros, las nuestras), *ours*
2. el vuestro (la vuestra, los vuestros, las vuestras), *yours*
3. el suyo (la suya, los suyos, las suyas), *theirs or yours*

a. The possessive pronouns agree with the thing possessed: **Su casa es más grande que la mía o la de usted, His house is larger than mine or yours.**

b. The article may be omitted before a possessive pronoun in the predicate: **Este libro es mío, This book is mine.**

c. **Los míos, los suyos, etc.,** may mean *My folks, his men, etc.*

d. **Lo mío, etc.,** means *what is mine*: as, **Con lo suyo y lo mío es imposible vivir, On his property and mine it is impossible to live.**

### 99. Idiomatic Expressions.

To inquire one's opinion: **¿Qué le parece?**

To inquire one's liking: **¿Cómo le gusta?**

To invite one to partake: **¿Le gusta?**

The subjects of the verbs are the things under discussion; the person who thinks or likes is expressed by an indirect object pronoun. The individuality of the persons may be emphasized by a pronoun in the prepositional form.

**¿Qué le parece este paño?**

*What do you think of this cloth?*

**A mí no me parece bueno.**

*I don't think it is good (lit. It doesn't seem good to me).*

**¿Cómo le gustan a Vd. las naranjas?**

*How do you like oranges?*

**A mí me gustan muchísimo.**

*I like them very much.*

**¿Le gusta comer con nosotros?**

*Will you dine with us?*

**¿Le gusta una copa?**

*Have a glass?*

**Con mucho gusto.**

*With great pleasure.*

### EXERCISE 18

#### A. Translate:

(Use the formal singular for *you*. Remember that **pedir** and **comprar** take the indirect object of the person from whom a thing is requested or bought.)

1. *Referring to a letter (una carta).* Give it to me. Give it to him. I gave it to you. He delivered it to them. I have not written it to her.

2. *Referring to some books (libros)*. I asked him for them. He asked them of you. I have read them to them. Give them to us. Did he send them to you?

3. *Referring to some apples (manzanas)*. I did not buy them of him. Buy them of me. I wish to buy them of you. Did he sell them to him? He sold them to us.

4. *Referring to a book (un libro)*. I read it to her yesterday. He wishes to read it to you. She sent it to me, not to you. He will not send it to her. They will not deliver it to you.

B. 1. Voy a hacer un viaje a Barcelona. ¿Conoce Vd. un buen hotel donde hay ascensor?

— Lo hay en el Hotel de Ambos Mundos. Allí encontrará Vd. buena cama, buenas comidas y servicio excelente.

— ¿Cuáles son las horas de las comidas?

— Por la mañana al levantarse, café; a las diez y media hasta las doce, almuerzo; a las siete, la comida en mesa redonda.

— ¿Cuánto pago?

— De 8 a 12 pesetas diarias según la habitación, todo incluso sino el café y las propinas. Muchos viajeros no toman nada por la mañana. ¿Va Vd. a Barcelona por mar o en ferrocarril?

— Parto para Barcelona en el tren que sale a las diez de la mañana. A mí no me gusta viajar por mar. En los camarotes falta el aire; huelen mal y siempre me mareo. Ya he tomado en el despacho de la compañía un billete de primera clase de ida y vuelta. Mi equipaje está en la estación, listo para facturar. Yo mismo debo estar allí media hora antes de la salida del tren. A mi llegada a Barcelona, alquilaré un coche para llevarme y lo mío derecho al hotel.

— En la frontera se registran los baúles y las maletas a la aduana. Por eso se para el tren casi una hora. También hay fonda si tiene Vd. apetito para comer o beber algo.

— ¿Tiene Vd. conocidos en Barcelona?

— No conozco a nadie allí. El señor Pérez es de Barcelona.

— ¿Quiere Vd. presentarme a él?

— Con mucho gusto.

2. — ¿Hay buenas tiendas en Barcelona?

— Las hay muy buenas. Se puede comprar todo. Tienen siempre buenos surtidos de distintas novedades.

— ¿Son módicos los precios?

— Sí, mucho. Se venden los artículos a precio fijo y no es preciso regatear.

*(El viajero entra en una tienda)*

— ¿Qué desea el señor?

— Sírvase enseñarme un traje completo para hombre.

— ¿Qué le parece éste? Es del mejor paño inglés, todo lana, y de un modelo muy moderno.

— ¿Cuánto vale?

— Lo vendo a treinta duros.

— A mí me parece demasiado caro. ¿No hay más barato?

— Más barato sí, pero no tan bueno. Fíjese Vd. en la calidad superior. El precio no es muy elevado y si le gusta el traje, puedo rebajar diez por ciento pagándolo al contado. No puedo dárselo por menos.

— No me gusta el color. Me parece que ese color azul tira a verde. Enséñeme Vd. algo más oscuro. Los colores claros se ensucian fácilmente.

— Pero este color es muy de moda. Vendo muchísimo. Se lo he enseñado a Vd. primero porque lo escogen tantos señores. ¿No quiere Vd. probar el traje? Si le sienta bien, el dependiente puede llevárselo a su casa en seguida.

C. 1. ¿Tiene Vd. su llave o la mía? 2. ¿De quién es este baúl? 3. ¿Cómo le gusta a su hermano la ciudad de Barcelona? 4. ¿Le gusta a Vd. hablar en español? 5. ¿Hay cartas para mí? 6. ¿Dónde hay libros españoles? 7. ¿Qué le parece este traje? 8. ¿Qué tal encuentra Vd. el hotel? 9. ¿Quién le ha dicho que voy a España? 10. ¿Dónde compró Vd. un sombrero tan parecido al mío? 11. ¿Les

gustan a Vds. las tiendas de Valencia? 12. ¿Le gusta a Vd. regatear? 13. ¿Le gusta más comprar a precio fijo? 14. ¿Es de Juan aquella maleta? 15. Explique Vd. en español el sentido de «un conocido»; «el equipaje»; «una sala de espera»; «una fonda»; «un surtido de géneros.»

D. 1. Can you tell me where to find a good hotel? There is one in Broad Street. 2. Do you buy your clothes in London? No; I buy mine in New York. 3. I am writing a letter to my folks in Barcelona; I shall send it to them at once. 4. My trunk weighs more than his. 5. Before the departure of the train, they will search your valises and mine. 6. This trunk is mine, but that bag is yours. That one yonder is Henry's. 7. There is no elevator in that hotel. I think the other is better. 8. I do not like to climb so many stairs. 9. Will you have an apple? Many, many thanks. Nothing seems so good to me as a ripe apple. 10. The orange was mine, but he had cut it, so I gave it to him. 11. They showed a<sup>1</sup> desire to know the story and Luciano told it to them. 12. The postman had a letter for you. We were on the point of asking it of him, when he handed it to us. 13. Are the prices high in London? Yes, very. They seem higher to me than ours in New York. 14. Which country do you like best? I like the country most in which I am living. 15. I think that I have your valise and that you have mine. 16. If you ask him, he will gladly give them to you. 17. Sir, you have made a mistake on paying me for<sup>1</sup> the oranges. How is that?<sup>2</sup> Haven't I paid you enough for them?<sup>3</sup> 18. I had the pleasure of seeing<sup>4</sup> her and speaking<sup>4</sup> to her, when I went to mend the clock for her.<sup>5</sup> 19. I am not going to Spain alone; some friends of mine are going to take the trip with me. 20. They do not like long<sup>6</sup> journeys on the railroad, and so we shall stop at many places.

1 Omit.

2 Omit *is that*.

3 Direct object, omit *for*.

4 Use infinitive.

5 Indirect object.

6 Supply definite article.

## LESSON XIX

**100. The Infinitive Mood.** A verb in the infinitive mood completes the meaning of the verb, noun, or adjective on which it depends.

<b>No puede trabajar.</b>	<i>He cannot work.</i>
<b>Queremos venir.</b>	<i>We wish to come.</i>
<b>Pienso ir.</b>	<i>I intend to go.</i>
<b>Es preciso hablar español.</b>	<i>It is necessary to speak Spanish.</i>

*a.* Before a dependent infinitive most verbs require some preposition. The correct preposition must be learned with each verb.

See Appendix II for lists.

<b>Aprende a nadar.</b>	<i>He is learning to swim.</i>
<b>Trataré de ir.</b>	<i>I shall try to go.</i>
<b>Me entretengo con leer.</b>	<i>I amuse myself by reading.</i>
<b>Consienten en venir.</b>	<i>They consent to come.</i>

*b.* A few verbs, notably **seguir**, govern the present participle.

<b>Siga Vd. leyendo.</b>	<i>Continue reading.</i>
--------------------------	--------------------------

*c.* A preposition before the dependent infinitive after some verbs causes those verbs to have a different meaning.

<b>Deber, ought, should.</b>	<b>Dejar, let, allow.</b>
<b>Deber de, must (supposition).</b>	<b>Dejar de, stop, neglect, fail.</b>
<b>No debes leer la novela.</b>	<i>You ought not to read the novel.</i>
<b>Debe de ser tu primo.</b>	<i>It must be your cousin.</i>
<b>Me dejaron salir.</b>	<i>They let me go out.</i>
<b>Ramón dejó de hablar.</b>	<i>Ramón stopped speaking.</i>
<b>No dejó de darme los buenos días.</b>	<i>He did not fail to wish me good morning.</i>

**101.** Verbs denoting motion have the preposition **a** before the dependent infinitive.

<b>Viene a verme.</b>	<i>He is coming to see me.</i>
<b>Voy a escribir.</b>	<i>I am going to write.</i>
<b>Subió a hablar con el médico.</b>	<i>He went up to speak with the doctor.</i>

a. The English idiom after verbs of motion frequently has a co-ordinate verb, as *go and see*. Such expressions in Spanish require that the second verb be put in the infinitive preceded by *a*.

<b>Fué ella a buscar un hueso.</b>	<i>She went and got a bone.</i>
<b>Venga Vd. a verme.</b>	<i>Come and see me.</i>
<b>Vaya Vd. a llamar a su padre.</b>	<i>Go and call your father.</i>

102. An infinitive dependent on a noun or an adjective is usually connected therewith by the preposition *de*.

<b>Tenga Vd. la bondad de decirme.</b>	<i>Have the kindness to tell me.</i>
<b>Tenemos la costumbre de leer los periódicos.</b>	<i>We have the habit of reading the newspapers.</i>
<b>Soy capaz de guardar el secreto.</b>	<i>I am able to keep the secret.</i>

a. A few nouns and adjectives have the preposition *a* before the infinitive.

<b>Estaba atento a mirarme.</b>	<i>He was looking at me attentively.</i>
<b>Condena Vd. la propensión a llorar por motivos pueriles.</b>	<i>You condemn the tendency to cry for trifling reasons.</i>

103. Verbs denoting a sense-perception, as seeing or hearing, show a dependent infinitive with a subject which is also the object of the principal verb. The two verbs are usually not separated.

<b>¿Oyó Vd. sonar la campanilla?</b>	<i>Did you hear the bell ring?</i>
<b>Ví correr a las niñas.</b>	<i>I saw the girls run.</i>

104. The dependent infinitive, with some exceptions as in section 103 (see also 106), must not have a subject different from that of the principal verb. Such expressions as *He wishes me-to-come* require the subjunctive mood (see section 109). But clauses that have the same subject as that of the principal verb are put in the infinitive.

<b>Cree estar enfermo.</b>	<i>He thinks he is sick.</i>
<b>Espero llegar mañana.</b>	<i>I hope I shall arrive to-morrow.</i>
<b>Creí haberle encontrado.</b>	<i>I thought I had found him.</i>

a. *Decir* should be followed only by a noun clause: **Dice que está malo,** *He says that he is sick.*

*b. Dejar, to allow, permitir, to permit, and a few other verbs may take the dependent infinitive even if there is a particular subject.*

<b>Vuestra Reverencia me va a dejar coger en la huerta una poca hoja para mis gusanos de seda.</b>	<i>Your Reverence is going to let me gather in the garden a few leaves for my silk-worms.</i>
<b>Permitía al sol acariciar sus brazos desnudos.</b>	<i>She permitted the sun to caress her bare arms.</i>

*c. Hacer or mandar with the dependent infinitive means to cause, or to have a thing done.*

<b>Hizo (or mandó) hacer un traje.</b>	<i>He ordered a suit made.</i>
<b>Hace facturar el baúl.</b>	<i>He has the trunk checked.</i>

Hence arise several idiomatic combinations :

<b>Hacer venir al médico.</b>	<i>To send for the doctor.</i>
<b>Hacer pasar al señor.</b>	<i>To show the gentleman in.</i>
<b>Hacer saber.</b>	<i>To make known.</i>

If the second verb has both a subject and an object, the subjunctive mood should be preferred : **Haga Vd. que Rosa lo coloque en el sillón de ruedas, Have Rosa put you in the wheel-chair.**

105. The infinitive is used as a verbal noun,

1. Either as subject or object of a verb.

<b>Oír la ópera es allí lo de menos.</b>	<i>To hear the opera is the least thing there.</i>
<b>Era frecuente encontrarla en la calle.</b>	<i>It was a frequent thing to meet her in the street.</i>
<b>Recuerdo mucho trabajar.</b>	<i>I remember working a great deal.</i>

*a. In this use of the infinitive the article frequently occurs.*

<b>El cazar es buen ejercicio.</b>	<i>Hunting is good exercise.</i>
<b>Trabajo me cuesta el creerlo.</b>	<i>To believe it is difficult (lit. costs me labor).</i>
<b>Disimule Vd. el no haber contestado.</b>	<i>Pardon my not having answered.</i>

2. After prepositions. (English uses only the present participle.<sup>1</sup>)

<b>Antes de viajar.</b>	<i>Before traveling.</i>
<b>Partió sin decir adiós.</b>	<i>He left without saying good-by.</i>
<b>Quedé en el colegio hasta cumplir los dieciocho años.</b>	<i>I remained at school until I was eighteen years old.</i>

<sup>1</sup> English grammarians commonly term this a verbal noun or gerund.



**106.** After some prepositions the infinitive mood appears in dependent clauses with idiomatic meaning. Such clauses may have the subject different from that of the principal clause.

1. **A** introduces a conditional clause.

**Hubiera prendido el fuego al convento a no ser por los bomberos que llegaron en seguida.** *The fire would have spread to the convent if it had not been for the firemen who arrived immediately.*

*a. A ver* is sometimes used imperatively, an ellipsis for **vamos a ver**, *let us see.*

**Se ha obstruido la fuente de la cocina. A ver si la arreglas.** *The water-pipe in the kitchen is clogged. Let us see if you can fix it.*

**Se ha desmayado, dijo el general. A ver una camilla y que retiren a este oficial.** *"He has fainted," said the general. "Bring a stretcher and carry away this officer."*

*b.* Note such idiomatic adverbial expressions as

<b>a medio asar</b> , <i>half-baked</i>	<b>a saber</b> , <i>to wit, namely</i>
<b>a medio vestir</b> , <i>half-dressed</i>	<b>a más no poder</b> , <i>with might and main</i>
<b>a todo correr</b> , <i>at full speed</i>	
<b>a más tardar</b> , <i>at the latest</i>	

2. **Al** precedes a time clause. (See section 62, *b.*)

**El viejo, al oír estas palabras, volvió la cabeza.** *The old man, when he heard (or on hearing) these words, turned his head.*

3. **Con** introduces either

*a.* A clause denoting means:

**Un idioma se aprende con hablar.** *A language is learned by speaking.*

(The present participle is more common in this sense, § 274.)

*b.* A concessive clause.

**En mi pueblo, con ser una ciudad de importancia, no hay abastecimiento de agua.** *In my town, though it is a city of importance, there is no public water supply.*

## 4. De may introduce a conditional clause.

Pues, de saberlo, dimitiría su cargo de contador.	<i>For, if he knew it, he would resign his position as manager.</i>
Esto no quiere decir que el capitán fuese mal soldado; de haberlo sido, no estaría a las órdenes de su tío.	<i>This does not mean that the captain was a bad soldier; if he had been he would not be under the orders of his uncle.</i>

a. De sometimes connects an infinitive with the noun in an adverbial expression of time beginning with a, usually introduced in English by *after*.

a los pocos años de estar en Madrid,	<i>after being (or he had been) a few years in Madrid</i>
a los diez segundos de atender,	<i>after he had (or having) paid attention for ten seconds</i>

5. Para precedes an infinitive clause which explains the purpose of the action expressed by the principal verb.

Compramos libros para leer.	<i>We buy books to read.</i>
Come para vivir y no vivas para comer.	<i>Eat to live, do not live to eat.</i>
Aprovecho esta ocasión para agradecerle.	<i>I take advantage of this opportunity to thank you.</i>

a. After verbs of motion a is used instead of para.

Subió al campanario a contemplar el horizonte.	<i>He went up to the belfry to examine the horizon.</i>
El muchacho se paró a ver la tropa.	<i>The boy stopped to watch the soldiers.</i>

6. Por introduces the reason or cause for the action of the principal verb.

El buque no se ha perdido por tempestades sino por ir yo en él.	<i>The ship was not lost on account of storms but because I went in it.</i>
No pudo hacerlo por hallarse enfermo.	<i>He could not do it because he was sick.</i>
No nos ha dicho nada.—Por no alarmar a ustedes.	<i>"You have not told us a thing about it." "For the sake of not alarming you."</i>

## 107. Verbal idioms in which occur a dependent infinitive are—

1. **Tener que, must, have to.**

Tengo que despedirme.

*I must take leave (or say good-by).*

Tuvo que salir.

*He had to go out.*

Tendremos que ir.

*We shall have to go.*2. **Hay que, must, in a general, hence impersonal, sense.**

Hay que mejorar la condición del obrero.

*It is necessary to improve the condition of the workingman.*

Había que pasar entre dos fuegos.

*It was necessary to pass between two fires.*

3. **Haber de** denotes a slight degree of obligation, sometimes is little more than a future. The imperfect has the force of the conditional.

Caruso ha de cantar esta noche.

*Caruso is to sing to-night (or will sing to-night).*

Anoche había de venir mi tía.

*Last night my aunt was to come.*

Imaginó que nadie había de pedirle cuentas.

*He imagined that nobody would ask him for an accounting.*

4. **Acabar de, have just.** The infinitive is translated as though it were the principal verb.

El vapor acaba de llegar.

*The ship has just arrived.*

Acababan de levantarse.

*They had just risen.*

5. **Volver a, again.** The infinitive is rendered as though it were the principal verb with the tense of **volver**.

Vuelve a gritar.

*He shouts again.*

Volveré a principiar.

*I shall begin again.*

Muchas gracias, volvió a decir la vieja.

*"Many thanks," the old lady said again.*

No vuelva Vd. a llorar.

*Don't cry again.*

6. **Ser de, used impersonally, appears to give a passive meaning to the dependent infinitive.**

Es de suponer.

*It is to be supposed.*

Era muy de extrañar.

*It was very surprising.*

Note the following:

; Era de ver la gente en la calle!

*You ought to have seen the people in the street!*

## 108. Relative Pronoun.

el que (masculine singular), <i>he who</i>	} <i>the one who</i> or <i>which</i>
la que (feminine singular), <i>she who</i>	
los que (masculine plural)	} <i>they who</i> { <i>the ones who</i> or <i>which</i>
las que (feminine plural)	
lo que (neuter singular), <i>that which, what</i>	

*a.* As the first element of this compound is the definite article, the masculine singular *el* combines with the prepositions *de* and *a* to form *del* and *al*.

*b.* English *what* is *qué* only when asking a question. An indirect question, as *I know what he asks*, must be introduced by *lo que*. *Yo sé lo que pregunta.*

## EXERCISE 19

*A. Translate:* 1. Before arriving. Without waiting ten minutes. After eating. The honor of speaking. The pleasure of knowing you.

2. I have just arrived. He has just spoken. They had just dined. We had just come. Who has just risen?

3. On getting up. On sitting down. When he sat down. On saying good-by. When we returned.

4. Come and visit me. Go and get it. He went and asked him. Let us go and see the machines. He went out to greet him.

5. He laughs again. They shouted again. I will come again. Let us begin again. He has begun again.

6. I must go. We must study. They have to eat. He had to pay dear. I shall have to visit him.

7. It is necessary to pay. Was it necessary to shout?

8. Mary is to come to-morrow. When am I to go? Where was he to take you? Who will sleep on the ground? What would a young man do?

*B. 1.* Os preguntáis la noche del 31 de diciembre — ¿Qué he hecho de los 365 días y seis horas de este año? Y es que sólo recuerda vuestra memoria mucho desnudarse y vestirse, mucho comer y volver a tener apetito, mucho dormir; haber llorado algunos días,

y haber reído más que nunca pocos días después. ¡ Y lo mismo siempre ! ¡ Y el año pasado como el anterior ! ¡ Y el año que viene como el que acaba de pasar !

2. El comercio es un campo de batalla, en un bando los vendedores en otro los compradores. Sólo hay tres casos en que el comprador y el vendedor se entienden sin discusión. 1.º Cuando no cuesta nada lo que se vende. 2.º Cuando no se piensa pagar lo que se compra. 3.º Cuando es otro el que paga. Fuera de estos tres casos que no son raros, tiene que haber lucha para fijar el precio de las cosas. Cada cosa vale según la estiman el que la posee y el que la necesita.

3. Aunque son muchos los ramos en que se divide el comercio, citaremos los cinco siguientes.

*Comercio por mayor*, que consiste en comprar grandes partidas de mercaderías en los puntos donde se fabrican o producen, para venderlas después a los mercaderes por menor.

*Comercio por menor* es el que se hace comprando géneros a los comerciantes por mayor, para venderlos en tiendas a los consumidores.

*Comercio de comisión*, que se reduce a comprar, remitir, recibir, vender, girar, o practicar cualquiera operación mercantil por cuenta ajena. El que se ocupa de esto se llama comisionista.

*Comercio de Banca*: llámase así a la especulación que se hace dando giro al capital por medio de cambios, descuentos de letras, pagarés, préstamos.

*Comercio de Seguros*, que consiste en responder del importe de las averías, perjuicio o pérdida total de los géneros y efectos del comercio que por mar o tierra se transportan de un punto a otro. Hay compañías de seguros que aseguran contra incendio y sobre la vida de personas, obligándose a indemnizar al que sufra una pérdida.

C. 1. ¿ Qué acaba Vd. de leer ? 2. ¿ Qué recuerda Vd. del año pasado ? 3. ¿ Cómo se llama el que hace el comercio de comisión ?

¿de banca? 4. Explique Vd. el comercio de comisión. 5. ¿Para qué sirve un banco? 6. ¿Cómo se llaman los que venden? ¿los que compran? 7. ¿Piensa Vd. pagar lo que compra? 8. ¿Cómo se llama el que compra pero no paga al contado? 9. ¿Cómo se llama lo que uno debe? 10. ¿Por qué compra un comerciante grandes partidas de géneros? 11. ¿En qué consiste el comercio por mayor? ¿el comercio por menor? 12. ¿Con qué motivo hacemos asegurar una casa o un almacén de géneros? 13. ¿Cuál de los ramos del comercio prefiere Vd.? 14. ¿Qué tiene Vd. que estudiar para ser comerciante por mayor?

*D.* 1. He tried to answer him. 2. We do ill to permit it. 3. He asks permission to come in. 4. The watchman consented to open the door. 5. They wished to see me. 6. He did not let me go. 7. We called twice to wake up the boy. 8. He must be a bad man. 9. I believe I can go. 10. He regrets he must say it. 11. I am having my watch mended. 12. We had another key made. 13. I like to sleep in the morning. 14. He made the horse run. 15. He brought me a paper to sign. 16. They went out without looking at me. 17. He spoke without raising his glance from the paper. 18. He thought he heard his father's voice. 19. I have heard my father relate the story. 20. Did you see the boys run? 21. The one who has just arrived is Mr. Guzmán. 22. I know what you are going to say. 23. They came and visited me the first Sunday of each month. 24. A Frenchman came to give us French lessons. 25. Those who buy goods to use are consumers. 26. Did you hear the bells ringing? 27. On leaving school we were to occupy different places. 28. When they passed, people turned around to look at them. 29. The article in the paper insulted the Americans for favoring the insurrection. 30. He saw her again on the same street. 31. To speak a foreign language is more difficult than to understand it. 32. Before traveling in a foreign country one should learn its language. 33. More than once I have wished to come and pay you a visit. 34. They propose not to let me study. 35. While she lived, I never neglected to visit her. 36. After being a few

months in Havana the poor boy fell sick with<sup>1</sup> a fever. 37. The teacher punished the boy for not knowing his lesson. 38. It is necessary to be there at ten o'clock in the morning. 39. Several other persons lived there, because it was a boarding-house. 40. To give advice is dangerous.

<sup>1</sup> *de.*

## LESSON XX

**109. The Subjunctive Mood** is used in certain kinds of dependent clauses.

1. Just as a direct command is expressed in Spanish by the subjunctive mood, so is also an indirect command depending on an expression which implies a wish or command.

**Escriba Vd. a su padre.**

*Write to your father.*

**Quiero que Vd. escriba a su padre.**

*I wish you to write to your father.*

**Que el camarero me traiga el café.**

*Let the waiter bring me the coffee.*

**Diga Vd. al camarero que me traiga el café.**

*Tell the waiter to bring me the coffee.*

*a.* The English expression in these cases is usually an infinitive with a subject expressed. Such a construction must not be used in Spanish unless the subject of the infinitive is the same as that of the principal verb.

**Quiero ir.**

*I wish to go.*

**Quiero que Vd. vaya.**

*I wish you to go.*

*b.* Sometimes English has a present participle in the dependent clause. **Prohibo que tú fumes,** *I forbid your smoking.*

*c.* Some common verbs that require the subjunctive in dependent clauses for the above reason are

<b>querer, to wish</b>	<b>mandar, to order</b>	<b>suplicar</b>	} <i>to request, beg</i>
<b>desear, to desire</b>	<b>permitir, to permit</b>	<b>rogar</b>	
<b>decir, to tell</b>		<b>pedir</b>	

(when these words express a command)

2. Verbs expressing emotions and mental states require the subjunctive in the dependent clause.

Sentimos que esté malo su hermano.	<i>We are sorry that your brother is sick.</i>
Espero que el médico llegue a tiempo.	<i>I hope the doctor will arrive in time.</i>
Temo que no lo reciba.	<i>I am afraid he will not receive it.</i>

a. Some common verbs of this kind are

esperar, <i>to hope</i>	sentir, <i>to regret, feel sorry</i>
temer, <i>to fear</i>	alegrarse de, <i>to be glad</i>
tener miedo de, <i>to be afraid of</i>	dudar, <i>to doubt</i>

3. Whenever the verb in a dependent clause denotes indefinite future time, it requires the subjunctive mood. Such dependent clauses are introduced by conjunctions, as

antes (de) que, <i>before</i>	aunque, <i>although</i>	hasta que, <i>until</i>
cuando, <i>when</i>	en cuanto, <i>as soon as</i>	mientras, <i>while</i>
Esperará hasta que yo venga.	<i>He will wait till I come.</i>	
Mientras seas joven, trabaja.	<i>While you are young, work.</i>	

a. It should be observed that when the time is definite after these conjunctions, the indicative is employed.

Mientras era joven, trabajaba yo mucho.	<i>While I was young, I used to work hard.</i>
---	--

4. Whenever a dependent clause denotes the purpose, the result, or the condition of an action, the verb is put in the subjunctive. Common conjunctions which introduce such clauses are

para que (a que after verbs of motion), <i>in order that.</i>
sin que, <i>without.</i>
de modo que (often simply que), <i>so that.</i>
con tal que, <i>provided that.</i>

Envío a Carlos a España para que aprenda bien el idioma español.	<i>I am sending Charles to Spain in order that he may learn the Spanish language well.</i>
Deseo hablar con usted sin que se entere nadie.	<i>I desire to speak with you without anybody's being informed of it.</i>
Hoy saldrás de la cárcel, con tal que el arriero confirme tu declaración.	<i>You will leave the jail to-day, provided the mule-driver corroborates your declaration.</i>



## EXERCISE 20

*A. Use the present subjunctive of the verb indicated in the following:*

1. **Quiero que Vd.** { come.  
I wish you to { go.  
                          { call me.
2. **¿Qué quiere Vd. que yo** { write?  
What do you wish me to { do?  
                                  { say?  
                                  { buy?
3. **Dígale Vd. que** { bring a glass.  
Tell him to { send the bill.  
                          { come in.
4. **Sentimos que Vd.** { are sick.  
We are sorry that you { are going.  
                                  { do not know.
5. **Compro este libro para que Juan** { may read it.  
I am buying this book in order that John { may study Spanish.
6. **Le veré** { when he arrives.  
I shall see him { as soon as he comes.  
                          { before he leaves.  
                          { while he is here.

*B.* 1. Quiero que aun me oigas un instante. 2. Le escribiré que venga mañana. 3. Mi padre quiere que yo me quede en casa. 4. Diga Vd. al gitano que se vaya. 5. Me alegro de que Vd. me lo haya dicho. 6. Sienten que estemos malos. 7. Cuando el rey de Inglaterra vaya a Cannes, se detendrá en París para visitar al presidente de la república. 8. Nos dice que esperemos una hora. 9. El horno está muy mal; quiero que vengan albañiles para componerlo. 10. ¿Quiere Vd. que le diga una cosa? 11. Tu hermano me ha encargado que diga a tu madre que le suban una taza de café. 12. Dejémosle que repose. 13. Carlos necesitará acostarse, en cuanto llegue. 14. ¿Quién tocará el piano para que bailen?

15. Yo le suplico a Vd. que pague diez pesos a cuenta. 16. Ven a buscarme cuando sean las diez. 17. Aceptaré el trato con tal que no sea preciso vender mi alma. 18. Le ruego se sirva Vd. enviarme otro libro. 19. Le aconsejo a Vd. que estudie el español. 20. Prohibo que Vds. salgan antes de las cuatro. 21. Le digo a Vd. esto para que sepa la verdad. 22. La cena va a estar en seguida; para que esperes menos voy yo misma a poner la mesa.

*C. (The answers to these questions should contain a verb in the subjunctive mood.)* 1. ¿Qué quiere su hermano de Vd.? 2. ¿Qué manda Vd.? 3. ¿De qué se alegra Vd.? 4. ¿Qué ha dicho el capitán al camarero? 5. ¿Qué suplica el señor? 6. ¿Hasta cuándo van a quedar sus padres en Cuba? 7. ¿Por qué compra Vd. esos libros? 8. ¿Cuánto tiempo aguardará su hermano? 9. ¿De qué tienen Vds. miedo? 10. ¿Qué prohíben?

*D.* 1. He wishes to write the letters himself: he does not wish me to write them. 2. Tell the boy to come up stairs. 3. We will go when you wish. 4. I am glad that<sup>1</sup> he is going to Mexico. 5. He has asked me to write you. 6. We hope you will receive them in good condition. 7. Let Don Luis go away. 8. I do not wish my things to resemble yours. 9. I am sorry I shall be absent, and I am sorry that you will not be there either. 10. We wish you to tell your friends to come. 11. They are sorry that you have no money. 12. When do you want me to return these books? 13. Where does the gentleman wish me to take him? 14. I am afraid that<sup>1</sup> the train will leave without us. 15. Wait here till I return. 16. I wish to speak to them as soon as they arrive. 17. Write them to pay something on account. 18. Tell him to take off his hat. 19. I am glad that<sup>1</sup> you have called me. 20. I beg you to be brief. 21. I shall not permit you to be absent so long.<sup>2</sup> 22. We fear he will tell it to her. 23. Have the kindness to inform us as soon as you know. 24. I hope this will not prevent your seeing me.

<sup>1</sup> Use *de* before *que*. See section 231, *a*.

<sup>2</sup> *tanto tiempo*.

## LESSON XXI

110. The **Imperfect Subjunctive** has two sets of endings. The stem may be found from the third person singular of the preterit indicative: **compró**, stem **compr-**; **vendió**, stem **vend-**; **tuvo**, stem **tuv-**.

## FIRST FORM

-ar VERBS	-er AND -ir VERBS
SING. 1. <b>comprase</b>	SING. 1. <b>vendiese</b>
2. <b>comprases</b>	2. <b>vendieses</b>
3. <b>comprase</b>	3. <b>vendiese</b>
PLUR. 1. <b>comprásemos</b>	PLUR. 1. <b>vendiésemos</b>
2. <b>compraseis</b>	2. <b>vendieseis</b>
3. <b>comprasen</b>	3. <b>vendiesen</b>

## SECOND FORM

-ar VERBS	-er AND -ir VERBS
SING. 1. <b>comprara</b>	SING. 1. <b>vendiera</b>
2. <b>compraras</b>	2. <b>vendieras</b>
3. <b>comprara</b>	3. <b>vendiera</b>
PLUR. 1. <b>compráramos</b>	PLUR. 1. <b>vendiéramos</b>
2. <b>comprarais</b>	2. <b>vendierais</b>
3. <b>compraran</b>	3. <b>vendieran</b>

111. **Sequence of Tenses.** Whenever a dependent clause occurs after a principal verb in a past tense the dependent verb must be put in the imperfect subjunctive. The present perfect and the conditional may, however, if the meaning allows it, be followed by a present tense. The following table gives the usual sequence:

MAIN CLAUSE	DEPENDENT CLAUSE
Present Indicative	Present Subjunctive
Future Indicative	
Conditional	
Perfect Indicative	Imperfect Subjunctive
Imperfect Indicative	
Preterit Indicative	

<b>Mando que Juan lo haga.</b>	<i>I order John to do it.</i>
<b>Mandaré que Juan lo haga.</b>	<i>I shall order John to do it.</i>
<b>Mandaría que Juan lo haga, pero no sabe hacerlo.</b>	<i>I should order John to do it, but he does not know how.</i>
<b>Mandaría que Juan lo hiciera si fuera posible.</b>	<i>I should order John to do it if it were possible.</i>
<b>He mandado que Juan lo haga mañana.</b>	<i>I have ordered John to do it tomorrow.</i>
<b>He mandado que Juan lo hiciese (or hiciera) ayer.</b>	<i>I ordered John to do it yesterday.</i>
<b>Mandaba que Juan lo hiciese (or hiciera).</b>	<i>I was ordering John to do it.</i>
<b>Mandé que Juan lo hiciese (or hiciera).</b>	<i>I ordered John to do it.</i>

112. **Conditional Clauses**, contrary to fact, have the verb in the imperfect subjunctive; the conditional is used in the conclusion.

<b>Si tuviese (or tuviera) papel, escribiría la carta.</b>	<i>If I had paper, I should write the letter.</i>
<b>Si fuera (or fuese) yo en su lugar, no iría.</b>	<i>If I were in his place I should not go.</i>
<b>Amaría mucho a su hijo si le tuviese.</b>	<i>He would love his son very much if he had one.</i>

a. The imperfect subjunctive of the -ra form is frequently used instead of the conditional, but usually implies something unattainable or unreal.

<b>De no obligarlo la necesidad, se hubiera ido sin comprar.</b>	<i>If he had not been compelled by necessity, he would have gone away without buying.</i>
<b>Diera yo por callarlo los días que me quedan de vida.</b>	<i>To avoid speaking of it I would give the days that are left to me to live.</i>
<b>Hubiera querido ser un salvaje.</b>	<i>He would have liked to be a savage.</i>

b. **Quisiera** used independently means *would like* with present signification.

<b>Quisiera una habitación amueblada.</b>	<i>I should like a furnished room.</i>
<b>Quisiera que me preste Vd. un peso.</b>	<i>I wish you would lend me a dollar.</i>

c. Ordinary conditions after *si* have the present or imperfect indicative. *Si* followed by the conditional has the meaning of *whether*.

**Le pregunté si partiría mañana.** *I asked him whether he would leave to-morrow.*

d. The imperfect subjunctive contrary to fact often appears in clauses introduced by *como si*, *cual si*, *lo mismo que si*, etc.

**Me recuerdo como si fuese ayer.** *I remember as if it were yesterday.*

**El cielo se incendió con un relámpago más vivo, cual si la chispa eléctrica hubiese estallado encima de nuestras cabezas.** *The sky was lighted by a brighter flash, as if the electric spark had burst over our heads.*

**Lo mismo que si fuésemos amigos de toda la vida.** *Just as if we had been life-long friends.*

#### EXERCISE 21

A. In the following sentences change the verb of the principal clause to the imperfect or preterit tense, and the verb of the dependent clause to the imperfect subjunctive: 1. Quiere Juan que yo le dé un peso, *John wishes me to give him a dollar.* 2. Siento que Vd. esté malo, *I am sorry you are ill.* 3. Le escribo para que sepa las noticias, *I am writing him so that he may know the news.* 4. Suplico que se sirva Vd. enviar una máquina de escribir, *I beg you please to send a typewriter.* 5. Nos dicen que mandemos muchos periódicos, *They tell us to send a lot of newspapers.* 6. Tengo miedo de que no llegue él a tiempo, *I am afraid he will not arrive on time.*

B. 1. Le rogué que estuviese dispuesto a las cinco. 2. Su tía regaló a Juanito algunos dulces, diciéndole que los llevase a casa para comérselos en varias veces. 3. Le escribí que no vendiese la casa antes de que yo la viera. 4. Hablaba a gritos como si estuviera siempre en ferrocarril. 5. Se alejaron sin que yo pudiese oír más. 6. Grité para que me oyeran. 7. El padre escribió a su hija, pidiéndola que viniera en seguida. 8. La cantante esperaba a que se callara el público para continuar ella. 9. No creí que viniera Vd. tan pronto. 10. Una noche salieron del lugar sin que persona los

viese. 11. Si tuviera el dinero, compraría la casa. 12. Consulté con ella mi deseo de que me ayudase a encontrar colocación. 13. Su padre hubiera dado su vida por él. 14. Me dijo que tendría dinero cuando cobrase la herencia. 15. ¡ Cuántas personas te envidiarían la fortuna si la supieran! 16. Le mandó que le aguardase tres días, y que si al cabo de ellos no hubiese vuelto, tuviese por cierto que Dios había sido servido de que en aquella peligrosa aventura se acabase su vida. 17. Un lugareño fué un día a casa de su vecino a rogarle que le prestase su asno. El vecino, quien no estaba dispuesto a prestárselo, contestó que sentía mucho que éste no se lo hubiera pedido antes, pues lo había prestado a otro. Mientras se estaba excusando de este modo, el asno comenzó a rebuznar. — ¡ Oye! dijo el aldeano. Ése es el asno que Vd. afirma haber prestado. Hay que confesar que Vd. es muy servicial. — Me extraña mucho, repuso el vecino, que Vd. crea más a mi asno que a mí.

C. 1. ¿ Con qué motivo fué un lugareño a casa de su vecino? 2. ¿ Qué rogó el lugareño a su vecino? 3. ¿ Quería el vecino prestarle la bestia? 4. ¿ Cómo respondió? 5. ¿ Qué sentía el vecino? 6. ¿ Cómo desmintió el asno a su dueño? 7. ¿ Qué dijo entonces el que quería el asno? 8. ¿ Por qué se extrañaba el vecino? 9. ¿ Cree Vd. que sea posible tal historia? 10. ¿ Qué haría Vd. en semejante caso?

D. 1. My father wished me to stay at home. 2. He told the waiter to bring up the coffee. 3. He advised me to study book-keeping. 4. The ladies permitted the gentleman to accompany them. 5. If I were alone, it would not matter. 6. I wrote you last month without as yet<sup>1</sup> having received an<sup>2</sup> answer. 7. We were glad that you came. 8. They used to go away before I arrived, and did not come back till I had returned to school. 9. Don Gumersindo was very kind and obliging provided that it did not cost him a cent. 10. She set the table herself in order that Charles might eat at once.

<sup>1</sup> hasta ahora.

<sup>2</sup> omit.

11. He spoke to me politely, asking me to sit down. 12. He acted as if he understood. 13. The countess sent me a message that I should go and see her. 14. My brother said that as soon as he had money he would send me some.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> lo.

## LESSON XXII

### 113. Letter-Writing.

#### 1. The date, la fecha.

Nueva York, 10 de abril de 1911

Madrid, 15 de junio de 1912

*dated, fechada*

*the 10th inst., el 10 del* { actual  
corriente (corr.<sup>to</sup>)

*the 12th ult., el 12 del p. p.<sup>do</sup>* (próximo pasado)

*the 5th of next month, el 5* { del p.<sup>o</sup> v.<sup>o</sup> (próximo venidero)  
del que viene  
del que entra

#### 2. The address, la dirección.

Al

Sr. D.<sup>1</sup> Guillermo Prieto,

Princesa, 77,

Madrid

<sup>1</sup> Sr. D. stands for Señor Don. The title *señor* is used with a man's family name (*apellido*); *don* with his baptismal name. *Señor* is sometimes omitted, Don Arturo González; but if the Christian name is omitted, *señor* alone should be used, Señor González. The feminine forms are *señora* (Sra.), *señorita* (Srta.), *doña* (D.<sup>a</sup>). A married lady retains her maiden name but adds her husband's surname. If *Señorita Teresa Sánchez* marries Don Arturo González, she becomes *Señora Teresa Sánchez de González*. Children may retain their mother's family name if they desire by adding it to their father's; as, Felipe González y Sánchez. The *y* may be omitted; as Manuel García Rodríguez. Widows insert *viuda*. *Señora Lucía Robledo, vda. de Fernández*. It is sometimes puzzling for a foreigner to know a Spaniard's family name, as it often happens that he may have two baptismal names and omit the maternal surname. Thus, in José Toribio Medina, the *apellido* is Medina.

<i>to address, dirigir</i>	<i>P. Q. box 32, apartado núm. 32</i>
<i>from M. González, envío de M. González</i>	<i>the envelope, el sobre</i>
<i>care of, en casa de</i>	<i>general delivery, en lista</i>
<i>registered, certificado</i>	<i>printed matter, impresos</i>
	<i>please forward, a reexpedir</i>

3. Complimentary opening.

*Dear Friend* { Querido amigo :<sup>1</sup>  
 Muy señor mío y amigo :  
*My esteemed friend, Estimado amigo mío :*  
*Dear Doctor, Estimado doctor :*

To ladies,

*Dear Madam* { Muy estimada señora :  
 Muy distinguida señorita :  
 Señora :

For business letters,

*Dear Sir* { Muy señor mío :  
 Muy señor nuestro : (from a firm)  
*Gentlemen, Muy señores míos (or nuestros) :*

To express respect to superiors,

*Sir, Muy señor mío y de toda mi consideración :*

4. Complimentary close.

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Hoping to hear from you,</i>   | En espera de sus gratas noticias,                    |
| 2. <i>Awaiting your early reply,</i> | Esperando su pronta contestación,                    |
| 3. <i>With nothing else to-day,</i>  | Sin más por hoy,                                     |
| <i>I remain</i> } Yours very truly   | quedo } de Vd. at. <sup>2o</sup> y S.S. <sup>2</sup> |
| <i>I am</i> }                        | soy }  |

More formal,

- Saludo a Vd. cordialmente y quedo como siempre suyo af.<sup>mo</sup> y at.<sup>2o</sup> amigo.
- Tengo el honor de ofrecerle mis respetos y quedo su más at.<sup>2o</sup> y S.S.Q.B.S.M.<sup>4</sup>

NOTE. Abbreviations are frequently used in Spanish. A period should be placed after the abbreviation; if part is written above the line, the period is written after the letters that remain in the line; as, af.<sup>mo</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> Note that Spanish uses the colon after the salutation.

<sup>2</sup> at.<sup>2o</sup> y S.S. = atento y seguro servidor.

<sup>3</sup> af.<sup>mo</sup> = afectísimo.

<sup>4</sup> Q.B.S.M. = que besa sus manos. (To a lady) Q.B.S.P. = que besa sus pies.



## 5. Opening phrases

- |   |                         |
|---|-------------------------|
| 1. <i>I have the pleasure</i>           | } of informing you that |
| 2. <i>We have the honor</i>             |                         |
| 3. <i>I take the liberty</i>            |                         |
| 4. <i>The purpose of this letter is</i> | } to inform you that    |
| 5. <i>I regret (I am sorry)</i>         |                         |

- |                                  |                |       |            |                |
|----------------------------------|----------------|-------|------------|----------------|
| 1. <i>Tengo el gusto de</i>      | } participarle | } que |            |                |
| 2. <i>Tenemos el honor de</i>    |                |       | } avisarle |                |
| 3. <i>Me permito</i>             |                |       |            | } manifestarle |
| 4. <i>Sirve la presente para</i> |                |       |            |                |
| 5. <i>Siento</i>                 |                |       |            |                |

## 6. Acknowledging receipt.

- |   |               |          |              |
|---|---------------|----------|--------------|
| 1. <i>In answer to</i>                  | } your letter | } of the |              |
| 2. <i>Answering</i>                     |               |          |              |
| 3. <i>To acknowledge the receipt of</i> |               |          | } your favor |
| 4. <i>We have before us</i>             |               |          |              |
| 5. <i>I have just received</i>          |               |          |              |
| 6. <i>I hasten to reply to</i>          |               |          |              |
| 7. <i>I received</i>                    |               |          |              |

- |                                     |      |           |       |         |                               |            |                                    |
|-------------------------------------|------|-----------|-------|---------|-------------------------------|------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>En contestación a</i>         | } su | } { carta | } del |         |                               |            |                                    |
| 2. <i>Contestando a</i>             |      |           |       | } grata |                               |            |                                    |
| 3. <i>Acusar recibo de</i>          |      |           |       |         | } atenta (at. <sup>ta</sup> ) |            |                                    |
| 4. <i>Tenemos a la vista</i>        |      |           |       |         |                               | } estimada |                                    |
| 5. <i>Acabo de recibir</i>          |      |           |       |         |                               |            | } apreciable (ap. <sup>ble</sup> ) |
| 6. <i>Me apresuro a contestar a</i> |      |           |       |         |                               |            |                                    |
| 7. <i>Recibí</i>                    |      |           |       |         |                               |            |                                    |

## 7. To request.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>Please (be kind enough to) (or kindly)</i>                     |  |
| 2. <i>I shall be pleased if you</i>                                  |  |
| 3. <i>We shall be obliged if you</i>                                 |  |
| 4. <i>We beg you to</i>  |  |
| 1. <i>Sírvase Vd. (with infinitive of dependent verb)</i>            |  |
| 2. <i>Estimaré que Vd. (with subjunctive of dependent verb)</i>      |  |
| 3. <i>Agradeceremos que Vd. (with subjunctive of dependent verb)</i> |  |
| 4. <i>Le rogamos</i>   | } que Vd. (with subjunctive of dependent verb) |
| <i>Le suplicamos</i>   |  |
| <i>Le pedimos</i>  |  |

## EXERCISE 22

A. I.

NUEVA YORK, 7 de julio de 1911.

SR. D. VICTORIANO SUÁREZ,  
Preciados, 48, Madrid.

Muy señor mío :

Me satisface acusar a Vd. recibo del catálogo, que se sirvió enviarme. Le agradezco esta atención y le pido me envíe las obras anunciadas en él y que menciono al pie de la presente, en pago de las cuales adjunto Pesetas 55 en giro sobre el Banco Hispano-Americano, que importan, incluso gastos de la remesa. Doy a Vd. gracias por este servicio y me ofrezco su atento servidor q.b.s.m.

ARTURO ACOSTA GÁLVEZ

MADRID, 24 de julio de 1911

SR. D. ARTURO ACOSTA GÁLVEZ,  
Nueva York.

Muy señor mío :

Tengo el gusto de acusar a usted recibo de su estimada del 14 del c.<sup>to</sup> de la cual separé un cheque a mi orden, por valor de Pesetas 55<sup>00</sup>, que le abono en cuenta. En cumplimiento de su atento pedido le remito por correo de hoy los efectos que van detallados al final, por los cuales cargo a usted en cuenta la suma de Pesetas 56<sup>05</sup>, que importan.

De usted, como siempre, atento servidor,

VICTORIANO SUÁREZ

EJEMPLARES	FACTURA	PRECIOS			
3	Rubén Darío = Obras escogidas	3	50	10	50
1	González Blanco = Hist <sup>a</sup> de la Novela	12		12	00
	<i>al frente</i>			22	50

EJEM- PLARES		PRECIOS			
				22	50
	<i>del frente</i>				
I	San Martín = Sepan cuantos	3		3	00
I	V. de Guevara = El Diablo Cojuelo	12		12	00
I	Clarín = La Regenta 2 tomos	3	50	7	00
I	Picón = Dulce y Sabrosa	4		4	00
I	Almanaque	1	50	1	50
	Franqueo			6	05
	Total		Ptas.	56	05

3.

HOTEL PENINSULAR,

SEVILLA, 14 de agosto de 1910

SR. D. ROBERTO SAMPER,  
Calle Arenal, 45, Madrid.

Muy señor mío y amigo :

Se van a vender en almoneda los muebles y efectos del difunto D. Martín de Timoneda el día 3 del p.º v.º. Como yo sé que poseía una biblioteca compuesta de muy buenas obras y de las mejores ediciones, quisiera adquirir la mayor parte de ella y aún toda si fuera posible. Desgraciadamente no puedo concurrir a la venta por tener mala una pierna, que no me deja dar un paso, y por esta causa me tomo la libertad de suplicarle me sustituya en esta operación confiado en su amistad. Vd. conoce este género y ningún otro podría serme tan útil. Conque, tómese Vd. la molestia de pasar por allá, y compre todo lo que se venda a un precio cómodo. Le remito dos mil duros para este objeto, suplicándole al mismo tiempo disimule la franqueza de su af.º y at.º S. S.

ENRIQUE REYES

P.D. Por la primera edición del Quijote puede Vd. pujar hasta quinientos duros.

*B. Translate into Spanish :*

1. My dear friend,

I intend to go to Havana on the steamer which leaves New York on the 11th inst. As I have never been in that city I do not know where to find the hotels. Can you recommend a good hotel or boarding-house at a moderate price? When you reply, please tell me how to reach the house.

Thanking you for this favor I am, as ever,

Your friend,

WILLIAM BROWN

2. Dear Sir :

I have before me your letter of the 29th ult., and hasten to reply. The proprietor of the house where I am living has a vacant room which he will reserve for you. I shall be on the wharf as soon as I learn the arrival of the steamer. Wait for me. I shall have great pleasure in accompanying you to your house.

As ever, yours,

VICTOR GARCÍA

3.

BOSTON, MASS., September 12, 1912

MESSRS. B. MURO & Co.,

Florida, 34, Buenos Aires.

Gentlemen :

We take the liberty of calling your attention to a catalogue of our goods which we are sending under separate cover<sup>1</sup> by this same mail. We believe that these articles are suitable for your market. The prices are moderate and the terms of payment very liberal, six months from the date of shipment. We allow three per cent discount for payment by draft remitted by return steamer. Our factory has instructions to pack in special boxes all merchandise intended for South American trade in order that it may arrive

<sup>1</sup> Under separate cover = *bajo pliego*.

in perfect condition. If you will favor us with a trial order we are confident that you will be satisfied with the quality of the goods and will desire further<sup>1</sup> shipments.

Awaiting your early reply, we are

Yours very truly,

HENRY WHITE & SONS

*C. Letter outlines.* 1. Write the answer of Mr. Roberto Samper to the letter *A*, 3.

2. Write to the Hotel de Roma, Sevilla, Spain, asking to have a room reserved for yourself and party. Explain when you expect to arrive and the number of persons. Request that mail be kept for your arrival.

3. Send a request for a catalogue of the books published by G. Prieto and Co. of Madrid. Inquire how they wish sent the payment for any works which you may order.

4. Write an invitation to some friends of yours to spend a week with you in the country. Give an outline of what you intend to do for amusement.

<sup>1</sup> *nuevos.*

## PART II

# SYSTEMATIC ACCIDENCE AND SYNTAX

### CHAPTER I

#### ORDER OF WORDS

**114. Sentences.** While the arrangement of words is much freer in Spanish, and the meaning is not so dependent on a fixed order as in English, there are a few notions which the learner should keep in mind. The Spanish sentence aims at a certain balance by putting the longer members of the sentence or clause last. Considering the clause as composed of three members, subject, verb, and complements, the longest of the three may be placed at the end.

<b>Juan vende muchos periódicos.</b>	<i>John sells many newspapers.</i>
<b>El pequeño Juan vende muchos periódicos, or Vende el pequeño Juan muchos periódicos.</b>	<i>Little John sells many newspapers.</i>
<b>Vende muchos periódicos el chico de la gorra roja.</b>	<i>The boy with the red cap sells many newspapers.</i>

a. In questions, the object, unless materially longer than the subject, precedes.

<b>¿Vende muchos periódicos el pequeño Juan?</b>	<i>Does little John sell many newspapers?</i>
--	---

**115. Inversion of Verb** occurs,

1. Regularly in questions: **¿Qué vende Juan?** *What does John sell?*

## 2. Frequently for the sake of emphasis :

¡Ha caído una palma !	<i>A palm tree has fallen ! (said in the stress of excitement at the fact occurring during a storm.)</i>
-----------------------	--

## 3. Generally in relative clauses :

Vino la mujer a quien habían despertado las voces.	<i>The woman whom the cries had awakened came.</i>
El cura entonó la Salve, que repitió la tripulación.	<i>The priest intoned the "Salve," which the crew repeated.</i>

116. A Predicate Adjective is best placed immediately after the verb.

¿ Es interesante el libro ?	<i>Is the book interesting ?</i>
¿ Aquí es bueno el chocolate ?	<i>Is the chocolate good here ?</i>

117. Adverbs, especially those of place and time, may be put for emphasis at the beginning of the sentence.

Aquí se habla español.	<i>Spanish is spoken here.</i>
Bien sé yo.	<i>I know very well.</i>
Mañana viene mi padre.	<i>My father comes to-morrow.</i>

a. But the usual place for adverbs is immediately after the verb.

Estudio siempre mi lección.	<i>I always study my lesson.</i>
Despierte Vd. con cuidado a Rosa.	<i>Wake Rosa carefully.</i>

118. The Adverb *no* always precedes the verb, but may be separated from it by a pronoun used as an object.

Yo no lo conozco.	<i>I do not know him.</i>
-------------------	---------------------------

a. Used with adverbs or elliptical expressions, *no* follows the other words.

¡ Hoy no !	<i>Not to-day.</i>
¡ Todavía no !	<i>Not yet.</i>
¡ Eso no !	<i>Not that.</i>

119. A Subject Pronoun may be placed after the verb, but precedes other words.

Soy yo.	<i>It is I.</i>
No quiere ella la manzana.	<i>She does not want the apple.</i>

**120. Compound Forms of Verbs** should not be separated into their component parts by the intrusion of other words.

¿ Ha visto Vd. ?

*Have you seen ?*

He dicho siempre.

*I have always said.*

*a.* Likewise an infinitive closely depending on another verb is commonly not separated from the former except by pronouns.

Ví correr al muchacho.

*I saw the boy run.*

¿ Oye Vd. sonar la campanilla ?

*Do you hear the bell ringing ?*

Lo admiré al verlo patinar.

*I admired him on seeing him skate.*

**121. Participles and Infinitives** having subjects are usually placed before their subjects, contrary to English usage.

Estando la señora en el jardín, le hablé.

*The lady being in the garden, I spoke to her.*

Conseguida la dispensa eclesiástica, se fijó la boda para las ocho de la mañana.

*The dispensation of the church (having been) obtained, the wedding was set for eight in the morning.*

Al cumplir la Princesa los quince años era la admiración de la corte.

*When the Princess was fifteen years old, she was the wonder of the court.*

**122. The Preposition *a*,** used to indicate the direct object, makes possible a very free arrangement of words ; see section 134.

A Clara la llamó a sí Doña Blanca.

*Doña Blanca called Clara to her.*

Poco después visitaron a la enferma los dos médicos mejores de la ciudad.

*Shortly afterward the two best doctors in the town visited the sick woman.*

### EXERCISE 23

1. Has this boy relatives? 2. His wife and his daughter were walking ahead. 3. Spring begins to-morrow. 4. Is winter cold in this country? 5. Is the show to-day? 6. They had not walked two hundred paces when there reached their ears a great noise of water. 7. The Hollanders have not forgotten the history of their war with



Spain. 8. When the lady said this,<sup>1</sup> she turned away. 9. Five dollars are lacking. 10. These are the men whom my father did not know. 11. He was sitting in the shadow which the old tree made on the ground. 12. I have often seen them. 13. Traveling by night, his garments torn, his feet scratched, he finally reached home. 14. I lived on the salary which an insurance company paid me. 15. His work finished, he left the office immediately. 16. He saw his father coming. 17. Not now, my son. 18. A month had passed since that day.

<sup>1</sup> Translate in three ways: 1, *al* with infinitive; 2, the present participle; 3, the past participle.

## CHAPTER II

### ARTICLES

**123. The Definite Article** has the following forms:

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
SING.	el	la (el)	lo
PLUR.	los	las	wanting

*a.* The feminine form **el** is derived from the old feminine **ela**. It is used only before nouns beginning with an accented *a* sound, excepting names of letters:

el ave, <i>the bird</i>	el agua fría, <i>the cold water</i>
el hacha, <i>the ax</i>	el Asia, <i>Asia</i>

Compare

la alta casa, <i>the high house</i>	la a, <i>the a</i>
la América, <i>America</i>	la hacienda, <i>the estate</i>

*b.* The masculine singular **el** (or feminine **el**) combines with **de** or **a** to form **del** and **al** respectively. But the combination does not occur when the article forms part of a title:

El autor de <i>El Trovador</i> .	<i>The author of "El Trovador."</i>
Mandó su poema a <i>El Liberal</i> .	<i>He sent his poem to "The Liberal."</i>

**124. Uses of Definite Article.** Primarily, the Spanish definite article, in common with the English, denotes a particular individual or a specific object; but it also has the following uses not found in English.

**I.** Before nouns denoting general or abstract ideas:

El pan es el sustento diario de los hombres.	<i>Bread is the daily food of men.</i>
La vida es breve.	<i>Life is short.</i>
Los hombres aman la libertad.	<i>Men love liberty.</i>

a. The absence of the article conveys a partitive idea, often expressed in English by *some* or *any*, or in the negative by *no*:

¿ Tiene Ud. pan? *Have you any bread?*  
 No tenemos libertad. *We have no liberty.*

2. With geographical names,

a. Especially if taken in a general sense and not after a preposition:

Ha corrido la Francia. *He has traveled over France.*  
 But, Está en Francia. *He is in France.*

b. Always with some names:

la América del Norte, <i>North America</i>	la Coruña, <i>Corunna</i>
los Estados Unidos, <i>the United States</i>	el Panamá, <i>Panama</i>
el Canadá, <i>Canada</i>	el Japón, <i>Japan</i>
el Perú, <i>Peru</i>	la Habana, <i>Havana</i>
	el Mediterráneo, <i>the Mediterranean</i>

c. Never with others:

Venezuela                  Chile                  Méjico, *Mexico*

3. With proper nouns modified by an adjective, and frequently with Christian names of women:

el pobre Pablo, *poor Paul*                  la Paquita, *Fannie*

a. Hence before titles and epithets when not addressing the person:

El general Guzmán.	<i>General Guzmán.</i>
La señora López.	<i>Mrs. López.</i>
Juana la loca.	<i>Jane the Crazy.</i>
But, Buenos días, señor Pérez.	<i>Good morning, Mr. Pérez.</i>

b. Exceptions to *a* are the titles *don*, *doña*, *sor*, *fray*.

4. With adjectives used as the name of a language, except after *hablar* and *en*:

Aprendo el español.	<i>I am learning Spanish.</i>
¿ Habla Ud. español?	<i>Do you speak Spanish?</i>
Escribo en francés.	<i>I write in French.</i>

a. The adjective **castellano**, *Castilian*, always takes the article.

**Hablamos el castellano.**

*We speak Castilian.*

5. With adjectives of nationality, profession, sex, etc., in apposition with a pronoun expressed or understood :

**Nosotros los ingleses.**

*We English.*

**Ustedes las mujeres.**

*You women.*

**Los profesores comprendemos.**

*We teachers understand.*

6. In certain expressions of time, —

a. Those modified by an adjective or a phrase :

**el año pasado,** *last year*

**el martes que viene,** *next Tuesday*

b. Before names of the days of the week except in dates (English usually has the preposition *on* in similar cases), and before names of the seasons :

**La primavera.**

*Spring.*

**Viene los lunes.**

*He comes on Mondays.*

**Miércoles, el dos del corriente.**

*Wednesday, the second instant.*

7. To express rate where English has the indefinite article, though Spanish sometimes omits the article :

**Un peso la vara, or un peso vara.**

*A dollar a yard.*

**Treinta centavos la docena.**

*Thirty cents a dozen.*

8. In speaking of the person or clothing, in place of the possessive adjective :

**Córteme Vd. el pelo.**

*Cut my hair.*

**Tiene puestos los zapatos.**

*He has his shoes on.*

9. To modify an infinitive or a clause :

**El mentir es un vicio.**

*Lying is a vice.*

**Me vuelve loco el que no me lleve  
nunca la contraria.**

*It makes me crazy, the (fact) that  
you never contradict me.*

10. In many adverbial phrases not possible to classify ; as,

**en la escuela,** *at school*

**en la iglesia,** *at church*

**en el colegio,** *in high school*

**a la ciudad,** *to town*

**125. The Neuter Article** is used with adjectives, making an expression equivalent to an abstract noun. It occurs frequently with past participles and in many adverbial expressions.

No son lo mismo.

*They are not the same.*

Ama lo bueno.

*He loves whatever is good.*

Están por lo positivo.

*They are for the practical.*

Quedamos en lo dicho.

*We stuck by what had been said.*

Grité y me contestaron a lo lejos.

*I shouted and they answered me far off.*

*a.* A peculiar idiomatic use of the neuter article occurs when the modified adjective refers to a word in a following clause, sometimes equivalent to an indirect English exclamatory phrase introduced by *how*. The Spanish adjective agrees with the noun.

¿Sabe Vd. lo buena que es mi hermana?

*Do you know how good my sister is?*

A pesar de lo muy agradecidos que estamos.

*In spite of how very grateful we are.*

*b.* **Lo** in the foregoing idiom may be modified by **todo**: *Quería decirle todo lo hermosa que me parecía, I wanted to tell her how very handsome she seemed to me.*

**126. Omission of Definite Article** occurs,

1. Before a noun in apposition with another: **el señor F., director del colegio, Mr. F., the principal of the school.**

2. Before numbers that are part of the title of sovereigns:

Alfonso Trece es el nieto de Isabel Segunda.

*Alfonso the Thirteenth is the grandson of Isabella the Second.*

3. Sometimes the omission or use of the definite article gives a different meaning to the phrase:

hacer la cama, *to make the bed*

dar vuelta a, *to turn*

hacer cama, *to be sick abed*

dar una vuelta, *to take a walk*

dar la vuelta, *to go around*

4. In many adverbial expressions:

en Filipinas, *in the Philippines*  
por primera vez, *for the first time*

en tercera persona, *in the third person*

**127. The Indefinite Article**, identical with the numeral *one*, has the following forms :

	MASCULINE	FEMININE
SING.	<b>uno, un</b>	<b>una</b>

*a.* The masculine singular is shortened to **un** before a noun or an attributive adjective. Used alone or as a pronoun, the full form appears.

¿ Tiene Ud. un buen perro ?	<i>Have you a good dog ?</i>
Sí, tengo uno.	<i>Yes, I have one.</i>
Tengo uno muy bueno.	<i>I have a very good one.</i>

*b.* The feminine, in imitation of the feminine definite article **el**, usually is **un** before nouns beginning with an accented *a* sound.

**un ave hermosa**, *a beautiful bird*      **un águila pequeña**, *a small eagle*

**128. Use and Omission of Indefinite Article.** The indefinite article is used about as in English, but is omitted in the following cases :

1. Before an unmodified noun in the predicate denoting business, profession, party, religion, etc. :

<b>Es sastre.</b>	<i>He is a tailor.</i>
<b>Se ha hecho abogado.</b>	<i>He has become a lawyer.</i>
<b>Es liberal.</b>	<i>He is a liberal.</i>
<b>Soy americano.</b>	<i>I am an American.</i>

*a.* The indefinite article may be used to attribute a given quality to one's character. **Es cobarde**, *He is a coward* (under these circumstances). **Es un cobarde**, *He is a regular coward* (by nature).

2. Before nouns in apposition :

<b>Tampico, puerto del golfo de Méjico.</b>	<i>Tampico, a harbor on the Gulf of Mexico.</i>
---	---

3. Before nouns preceded by **de** in adverbial expressions corresponding to English *as a* :

<b>Va de consul a Méjico.</b>	<i>He goes to Mexico as a consul.</i>
<b>Yo soy un hombre atroz, a quien nadie ha podido aguantar ni de muchacho, ni de joven, ni de viejo.</b>	<i>I am a disagreeable man, whom nobody has been able to endure as a boy, as a young man, nor as an old man.</i>

a. Similarly *de* denotes apposition between an adjective and a noun or between two nouns.

¡El pobre de Pepe!	<i>Poor Joe!</i>
El marica de Don Cándido.	<i>Don Cándido the old woman.</i>
¡Qué lástima de muchacha!	<i>What a pity about the girl!</i>

4. In many verbal idioms which must be learned by observation :

Tiene buen corazón.	<i>He has a kind heart.</i>
Poner precio.	<i>To set a price.</i>

5. Before certain adjectives : *mil*, *one thousand*, *ciento*, *one hundred*, and other numbers and fractions denoting quantity, as *media docena*, *half a dozen*.

<i>tal</i> , <i>such a</i>	¿ qué tal muchacho ? <i>what sort of</i>
<i>otro</i> , <i>other, another</i>	<i>boy?</i>
<i>cierto</i> , <i>a certain</i>	

6. In exclamations after ¡qué!

¡Qué ruido!	<i>What a noise!</i>
¡Qué chico atroz!	<i>What an awful boy!</i>

7. In negative expressions or those implying a negative :

No dice palabra.	<i>He does not say a word.</i>
Me dejó sin respuesta.	<i>He left me without a reply.</i>
¿ Hay hombre tan atrevido ?	<i>Is there a man so bold ?</i>

#### EXERCISE 24

1. The largest continent is Asia. 2. Havana, the capital of Cuba, is a beautiful city. 3. Men seek gold in all parts of the world. 4. There is gold in South America and in Mexico. 5. They do not speak pure Castilian in Chile and Peru. 6. Mr. Ibarra, a Cuban, teaches Spanish and French. 7. He is a Mexican and a soldier. 8. We Americans love independence. 9. My hands and face are cold. 10. To read and write is indispensable. 11. Tailors make suits for men. 12. Captain López arrived last Wednesday from Panama. 13. Whatever is good is expensive, but people want the good cheap. 14. We know the worst: what we said has

happened. 15. Another day comes to-morrow. I have a thousand things to do.<sup>1</sup> 16. How much did you pay for such a thing? A dollar a pound. 17. Spanish is easier than French. 18. Good morning, Miss Mary. Who came yesterday? General Pérez and Mrs. Navarro. 19. Eating<sup>2</sup> too much is bad for one's health. 20. He receives one thousand dollars a year, not a hundred dollars a month. 21. Philip the Second was the son of Charles the First, king of Spain, who was Charles the Fifth, the German emperor. 22. Do you know how pretty she is? 23. We have geography on Fridays. 24. You Spaniards read English easily. 25. This steamer leaves Corunna for South America next week. 26. Little Paco says that the water is cold. 27. Is iron more useful than silver? 28. The retinue consisted of Lieutenant Carvalho, the leader of the Brazilian colony, Messrs. Rodríguez and Guzmán, and the writer. 29. Now we girls are for the practical. 30. What an idea! 31. He is John Gómez, a son of General Gómez. 32. There is not a carriage in the street. 33. He dressed himself as a woman. 34. He is going to Spain without knowing a word of Castilian. 35. What a man! As a lawyer he had no success. Now he is a politician. 36. He was a rich man and is now poor; he was a father and is alone on the earth; he was a husband and is a widower. 37. I subscribed to *The Liberal*. 38. The first thing that he did was to look at the books. 39. You do not know how cold it is.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> que hacer.

<sup>2</sup> Use infinitive.

<sup>3</sup> See section 58, a.



## CHAPTER III

### NOUNS

**129. Gender.** Every Spanish noun is either masculine or feminine.

1. Masculine are nouns —

a. Denoting male beings :

el rey, *the king*

el cura, *the priest*

el artista, *the artist*

el amigo, *the friend*

b. Ending in o :

el viento, *the wind*

el ojo, *the eye*

Except **la mano**, *the hand*, and a few others rarely used.

c. Names of most oceans, rivers, mountains ; and countries, not ending in unaccented a :

el Atlántico, *the Atlantic*

el Amazonas, *the Amazon*

el Sena, *the Seine*

el Ecuador, *Ecuador*

But **la España**, *Spain*, **la Italia**, *Italy*

los Andes, *the Andes*

el Plata, *the river La Plata, or  
River Plate*

el Panamá, *Panama*

d. Indeclinable words, infinitives, etc., used as nouns :

el hablar, *speaking*

el sí, *the yes*

2. Feminine are nouns —

a. Denoting female beings :

la reina, *the queen*

la joven, *the young lady*

la actriz, *the actress*

la tigre, *the tigress*

b. Those ending in a :

la pluma, *the pen*

la naranja, *the orange*

But exceptions are very numerous. Most important are **el día**, *the day*; **el mapa**, *the map*; nouns of Greek origin usually ending in **ma**, as **el idioma**, *the language*; **el sistema**, *the system*; **el telegrama**, *the telegram*.

Many nouns ending in **a** may be recognized as masculine by their signification :

el centinela, *the sentinel*                      el papa, *the pope*

c. Names of the letters of the alphabet :

la b, *the b*    una ch, *a ch*

d. Nouns with the terminations (dad, tad, tud), ie, ión, umbre, denoting abstract or general ideas :

la libertad, <i>liberty</i>	la necesidad, <i>necessity</i>
la virtud, <i>virtue</i>	la serie, <i>the series</i>
la nación, <i>the nation</i>	la costumbre, <i>the habit</i>

**130. Number.** The plural of Spanish nouns is formed by adding **s** to words ending in an unaccented vowel, **es** to words ending in a consonant or an accented vowel, including the monosyllabic names of the letters of the alphabet.

el hombre, <i>the man</i>	los hombres, <i>the men</i>
la mujer, <i>the woman</i>	las mujeres, <i>the women</i>
el rubí, <i>the ruby</i>	los rubíes, <i>the rubies</i>
la o, <i>the o</i>	las oes, <i>the o's</i>

a. Note that the proper spelling to retain the sound of the singular must be obtained by changing final **z** to **c**, and final **c** to **qu**, before **es**.

la luz, <i>the light</i>	las luces, <i>the lights</i>
el frac, <i>the dress-coat</i>	los fraques, <i>the dress-coats</i>
Also, el ónix, <i>the onyx</i>	los ónices, <i>the onyxes</i>

b. The following words shift their accent in the plural :

el carácter, <i>the character</i>	los caracteres, <i>the characters</i>
el régimen, <i>the régime</i>	los regímenes, <i>the régimes</i>

1. Exceptions to the above rules are

a. Words ending in **y** :

el rey, <i>the king</i>	los reyes, <i>the kings</i>
el buey, <i>the ox</i>	los bueyes, <i>the oxen</i>

b. Words ending in **é** :

el café, <i>the coffee</i>	los cafés, <i>the coffees</i>
el pie, <i>the foot</i>	los pies, <i>the feet</i>

c. Exceptions to other accented vowel terminations are

el papá, <i>papa</i>	los papás, <i>papas</i>
el sofá, <i>the sofa</i>	los sofás, <i>the sofas</i>
la mamá, <i>mamma</i>	las mamás, <i>mammas</i>

2. The following make no change in the plural.

a. Words ending in unaccented *es* or *is* :

el lunes, <i>Monday</i>	los lunes, <i>Mondays</i>
la crisis, <i>the crisis</i>	las crisis, <i>the crises</i>

b. Family names, especially those terminating in *es* or *ez*, and foreign names not having terminations similar to Spanish :

Pérez, los Pérez  
Franklin, los Franklin

c. Adopted Latin words :

el déficit, <i>the deficit</i>	los déficits, <i>the deficits</i>
el ultimatum, <i>the ultimatum</i>	los ultimatum, <i>the ultimatum</i> s

3. Irregular :

el lord, <i>the lord</i>	los lores, <i>the lords</i>
--------------------------	-----------------------------

**131. Compound Nouns.** In English a noun may perform the function of an adjective and modify another noun. The combination is written sometimes as one word, as *hedgehog*; sometimes with a hyphen, as *bear's-foot*; often as two words, as *bond paper*. While a few such combinations exist in Spanish, as *ferrocarril*, *railroad*, the great majority of English compound nouns must be turned into Spanish by the use of prepositions in various ways, as,

1. The modifying noun follows the other and is connected therewith by *de*: thus,

el reloj de oro, *the gold watch*  
la pluma de acero, *the steel pen*

2. If the modifying noun denotes use or purpose, *para* is preferred as the connecting preposition; as,

la taza para café, *the coffee cup*  
la máquina para escribir, *the typewriter*

See further under compound adjectives, section 138.

**132. Augmentatives, Diminutives, and other suffixes.** Spanish compensates in part for its lack of compound nouns by possessing a large number of suffixes, some of which are classed as augmentatives and diminutives. Though these indicate size, they also denote other ideas such as contempt, affection, irony, disagreeableness, mockery, which in English are often expressed by terms from different stems; as, *casa, house*; *casucha, shanty*. Sometimes a word originally a diminutive acquires a specialized meaning; as, *cuchara, spoon*; *cucharita, teaspoon*. Many of the suffixes may also be applied to adjectives.

(A complete discussion of the suffixes will not be given, because the learner should not attempt to apply them himself and should rely on the dictionary for any forms other than the simplest.)

1. Augmentatives are

a. *-ón, -ona* :

*silla* — *sillón, big chair, easy chair*

*nariz* — *narigón, big nose*

*Gaspar* — *Gasparón, big Gaspar*

*mujer* — *mujerona, big strapping woman*

b. *-azo, -aza* : *pícaro* — *picarazo, great rogue*.

c. *-ote, -ota* ; also depreciative :

*palabra* — *palabrota, offensive and vulgar word*

*feo* — *feote, extremely ugly*

d. *-ajo(a), -acho(a), -uco(a), -ucho(a)* ; express poor quality or contempt :

*fraile* — *frailucho, contemptible friar*

*espanto* — *espantajo, scarecrow*

*vino* — *vinacho, poor wine, dregs*

*cuarto* — *cuartucho, wretched room*

*vivo* — *vivaracho, frolicsome*

2. Diminutives are

a. *-ito(a), -cito(a), -cito(a)*, dialectical *-ico(a)* etc.; *-illo(a), -cillo(a), -cillo(a)* ; express also affection, niceness, pleasing qualities, pity.

*flor* — *fiorecita, little flower*

*cigarro* — *cigarrillo, cigarette*

*madre* — *madrecita, little mother, dear mother*

*señora* — *señorita, miss*

*mujer* — *mujercita, frail little woman*

*papá* — *papaíto, papa dear*

b. **-uelo(a), -zuelo(a), -ezuelo(a)**; express also mockery and ridicule.

Venezia, *Venice* — Venezuela      rey — *reyezuelo, petty king*  
 pequeño — *pequeñuelo, dear little*      mujer — *mujerzuela, sorry little*  
*fellow*      *woman*

c. **-ete(a), -cete(a), -ecete(a)**; frequently also depreciative.

caballero — *caballerete, dude, dandy*  
 historia — *historieta, short story*

d. **-ejo(a)**; implies contempt: caballo — *caballejo, nag*.

e. The augmentatives **-ón** and **-ote** sometimes form diminutives:

rata, *rat* — *ratón, mouse*      isla, *island* — *islete, islet*

3. Various combinations of these suffixes are common:

río — *riacho* — *riachuelo*  
 hombre — *hombrón* — *hombronazo*  
 chico — *chiquito* — *chiquitito, chiquitillo*

4. A few Spanish suffixes, not augmentatives nor diminutives, should be known:

a. **-ada** (capacity), Eng. *-ful*: *cuchara, spoon* — *cucharada, spoonful*.

b. **-ada, -azo**, a blow with or a wound from.

puñal, *dagger* — *puñalada, dagger thrust, stab wound*  
 bala, *bullet* — *balazo, bullet wound, shot*

c. **-al, -ar, -eda**, a collection, grove, or orchard.

arena, *sand* — *arenal, sandy spot*  
 café, *coffee* — *cafetal, coffee plantation*  
 manzano, *apple tree* — *manzanar, apple orchard*  
 álamo, *poplar* — *alameda, avenue of poplars*

d. **-dor, -dora**, the person or thing that performs the act indicated by the verbal stem; often used adjectively.

hablar, *to talk* — *hablador, talkative*  
 matar, *to kill* — *matador, killer*  
 trillar, *to thresh* — *(máquina) trilladora, threshing-machine*

e. -ero(a), the person who makes, manages, or sells things.

zapato, *shoe* — zapatero, *shoemaker or shoe-dealer*

molino, *mill* — molinero, *miller* — molinera, *miller's wife*

f. -ía added to -ero : -ería, place of business.

zapatería, *shoe shop or collection of shoes*

librero, *book-dealer* — librería, *book store*

5. The past participle feminine makes nouns denoting the completed action of the verbs.

llegar, *to arrive* — llegada, *arrival*

salir, *to depart* — salida, *departure*

ir, *to go*

volver, *to return* } un billete de ida y vuelta, *a return ticket*

133. **Idiomatic Plural.** The masculine plural of nouns and pronouns includes the corresponding feminine :

los padres, *the parents*

los hermanos, *brothers and sisters*

los hijos, *the children*

los parientes, *the relatives*

los señores González, *Mr. and Mrs. González*

los reyes católicos, *the Catholic Monarchs (i.e. Ferdinand and Isabella)*

a. The titles of offices, being susceptible of misunderstanding, are an exception :

el alcalde y la alcaldesa, *the mayor and the mayoress*

el presidente y su señora, *the president and his wife*

134. **Objective Case.** The preposition *a* serves to indicate the objective (or accusative) case of nouns when the direct object is —

1. A specific person, intelligent animal, or personified thing :

Ve a Vd. a Cecilia.

*Look at Cecilia.*

No encontré a mi amigo.

*I did not find my friend.*

Don Quijote cabalgaba a Rocinante.

*Don Quixote rode Rocinante.*

Las riquezas no siempre tienen por compañera a la alegría.

*Riches do not always have joy for a companion.*

2. A geographical name without definite article :

He visto a Sevilla.

*I have seen Seville.*

But, Pizarro conquistó el Perú.

*Pizarro conquered Peru.*

3. Out of its normal position, or liable not to be recognized :

Al yate alcanzó el vapor.	<i>The steamer overtook the yacht.</i>
Ninguna de las cosas que a la flor hacen bonita.	<i>None of the things which make the flower pretty.</i>
El nombre rige al verbo.	<i>The noun governs the verb.</i>

4. A pronoun, except **que** and the unaccented object pronouns :

El señor a quien llamé.	<i>The gentleman whom I called.</i>
El hombre que ví.	<i>The man whom I saw.</i>
No conozco a nadie.	<i>I know nobody.</i>

5. Though the preposition **a** be required by these rules, it is often not used before a word beginning with an *a* sound, or when there is also an indirect object in the sentence, or a noun governed by the preposition **a** :

Mira aquel hombre.	<i>Look at that man.</i>
Dió el esclavo a su hijo.	<i>He gave the slave to his son.</i>
Mandó el muchacho a casa.	<i>He sent the boy home.</i>

NOTE. In general, **a** should be retained before nouns that require it, which is often possible by substituting the passive construction for the active ; as, **Se le dió el esclavo a su hijo**, *The slave was given to his son.*

6. Since a proper noun in the objective case always requires the **a**, two proper nouns governed by **a** should be avoided by using another expression : thus, instead of **Preferió a Pedro a Juan**, say **Preferió el joven Pedro a Juan**.

7. With certain verbs, **a** appears before their personal objects when the verb has a special meaning :

<b>querer</b> , <i>to wish</i> ; <b>querer a</b> , <i>to love</i>	
<b>tener</b> , <i>to have</i> , usually without <b>a</b> before a personal object, requires it in the idiom <b>tener a uno en cualquier parte</b>	
<b>perder</b> , <i>to lose</i> ; <b>perder a</b> , <i>to ruin</i> , though sometimes also <i>to lose by death</i>	
Quiero un criado.	<i>I wish a servant.</i>
Isabel te quiere como a un hermano.	<i>Isabel loves you as a brother.</i>
Tengo un buen tío.	<i>I have a good uncle.</i>
Tengo a mi tío en Chile.	<i>My uncle is in Chile.</i>
Perdió (a) su hermano en la guerra.	<i>He lost his brother in the war.</i>
Con su manía del juego, pierde a su familia.	<i>By his passion for gambling he is ruining his family.</i>

## EXERCISE 25

*A. Determine the gender by the rules, and write the proper article with:* ciudad, sistema, muchedumbre, circulación, independencia, esperanza, carlista, poema, Venus, monarca, calidad, unión.

*B. Write plurals with articles:* el agua, la tesis, el lunes, el inglés, el señor Martínez, el pie, el rubí, el juez, el águila, la serie, el rey.

*C. Determine the meaning of the whole word by examining the stem and the suffix:* el hermanito, el animalejo, el hombrecillo, la manecita, Anita, el doctorzuelo, el papelucho, el bobarrón, el chiquillo, Carlitos, el hombrón, los zapatones, la zapatilla, una plumada de tinta, una cuchillada, la venida, el dador, la entrada, el naranjal, el palmar, el hachazo, un silletazo, una arboleda, el rancharo, el relojero, una relojería, una guantería.

*D. Translate:* 1. He has three grandparents, his father's parents and his mother's mother. 2. My brother has three children, two boys and a girl. 3. There is a party to-night at Mr. and Mrs. González's. 4. We saw a handsome eagle in the park. 5. Put (an)<sup>1</sup> accent on the i's of the endings of the imperfect indicative. 6. Columbus discovered America, but Cortes conquered Mexico. 7. Where did you find John? 8. I saw nobody there whom I knew. 9. Whom did you see in the theater? 10. The night follows the day. 11. The silver spoon is on the kitchen table. 12. They have a new sewing machine. 13. The Romans used to write on wax tablets with iron pencils. 14. He called the dog friend. 15. Lucas had taught the dog to dance. 16. The water carried me away like a feather. 17. I do not believe uncle Lucas a<sup>1</sup> man to<sup>2</sup> consent to<sup>3</sup> such foolishness. 18. They gave the sick woman medicine in small doses. 19. The letter z is not written<sup>4</sup> before the vowels e and i. 20. In the Roman system of numeration the capital C equals one hundred, and the capital M one thousand. 21. Here you have Doña Dolores.

<sup>1</sup> Omit.<sup>2</sup> de.<sup>3</sup> en.<sup>4</sup> Use reflexive verb.



## CHAPTER IV

### ADJECTIVES

**135. Gender.** If the masculine singular of an adjective ends in *o*, the feminine is formed by changing *o* to *a*. Adjectives ending otherwise remain the same in both genders.

un caballo negro, *a black horse*  
el árbol verde, *the green tree*  
un hombre feliz, *a happy man*  
el belga, *the Belgian*  
el cielo azul, *the blue sky*  
el partido socialista, *the socialist party*

una yegua negra, *a black mare*  
la hoja verde, *the green leaf*  
una mujer infeliz, *an unhappy woman*  
la estrella azul, *the blue star*  
la frontera marroquí, *the Moroccan frontier*

Exceptions are

1. Adjectives of nationality, which add *a* to a final consonant :

inglés, inglesa, *English*  
alemán, alemana, *German*

andaluz, andaluza, *Andalusian*  
provenzal, provenzala, *Provençal*

2. Adjectives with the terminations *án*, *ón*, or (except comparatives), *ete*, *ote*, *ín* :

regordete, regordeta, *plump*  
feote, feota, *ugly*  
holgazán, holgazana, *lazy*  
chiquitín, chiquitina, *tiny*  
burlón, burlona, *roguish*

hablador, habladora, *talkative*

But una hermana mayor, *an older sister*

la parte superior, *the upper part*

3. A few adjectives of one termination which add *a* when used as feminine nouns, especially those ending in *al*.

la colegiala, *the schoolgirl*

la superiora, *the mother superior*

**136. Number.** The plurals of adjectives follow the rules for the plurals of nouns ; see section 130.

**137. Apocopation.** See section 46.

1. **Grande** in the full form is used before nouns beginning with a vowel sound.

*una grande abundancia de flores, a great abundance of flowers*  
*un grande hombre, a great man*

*a.* Sometimes also for emphasis; as, *Es cosa cierta que nunca grande cosa se hubo sin trabajo, It is certain that no great thing ever came to pass without work.*

2. **Santo** becomes **san** in names of saints, except before those beginning with **To** or **Do**; as, **San Pedro**, *Saint Peter*; **San Pablo**, *Saint Paul*; **Santo Toribio**; **Santo Domingo**; **Santo Tomás**.

*a.* The name of the island, however, is **San Tomas**, with shift of accent due to derivation from English.

*b.* The adjective **santo**, and its feminine form in names, have the full form; as, *el santo día, the blessed day*; *Santa María*.

3. **Ciento** becomes **cien** before nouns: **cien mujeres**, *one hundred women*. But the full form occurs in counting above a hundred; as, *ciento dos pesos, one hundred and two dollars*.

**138. Compound Adjectives**, like compound nouns, are not very numerous in Spanish. English compound adjectives must usually be translated into Spanish by prepositional phrases.

*una niña de ojos azules, a blue-eyed girl*  
*los ricos duros de corazón, the hard-hearted rich*

1. When the expression contains two nouns and an adjective, the adjective may agree with either noun:

*un sombrero de anchas alas* } *a broad-brimmed hat*  
*un sombrero ancho de alas* }

2. The repetition of **de** may be avoided by using other prepositions according to sense:

*un bastón con puño de oro, a gold-headed cane*

*maquinaria para trabajar la madera, wood-working machinery*

*compañía de seguros contra incendios, fire insurance company*

*clavos para herraduras de cabeza pequeña, small-headed horse-shoe nails*

3. The English suffix *-less* is translated by the preposition **sin** :  
 la telegrafía **sin** hilos, *wireless telegraphy*      sierra **sin** fin, *endless saw or band-saw*

4. With proper names and the words *brand* and *color*, the preposition may be omitted :

ruedas Pelton, *Pelton wheels*      guantes color verde aceituna, *olive-green gloves*  
 fósforos marca Victoria, *Victoria brand matches*      el musgo color perla, *the pearl-colored moss*

**139. Position of Adjectives.** 1. The will of the writer largely determines whether an adjective shall stand before or after the noun. However, the emphatic position is after the noun; hence, important adjectives that distinguish individuals from others of the same class follow the noun, while those which are characteristic or may apply to all objects of a class precede the noun.

buenos amigos, *good friends*      claveles blancos, *white pinks*  
 amigos íntimos, *intimate friends*      la blanca nieve, *the white snow*  
 las bellas flores, *the beautiful flowers*      una casa costosa, *an expensive house*

2. When two adjectives come together either before or after the noun, it is customary to write **y**, *and*, between them; unless one of the adjectives is so closely connected with the meaning as to make practically a compound noun.

ojos grandes **y** animados, *large animated eyes*      el Banco Nacional Americano, *the American National Bank*  
 dos largos **y** tristes meses, *two long sad months*      aguas minerales extranjeras, *foreign mineral waters*

3. Groups of modifiers should be arranged so as to restrict the word intended, and with a care for the sound.

Aceteras de acero **sin** junta.      *Seamless steel oil-cans.*  
 Árboles corpulentos de rugosos troncos formidables abrían en vertiginosas alturas los mil hercúleos brazos de sus ramajes frondosos.      *Huge trees with rough formidable trunks opened on dizzy heights the thousand Herculean arms of their leafy branches.*

4. The following adjectives are always placed before the noun. (See also section 142, 6.)

<b>ambos</b> , <i>both</i>	<b>otro</b> , <i>other</i>
<b>cada</b> , <i>each</i>	<b>poco</b> , <i>little</i> , plural <i>few</i>
<b>cuanto</b> , <i>how much</i>	¿ <b>qué</b> ? <i>what?</i>
<b>demás</b> , <i>other</i>	¿ <b>cuál</b> ? <i>which?</i>
<b>mucho</b> , <i>much</i> , plural <i>many</i>	<b>tanto</b> , <i>so much</i>
<i>The cardinal numerals</i>	<b>todo</b> , <i>every, all</i>

5. Some adjectives have a difference in meaning according as they stand before or after the noun. These differences are usually a distinction between the figurative and the literal meaning, but the adjectives in their literal sense may sometimes be found in good writers placed before the noun.

<b>mi cara madre</b> , <i>my dear mother</i>	<b>un libro caro</b> , <i>an expensive book</i>
<b>cierto hombre</b> , <i>a certain man</i>	<b>una noticia cierta</b> , <i>a true piece of news</i>
<b>un gran señor</b> , <i>a great lord</i>	<b>una casa grande</b> , <i>a large house</i>
	<b>una gran sala baja</b> , <i>a large lower room</i>
<b>mal café</b> , <i>bad coffee</i>	<b>un hombre malo</b> , <i>a wicked man</i>
<b>el mismo día</b> , <i>the same day</i>	<b>el rey mismo</b> , <i>the king himself</i>
<b>un nuevo libro</b> , <i>a new</i> (i.e. different) <i>book</i>	<b>un libro nuevo</b> , <i>a new book</i> (newly printed)
¡ <b>pobre muchacho</b> ! <i>poor boy!</i>	<b>un muchacho pobre</b> , <i>a poor boy</i>
<b>varios papeles</b> , <i>several papers</i>	<b>papeles varios</b> , <i>miscellaneous papers</i>

a. Many expressions require a fixed position of the adjective: **buen dinero** (ironical), *little money*; **una buena pieza**, *a nice trick*; **el padre santo**, *the Pope*; **la Santa Biblia**, *the Holy Bible*. (See the large dictionaries.)

b. A distinction exists between **el mismo** and **un mismo**. The latter implies no comparison, *one and the same*; while the former supposes comparison.

**Todo ello está escrito de una misma letra.** *It is all written in the same hand.*

**Esta gorra no es la misma.** *This cap is not the same one.*

## EXERCISE 26

*A. Translate:* 1. Tanks of California redwood. 2. Engraved wedding cards. 3. Solid steel cart-wheels. 4. Portable Victor refrigerating machines. 5. Cotton-seed-oil presses. 6. Eureka brand table cutlery. 7. A gasoline illuminating system. 8. Seamless stockings. 9. A blue typewriter ribbon. 10. Aluminum advertising signs.

*B.* 1. John will earn a great honor and a good handful of silver. 2. He wore a necktie of pearl-colored silk. 3. While the money lasted, the innkeeper treated me with great attention. 4. The captain had a thick, black, silky mustache. 5. This large house belongs to the heir of a great family. 6. The poor sick girl! I took her some new magazines to read. 7. A dense impure vapor rose from the surface of the sea. 8. His younger sister was a charming girl. 9. We entered the lower part of the house. 10. He bought two handsome black horses. 11. The German girls have pretty blue eyes. 12. The Carlist party has its name from Don Carlos, brother of Ferdinand the Seventh. 13. Wireless telegraphy is one of the great inventions of the nineteenth century. 14. Saint Thomas never visited the island of Saint Thomas. 15. With the stones he has built a safe, handsome yard for his cattle. 16. They have several kinds of new books. 17. The streets of the city are broad and clean. 18. There are a hundred boys in the class. 19. This room has five broad high windows. 20. In the market we saw a heap of orange-colored squashes. 21. The president of the United States lives in the White House. 22. The same day the president himself opened the door. 23. He paid the hundred pesetas to both men. 24. They sell domestic and foreign goods of all kinds. 25. All this happened on one and the same day. 26. The same day we played ball in the afternoon.

## CHAPTER V

### ADJECTIVES, CONTINUED

**140. Agrèement of Adjective and Noun.** 1. An adjective modifying two or more nouns may be masculine plural when the nouns are of different gender ; and must be so if the nouns denote persons.

**El médico y la señora estaban sentados en el despacho.** *The doctor and the lady were seated in the office.*

2. The plural adjective may agree in gender with the nearest noun.

**Sangre, dinero, e inteligencia europeas.** *European blood, money, and intelligence.*

**Juntos el terror y la admiración germinaron en el alma de Lucila.** *Together terror and wonder arose in Lucille's soul.*

**El misterio y sigilo diplomáticos.** *Diplomatic mystery and secrecy.*

3. If the nouns appear to the writer as closely associated in meaning, the adjective modifying them may agree in both gender and number with the nearest.

**El valor y constancia española.** *Spanish valor and constancy.*

**Otras devociones y ejercicios.** *Other devotions and exercises.*

**Mi padre ha leído muchos romances e historias.** *My father has read many ballads and stories.*

a. An adjective or an article may be repeated when it is desired to mark a distinction in meaning between two nouns. See section 141.

**Tengo mucho frío y mucha hambre.** *I am very cold and hungry.*

4. Two or more singular adjectives may be used with a plural noun, agreeing with it in gender, when different objects are meant.

**los tomos primero y segundo,** *the first and second volumes*

**las Cámaras italiana y portuguesa,** *the Italian and Portuguese parliaments*

**141. Repetition of Adjective and Article.** Adjectival modifiers, including the articles, are repeated with each noun when distinct persons, things, or ideas are presented.

**Mi madre y mi tía.**

*My mother and aunt.*

**Hasta las diez y media o las once.**

*Until halfpast ten or eleven o'clock.*

**Gracias a Vd. por las nuevas cartas y los nuevos consejos.**

*I thank you for the recent letters and advice.*

**Esta consideración y esta meditación me atemorizan.**

*This consideration and this reflection make me afraid.*

**El amor de Dios y el concepto de Dios todo lo abarcan.**

*God's love and the concept of God embrace everything.*

*a.* If, however, the two nouns appear to the writer to represent closely related ideas or to have a collective sense, the modifier appears only once.

**Se comprenden bajo la denominación de equipajes los baúles, maletas, sombrereras, y sacos de noche.**

*Under the term baggage are included trunks, valises, hat-boxes, and traveling-bags.*

**El Príncipe de Viana tuvo la majestad y esperanzas de un nacimiento real.**

*The Prince of Viana had the majesty and hopes of a royal birth.*

**Obra una transmisión y mezcla de sangre.**

*It effects a transmission and mingling of blood.*

**142. The Comparative.** See sections 47, 48, 49.

1. The correlative adverbs *the . . . the* used with comparatives are rendered in Spanish by **cuanto . . . tanto**.

**Cuanto más leo este autor, tanto más lo admiro.**

*The more I read this author the more I admire him.*

*a.* **Tanto** may be omitted; and **mientras** may be used instead of **cuanto**.

**Cuanto más lejos, mejor.**

*The farther the better.*

**Mientras mayor me representa el amor de Dios, menos celoso estoy y más le amo.**

*The greater I imagine God's love (to be), the less jealous I am and the more I love him.*

2. Though **tan** is used with adjectives, the full form **tanto** must be used with comparatives: **tanto peor**, *so much the worse*.

3. The comparative may be intensified by *cada vez* to denote a gradual increase in degree.

*La señora estaba cada vez peor de salud.*      *The lady became constantly worse in health.*

*Brillan cada vez más las luces eléctricas.*      *The electric lights shine brighter and brighter.*

4. Indefinite expressions after comparatives are usually in the negative.

*mejor que en ningún otro país, better than in any other country*  
*más rico que nunca, richer than ever*

5. A redundant *no* sometimes appears after a comparative.

*El guardia parecía ocuparse más de la campiña que no del río.*      *The watchman seemed to pay more attention to the plain than to the river.*

6. The irregular comparatives *mejor*, *peor*, *menor*, and *mayor* may stand before the noun, but are placed after it when the comparison is not limited, or when the noun is preceded by *alguno*, *ninguno*, or *otro*. *Mayor* and *menor* may stand before the noun only in a completed comparison.

*mi mejor amigo, my best friend*      *ninguna casa mejor, no better house*  
*su hijo menor, his youngest son*      *una señora mayor, an elderly lady*

*Vendrán días mejores.*      *Better days will come.*

*El peor hombre del mundo.*      *The worst man in the world.*

*La mayor casa del barrio.*      *The largest house in the quarter.*

143. *Than* after a comparative. See section 49.

1. When the comparison is with a noun in the principal clause, Spanish uses for *than* *del que*, *de la que*, *de los que*, *de las que*, according to the gender and number of the noun represented.

*Tenía yo menos dinero del que me pidió.*      *I had less money than he demanded of me.*

*Hubo más gente de la que invitó.*      *There were more people than he invited.*

*¿Son muchos los enemigos? Más de los que esperábamos.*      *Are the enemy numerous? More than we expected.*



2. When the comparison is with a statement or idea, **de lo que** introduces the second member.

**Es más hábil de lo que parece.** *He is more skillful than he seems.*

**144. Más** modifies many adverbs of place which have no comparative degree in English, and otherwise forms various idiomatic expressions.

**más adelante,** *later on, farther on*

**más arriba,** *higher up.* **más abajo,** *lower down*

**más al norte,** *farther north*

**más bien,** *rather*

**más acá de,** *on this side.* **más allá de,** *beyond, on the other side*

**no más . . . que, only:** **No había más que dos sillas,** *There were only two chairs*

**a poco más,** *nearly:* **A poco más se muere,** *He nearly died*

**145. The Superlative.** 1. A possessive adjective may replace the article in forming the superlative.

**su poema más interesante,** *his most interesting poem*

**mi mejor amigo,** *my best friend*

2. The superlative adjective may stand either before or after the noun; but in the latter case the article is placed before the noun.

**Isabel, sostenida por la mayor y más sana parte del reino,** *Isabel, supported by the largest and soundest part of the kingdom*  
**las rocas más elevadas,** *the highest rocks*

3. With several adjectives in the comparative or superlative, **más** or **menos** is used only once.

**las regiones más ricas y fértiles,** *the richest and most fertile regions*

**los menos sabios y leídos,** *the least learned and well-read*

4. The superlative adjective in the predicate omits the article when the comparison concerns only the subject of the verb without reference to other nouns or pronouns.

**Cuando más alegre estaba, ví que la señora fijó en mí la mirada.** *When I was merriest I saw the lady stare at me.*

**No te cases nunca, Cecilia; el hombre que mejor parece de novio es el esposo peor.** *Never marry, Cecilia; the man who seems best as a lover is the worst husband.*

5. A superlative adjective modifying a noun in apposition with another has the article after the noun.

Gonzalo de Córdoba, general el más ilustre del siglo XV, *Gonzalo de Córdoba, the most illustrious general of the fifteenth century*

6. The article is not used with the superlative of an adverb unless accompanied by the adjective **posible**, or an expression denoting possibility; in which case the neuter article is required.

Los cometas aparecen cuando menos se los espera. *Comets appear when they are least expected.*

Se trataba lo menos posible con los vecinos. *He conversed as little as possible with the neighbors.*

Huyó lo más de prisa que podía. *He ran away as fast as he could.*

Don Fadrique bailó lo mejor que supo. *Don Fadrique danced the best he knew how.*

a. When it is necessary to emphasize or make precise the superlative degree of an adverb, Spanish uses a relative or adverbial clause.

Es Juan el que corre más de prisa. *John runs the fastest.*

7. *Most*, as a noun, is **la mayor parte de** or **los (las) más de**.

**la mayor parte de su dinero**, *most of his money*

**los más de los suyos**, *most of his men*

a. **Los (las) más** may also be used as an adjective; as, **las más noches**, *most nights*.

**146. Absolute Superlative.** 1. When there is no real comparison but the adjective denotes a supreme degree, Spanish applies the ending **ísimo** to the adjective; as, **hábil**, *skillful* — **habilísimo**, *very skillful*.

a. A final **o** or other vowel is dropped before adding the termination, and the rules for spelling (see section 7) must be regarded.

**mucho** — **muchísimo**, *very much*      **rico** — **riquísimo**, *very rich*  
**feliz** — **felicísimo**, *very happy*      **largo** — **larguísimo**, *very long*

b. The termination **ío** retains **i**, but **io** is dropped; though some adjectives in **ío** or **io** do not allow the addition of **ísimo**.

**frío** — **frísimo**, *very cold*      **amplio** — **amplísimo**, *very ample*

c. The original Latin word influences the formation from adjectives having a stem vowel *ie* or *ue*, or the terminations *ble*, *fico*, *volo*, or whose Latin superlative ended in *rimus* or *limus*. There are also a few unclassified forms from the Latin superlative.

**cierto** — **certísimo**, *very sure*  
**fuerte** — **fortísimo**, *very strong*  
**noble** — **nobilísimo**, *very noble*  
**magnífico** — **magnificentísimo**, *very magnificent*  
**benévolo** — **benevolentísimo**, *very benevolent*  
**célebre** — **celebérrimo**, *very famous*  
**fácil** — **facilísimo** (also **facilísimo**), *very easy*  
**sabio** — **sapientísimo**, *very wise*  
**fiel** — **fidelísimo**, *very faithful*

2. The following adjectives have, besides the regular absolute superlative, others derived from the Latin forms :

**bueno** — **bonísimo**, **óptimo**, *very good*  
**malo** — **malísimo**, **pésimo**, *very bad*  
**grande** — **grandísimo**, **máximo**, *very great*  
**pequeño** — **pequeñísimo**, **mínimo**, *very small*

3. An equivalent for the absolute superlative may be formed by intensifying adverbs modifying the adjective.

**muy bueno**, *very good*                      **cantidades sobre manera pequeñas**,  
**sumamente fiel**, *extremely faithful*                      *exceedingly small quantities*

a. The particle **re** (**rete**) may be prefixed to the adjective with the same force :

**rebueno**, *very good*; **retebien hecho**, *very well done*

**147. Adjectives as Nouns.** The Spanish adjective may be freely used as a noun to specify individuals. English uses the adjective as a noun only in a limited way, usually supplying words like *man*, *woman*, *the one*, *the ones*.

¿ Vió Vd. al ciego ?

*Did you see the blind man ?*

¿ Quién es la vieja ?

*Who is the old woman ?*

El pequeño es más bonito que los grandes.

*The little one is prettier than the big ones.*

1. Certain superlative expressions in English supply the words *sort, kind, one of*; these words are rendered in Spanish by the superlative of the adjective used as a noun governed by the preposition *de*.

**carmesí del más vistoso**, *crimson of the showiest kind*

**una noche de las más frías de diciembre**, *one of the coldest December nights*

**una tarde de las primeras frías de octubre**, *one of the first cold afternoons in October*

a. In a similar way a superlative adjective preceded by *de* may stand with partitive sense in the predicate.

**Los días que pasé en aquella casa fueron de los más tristes de mi vida.** *The days that I spent in that house were the saddest in my life.*

**El paño es de primera clase.** *The cloth is first-class.*

2. After a neuter pronoun, as **mucho, nada, qué**, the adjective preceded by *de* may be treated as noun and may agree or not in gender and number with the word to which it refers.

**¿Qué hay de nuevo?** *What is there new? (idiomatic English) What is the news?*

**Nada de particular.** *Nothing special.*

**Aquellos ojos tenían mucho de hermoso or de hermosos.** *Those eyes were very beautiful.*

**148. Adjectives as Adverbs.** Adjectives are frequently used as adverbs; as, **hablar bajo**, *to speak low*; **Carlos habló primero**, *Charles spoke first*; **Viven felices**, *They live happily*.

a. Solo when used as an adverb takes a written accent: **sólo dos**, *only two*.

b. **Medio**, *half*, is frequently found as an adverb:

**Los viejos parecían medio muertos.** *The old people seemed half dead.*

**Estaba ella medio escondida.** *She was half hidden.*

### EXERCISE 27

1. The interest and emotion of the public were extraordinary. 2. They live in the largest and richest city in the world. 3. We have Spanish lessons on Mondays, Wednesdays, and Fridays. 4. What is the opposite of "better"? "Worse." 5. A faithful dog is the most faithful of friends. 6. Most Spanish words of Gothic origin are

military terms, or personal names like Federico. 7. Greece and Rome were the two most celebrated nations of antiquity, one for the arts and genius, the other for its strength and greatness. 8. The silver mines of Potosí have produced for more than two centuries an incalculable wealth. 9. I prefer the old book to the new one. 10. The old men were watching the young men. 11. The house has nothing beautiful (about it).<sup>1</sup> 12. I had only one friend in the city. 13. Our bookstore was established in one of the most central streets. 14. The streets became constantly uglier as we left<sup>2</sup> the center of the town. 15. The price of the rags is greater the newer they are. 16. Why are we poor? Because we spend more than we earn, or because we earn less than we spend. 17. The servant returned earlier than we expected. 18. Acquaintance with<sup>3</sup> Spanish will be most useful for you. 19. I have sold all my best books. 20. Lincoln had not been a state governor nor a federal senator, the highest offices of the republic after that<sup>4</sup> of president. 21. Most of the houses were closed on account of the heat. 22. He studies more than anybody. 23. He possessed many religious paintings and engravings. 24. They traveled silently. 25. Further on, the amphitheater of mountains, some higher than others, all black and formidable, surrounded the plain. 26. San Felú is a town of 10,000 souls and one of the richest and most important in the province. 27. Through the little narrow windows she saw the deep, blue bosom of the night. 28. Most Sundays I was invited to dine at my uncle's, a very rich old bachelor. 29. St. Paul's is the largest church in London. 30. The little girl was half dead from cold. 31. He entered the office in<sup>5</sup> worse humor than ever. 32. From the roof he saw more than fifty bell-towers. 33. The Spanish and English fleets met in the harbor of Vigo. 34. His words were half French, half German. 35. There is something superior in that young man. 36. The pinks and white roses were a lovely present. 37. We are friends; we were together at school.

<sup>1</sup> Omit.<sup>2</sup> alejarse de.<sup>3</sup> del.<sup>4</sup> el.<sup>5</sup> de.

## CHAPTER VI

### NUMERALS

#### 149. Cardinals. See section 39.

1. Though *un* is omitted before *mil*, it is used in numbers above 1000:

31,000, *treinta y un mil*

101,000, *ciento un mil*

2. The plural of *uno* is *unos(as)*, which is used as an indefinite pronoun, see section 179, 3. Before plural nouns *unos(as)* has the meaning of *one*. *Se venden muchas tijeras: no quedan sino unas*, *We sell many scissors: only one pair is left.*

a. Before a cardinal number *unos(as)* conveys an idea of indefiniteness: *unos cincuenta*, *some fifty*.

3. *Cuatro* is used as an indefinite number. *El alguacil refirió en cuatro palabras todo lo que sabemos*, *The policeman related in a few words all that we know.*

#### 150. Ordinals. See section 40.

1st primero, -a (primo, -a)	15th décimo quinto, -a
2d segundo, -a	16th décimo sexto, -a
3d tercero, -a (tercio, -a)	17th décimo séptimo, -a
4th cuarto, -a	18th décimo octavo, -a
5th quinto, -a	19th décimo nono, -a
6th sexto, -a, <i>or</i> sexto, -a	20th vigésimo, -a
7th séptimo, -a, <i>or</i> sétimo, -a	21st vigésimo primo, -a
8th octavo, -a	22d vigésimo segundo, -a
9th noveno, -a (nono, -a)	23d vigésimo tercio, -a
10th décimo, -a	30th trigésimo, -a
11th undécimo, -a	40th cuadrágésimo, -a
12th duodécimo, -a	50th quincuagésimo, -a
13th décimo tercio, -a	60th sexagésimo, -a
14th décimo cuarto, -a	70th septuagésimo, -a

80th octogésimo, -a	600th sexcentésimo, -a
90th nonagésimo, -a	700th septingentésimo, -a
100th centésimo, -a	800th octingentésimo, -a
101st centésimo primo, -a	900th noningentésimo, -a
111th centésimo undécimo, -a	1,000th milésimo, -a
200th ducentésimo, -a	2,000th dosmilésimo, -a
300th trecentésimo, -a	10,000th diezmilésimo, -a
400th cuadingentésimo, -a	1,000,000th millonésimo, -a
500th quingentésimo, -a	

*a.* The short forms **primo**, **tercio**, **nono**, are preferred in compound expressions. These may be written in one word, but both parts should agree in gender and number with the noun.

*b.* Only educated Spaniards are familiar with the ordinals above 20th. They are used in the prayer-book and in some special expressions, as **el quincuagésimo aniversario**, *the fiftieth anniversary*.

**151. Fractions** to and including one eleventh are formed by using a cardinal numeral for a numerator and an ordinal for a denominator.

un medio, $\frac{1}{2}$	tres cuartos, $\frac{3}{4}$	un octavo (ochavo), $\frac{1}{8}$
un tercio, $\frac{1}{3}$	un quinto, $\frac{1}{5}$	un noveno, $\frac{1}{9}$
dos tercios, $\frac{2}{3}$	un sexto, $\frac{1}{6}$	un décimo, $\frac{1}{10}$
un cuarto, $\frac{1}{4}$	un séptimo, $\frac{1}{7}$	un undécimo, $\frac{1}{11}$

From and including one eleventh, the denominator of a fraction is formed by adding the termination **-avo** to the cardinal numeral.

un onzavo, $\frac{1}{11}$	un diecinueveavo, $\frac{1}{19}$
un dozavo, $\frac{1}{12}$	un veintavo, $\frac{1}{20}$
un trezavo, $\frac{1}{13}$	un veintiunavo, $\frac{1}{21}$
un catorzavo, $\frac{1}{14}$	un treintavo, $\frac{1}{30}$
un quinzavo, $\frac{1}{15}$	un centésimo <i>or</i> centavo, $\frac{1}{100}$
un dieciseisavo, $\frac{1}{16}$	un milésimo, $\frac{1}{1000}$
un diecisieteavo, $\frac{1}{17}$	un diezmilésimo, $\frac{1}{10000}$
un dieciochavo, $\frac{1}{18}$	un millonésimo, $\frac{1}{1000000}$

*a.* A frequent method in general conversational use of forming fractions is by introducing the word **parte**; as, **las dos terceras partes**, *two thirds*; **la vigésima parte**, *one twentieth*.

b. Derived from their use with a noun, the fractional numerals, some in the feminine form, others in the masculine, have special meanings.

**una tercia**, *twelve inches*, i.e. *one third of a yard (vara)*

**un tercio**, *a bale*

**una cuarta**, *nine inches, one quarter of a yard*, frequently used in business

**medio**, **cuarto**, **ochavo**, are names of coins.

See dictionary for meaning of this class of words.

c. The adjective **medio**, *half*, is used as a noun in calculations, otherwise the noun is **la mitad**. Note the difference between the two languages in the matter of the article and the position of **medio** in respect to the noun.

**media hora**, *half an hour*

**una media dosis**, *half a dose*

**una hora y media**, *an hour and a half*

**tres pesos y medio**, *three and a half dollars*

**la mitad de la casa**, *half of the house*

## 152. Collective Numerals.

**un par**, *a pair*

**una decena**, *ten*

**una docena**, *a dozen*

**una quincena**, *fifteen*

**una veintena**, *twenty, a score*

**una sesentena**, *sixty*

**una centena** or **un centenar**, *one hundred*

**un millar**, *one thousand*

a. The cardinals **ciento** and **mil** may also be used as collectives: **miles de aves**, *thousands of birds*.

b. In commercial language, to express rate, **ciento** and **millar** are the preferred forms.

**a \$4 ciento**, *at \$4 a hundred*

**ladrillos a \$15 millar**, *bricks at \$15 a thousand*

c. Collective numerals in **-ena** sometimes have an indefinite value: **as**, **una decena**, *about ten*.

d. Collectives require **de** before a following noun.

**una veintena de caballeros**, *a score of gentlemen*

**una docena de huevos**, *a dozen eggs*



## 153. Multiple Numerals.

simple, <i>single</i>	quintuplo or quintuplicado, <i>quintuple, fivefold</i>
doble or duplicado or dúplice, <i>double, twofold</i>	séxtuplo, <i>sixfold</i>
triple or triplicado or tríplice, <i>triple, threefold</i>	séptuplo, <i>sevenfold</i>
cuádruplo or cuadruplicado, <i>quadruple, fourfold</i>	décuplo, <i>tenfold</i>
	céntuplo or centuplicado, <i>a hundredfold</i>
	múltiple, <i>manifold, multiple</i>

## 154. Arithmetical Signs.

+ más	× por	= es igual a
— menos	+ dividido por	
Dos tercios más un medio son uno y un sexto.		<i>Two thirds plus one half are one and a sixth.</i>
¿ Cuántas veces cabe el 6 en 54 ?		<i>How many times is 6 contained in 54 ?</i>
Dos por tres son seis.		<i>Two times three are six.</i>
¿ Está bien la suma ?		<i>Is the total correct ?</i>
La suma (o el total) de 20 y 30 es igual a 50.		<i>The sum of 20 and 30 is equal to 50.</i>

155. Dimensions. In expressing dimension Spanish uses the verb *tener* with the following nouns and adjectives :

alto, <i>high</i>	la altura or elevación, <i>height</i>
largo, <i>long</i>	la longitud or extensión, <i>length</i>
ancho, <i>wide</i>	la anchura or latitud, <i>width</i>
profundo } <i>deep</i>	la profundidad, <i>depth</i>
hondo }	
grueso } <i>thick</i>	el espesor, <i>thickness</i>
espeso }	

The adjectives may be used in place of the nouns except as subject of the verb. Note the following methods of expression :

¿ Qué anchura tiene el río ?	} <i>How wide is the river ?</i>
¿ Cuántos pies tiene el río de { anchura ? { ancho ?	
El río tiene { una anchura de media milla. { media milla { de ancho. { de anchura.	} <i>The river is half a mile wide.</i>

a. Expressions of dimension used as either attributive or predicate adjectives are preceded by *de*.

Una torre { de 900 metros de { altura.  
                  { alta de 900 metros.        { alto. } A tower 900 meters high.

Guantes largos de catorce botones. *Fourteen-button gloves.*  
El tamaño de la caja es de tres pies *The size of the box is three feet*  
de largo y de dos pies, tres pul- *long by two feet three inches*  
gadas de ancho. *wide.*  
Es hondo de ocho pulgadas. *It is eight inches deep.*

156. Distance is expressed as follows :

¿ Cuánto hay de Madrid a Sevilla ? *How far is it from Madrid to*  
*Seville ?*  
Dista de unos 560 kilómetros. *It is about 560 kilometers distant.*  
No hay cinco minutos de aquí a la *It is not five minutes' walk from*  
iglesia. *here to the church.*

a. Adverbially, distance may be expressed by the preposition *a*.

a dos pasos de aquí, *two steps from here*  
a una legua, *a league away*

157. Price requires the preposition *a*.

¿ A cómo vende Vd. la tela ? *How do you sell the cloth ?*  
A dos pesos vara. *At two dollars a yard.*  
¡ A perra chica <sup>1</sup> la buena naranja ! *A good orange for a cent.*

a. Estimates take the preposition *en*.

En dos arrobas de uvas apreció el *He appraised the damage at two*  
gasto. *arrobas (50 lbs.) of grapes.*

b. Articles made or sold at a uniform weight or value have the double preposition *de a* before the rate.

sellos de a cinco centavos, *five-cent stamps*  
una moneda de a 5 pesetas, *a coin worth five pesetas*  
un cartucho de dinamita de a 2½ kilos, *a dynamite cartridge weigh-*  
*ing 2½ kilos*

<sup>1</sup> A copper coin of 5 céntimos, worth about a cent of our money, is called a *perra chica* or *perrita*, also *perro chico*; the piece of 10 céntimos, being larger, is called a *perro gordo* or *perro grande*. The names are derived from the fact that the coins have on the obverse a representation of a lion holding a shield.

158. **Measure** is preceded by the definite article in Spanish, which however may be omitted, and **por** may be introduced.

El paño vale un peso	{	la vara. vara. por vara.	<i>The cloth is worth a dollar a yard.</i>
----------------------	---	--------------------------------	--

159. **Rates** involving an element of time are most commonly expressed by an adjective.

Ocho pesetas diarias.	<i>Eight pesetas a day.</i>
Un sueldo de \$60 mensuales.	<i>A salary of \$60 a month.</i>
Se calcula el consumo en ochenta mil toneladas anuales.	<i>The consumption is estimated at eighty thousand tons a year.</i>

a. Note also the following.

Cada seis meses.	<i>Every six months.</i>
Una vez por semana.	<i>Once a week.</i>
\$40,000 anualmente.	<i>\$40,000 yearly.</i>
Dos veces al día.	<i>Twice a day.</i>
Un día sí y otro no.	<i>Every other day.</i>
A perra chica uno.	<i>A cent apiece.</i>
Café por una peseta.	<i>A peseta's worth of coffee.</i>
A razón de ocho reales la docena.	<i>At the rate of eight reals a dozen.</i>
Una velocidad de 60 kilómetros por hora.	<i>A speed of 60 kilometers an hour.</i>
¿Qué tanto por ciento?	<i>What rate per cent?</i>
Un descuento de 2 por 100.	<i>A discount of 2%.</i>
Al tipo de 4,50 por 100.	<i>At the rate of 4½ per cent.</i>
El tipo del interés es de 5 por ciento.	<i>The rate of interest is 5 per cent.</i>

160. **Approximation.** Numerical expressions are modified to express approximation as follows:

Cosa de dos horas.	<i>About two hours.</i>
Como de una vara.	<i>About a yard.</i>
Vale poco más o menos diez duros.	<i>It is worth about ten dollars.</i>
Tiene unos cincuenta años.	<i>He is some fifty years old.</i>
Tiene cincuenta y tantos años.	<i>He is fifty-odd years old.</i>
Tres mil y pico de pesetas.	<i>Three thousand and odd pesetas.</i>

a. With the hour of the day, **a eso de** is common: **a eso de las siete**, *about seven o'clock.*

## EXERCISE 28

1. This bill amounts to sixteen thousand five hundred and twenty-nine pesetas. 2. He earns seven dollars a week, and pays fifty cents a day for his board. 3. We will allow a discount of three per cent for payment in cash. 4. The *fanega* is a Spanish measure which contains about a bushel and a half. 5. The population of this city amounts to about one million two hundred and one thousand. 6. One half is a fraction which has for denominator the number two and which consequently supposes (the) unity divided into two equal parts. 7. The Mediterranean Sea is thirty-five thousand kilometers long from east to west, and has a minimum width of a hundred and forty kilometers between Tunis and Sicily. 8. According to the metric system of weights a kilo is equal to two and one fifth pounds. 9. This room is fifteen feet long by twelve feet wide. 10. We have begun at the eighth line of the fifty-second page. 11. I want a dollar's worth of two-cent stamps. 12. The principal nave of the church measured 64 meters in length and 12 meters in width between the pillars. 13. The height of the arches above the floor was 24 meters. 14. During the first three years he used two thirds of his salary for the purchase of books. 15. He is about forty years old. 16. He is about five years older than I. 17. The Eiffel tower in Paris is more than three hundred meters high. 18. How much is this cloth worth a yard? 19. We paid three dollars a day at that hotel. 20. One fourth plus one third equals seven twelfths. 21. We arrived at the city at about eleven o'clock. 22. Columbus discovered America the twelfth of October, fourteen hundred and ninety-two. 23. The second of May is the Spanish national holiday. 24. At this price the shares return an interest of five and a quarter per cent. 25. The one-peseta piece is worth four reals, but there is no coin worth<sup>1</sup> a real. 26. He lives half a mile away. 27. The street car passes this corner every ten minutes. 28. There was in the park a circular pond about a hundred

<sup>1</sup> Omit: see section 157, b.

meters in diameter. 29. This hotel was a mile away from the station. 30. The pond was scarcely deeper than half a yard in its deepest part. 31. How does he sell the eggs? Thirty-five cents a dozen the fresh ones. 32. From the railway station coaches leave daily in summer for that village. 33. The production of manufactured cork amounts to two and a half million kilograms a year. 34. I have read this book a dozen times. 35. In 1892 we Americans celebrated the four-hundredth anniversary of the discovery of the New World. 36. The basis of the Spanish currency is the peseta which is nominally equal to nineteen and three tenths cents of our money, but there is always a discount in our favor. 37. There are about ten meters of this cloth; how much will you sell it for? At a dollar and a quarter a meter. 38. When shall we arrive in Granada? About nine o'clock if the train is not behind time. 39. The custom house appraises these cigars at two dollars and a half per hundred. 40. An express train leaves for that city every other hour. 41. The richest emerald mines of Colombia are situated about seventy-five miles north of Bogotá at an elevation of six thousand five hundred feet above sea level. 42. The Bolivian mines yield one sixth of the world's yearly production of tin. The metal sells at times as high as one thousand dollars a ton.

## CHAPTER VII

### POSSESSIVES AND DEMONSTRATIVES

**161. Possessives.** See sections 37, 97, 98.

1. The indefinite use of the possessive adjective occurs also when the adjective stands in the predicate: **Son amigos nuestros**, *They are friends of ours*; and between a demonstrative and the noun: **este mi amigo**, *this friend of mine*; **ese su perro**, *that dog of yours*.

a. Note the expression **esta su casa**, *this your house*, in English, *my house*, a polite reference to one's own residence; see section 85.

2. With parts of the body and clothing, the definite article is frequently substituted for the possessive adjective. The personal pronoun of the indirect object form is used with the verb to indicate the person if necessary. **El peluquero le cortó el pelo**, *The barber cut his hair*. (See section 56, b.)

3. The possessive adjectives appear in several expressions like the following:

<b>En torno suyo.</b>	<i>Around him.</i>
<b>En su busca.</b>	<i>In search of him.</i>
<b>A nuestro encuentro.</b>	<i>To meet us.</i>
<b>A su paso.</b>	<i>As she passed.</i>
<b>Miré a mi alrededor.</b>	<i>I looked around me.</i>

**162. Demonstratives.** See section 35.

1. Referring to time, **este** denotes present time; **ese**, a recent period; and **aquel**, a remote time.

**esta noche**, *to-night*  
**esa tarde**, *that afternoon*  
**aquel siglo**, *that century*

2. **Ese** often implies contempt: **ese Gómez**, *that fellow Gómez*.

a. The phrase **de Dios** gives a satirical turn: **esas calles de Dios**, *the blessed streets*.

3. **Éste** means *the latter* (that thing last mentioned, the nearest); **aqué** means *the former*.

**Tal distancia había entre el viejo y el mozo que nunca permitió aquél delante de gente ser llamado tío por éste.**

*Such distance there was between the old man and the lad that the former never permitted himself before people to be called uncle by the latter.*

a. These pronouns are often used to make the subject of the verb evident.

**Lorenzo esperó a la ventana la vuelta de Clara. Ésta llegó poco después.**

*Lorenzo waited at the window Clara's return. She arrived a little while afterwards.*

**El autor nos entera de que Guillermo y Carmen se aman, de que aquél elude hablar de matrimonio.**

*The author informs us that William and Carmen are in love, that the former avoids speaking of marriage.*

4. The feminine forms **ésta** and **ésa**, referring to **ciudad** or **plaza** understood, frequently mean *this town (of mine)* and *that town (of yours)*. The phrases **en (de, a) ésta** and **en (de, a) ésa** may sometimes be rendered simply *here* and *there*.

**Los precios en ésta han sufrido una alza.**

*Prices here have risen.*

**Espero llegar mañana a ésa.**

*I expect to reach your town tomorrow.*

5. As the neuter forms stand for an idea, all three, **esto**, **eso**, and **aquello**, may at times be rendered *that*.

¿ **Qué es esto?**

*What is that? (which I have here).*

¿ **Qué es eso?**

*What is that? (near you).*

**Hace muchos años que sucedió aquello.**

*That happened many years ago.*

a. The neuter forms refer only to unnamed things: ¿ **Para qué sirve eso?** *What is that good for?* An object having been named, its gender is known: ¿ **Cuál es su pluma?** **Ésa.** *Which is your pen? That one.*

b. Note the idiomatic expressions

por eso, *therefore*; no por eso, *not on that account*

en esto, *hereupon, at this moment*

esto de vivir en Madrid, *this matter of living in Madrid*

eso de morir, *that idea of dying*

¿Qué significaba aquello de llevarme a París? *What did that statement about taking me to Paris mean?*

c. Before a prepositional phrase or a relative clause the neuter article may replace the demonstrative:

lo de Castro, *the affair of Castro*

lo de ayer, *that (which happened) yesterday*

Bien sé lo que quiere, *I know very well what he wants.*

d. The expletive *that* of English is not required as a grammatical subject. ¡Es bueno! *That is fine!* ¡Es interesante! *That is interesting!*

6. The definite article replaces the demonstrative before a prepositional phrase or a relative clause, unless the relative is itself the object of a preposition. English has *that, the one, he, she*, etc.

El de la camisa limpia.

*The one with the clean shirt.*

La de Montejo.

*She of Montejo (that is, Montejo's wife).*

Ese cura es el que ofreció su vida por la de sus compañeros.

*That priest is the one who offered his life for that of his companions.*

Doña Eduarda es la que ha dicho esto.

*Doña Eduarda is the one or It is Doña Eduarda who has said this.*

Es Pepita aquella a quien ama.

*Pepita is the one whom he loves.*

a. Note that the English possessive case when used without a noun requires for its translation this demonstrative use of the definite article: mi perro y el de Juan, *my dog and John's.*

b. In such expressions as *one of the (—) which*, Spanish prefers to arrange the words *one (—) of those which*.

Un telegrama de los que recibió.

*One of the telegrams which he received.*

Un curioso de los que habían acudido.

*One of the idlers who had come up.*



c. This construction in the predicate preceded by *de* means *sort or kind of*.

**Aquellos ojos eran de los que no pueden olvidarse.**

*Those eyes were the kind that cannot be forgotten.*

**Éste no es de los que se marchan sin pagar.**

*This man is not the sort that goes off without paying.*

d. In an attributive prepositional phrase the demonstrative is commoner.

**Flores raras de ésas que sólo surgen de ruinas.**

*Rare flowers of the sort that only spring from ruins.*

**Un chiste algo amoroso de éstos que suelen permitirse los andaluces.**

*A rather loose jest of the kind that Andalusians are accustomed to indulge in.*

#### EXERCISE 29

1. There is no more; that is all. 2. Who is that fellow? The one with the green hat near the door. 3. Are these your books? No, they are Henry's. 4. I have read the works of Cervantes and those of Calderon. I prefer the former to the latter. 5. My land is worth more than my neighbor's. 6. When you arrive in your town, remember that you have left friends of yours here. 7. The prices in this (market) have fallen. How are they in yours? 8. He who lives in the country is called a countryman; but those who live in the city are citizens. 9. He lent me more money than I asked. 10. Doña Ana was going to pass when her husband called her. "Listen," said the latter. 11. Those books are mine; and I have yours. Let us exchange. 12. Why did you let that tramp come into the yard? 13. These friends of mine have come from the country to see the celebrations. 14. That day I was happy. 15. Those horses are the ones we saw yesterday. 16. Henry remembered his parents, his friend Carlos, the bedroom where the pictures were: he wished he could see all that. 17. This matter of changing the name of streets is a mania in all those blessed towns. 18. Your sister and Peter's are in the same class. 19. That affair on Santiago Street was scandalous. 20. Those two gentlemen are

brothers; the one to whom I introduced you was my partner. 21. That business of yours had very good success; but your cousin's had very little. 22. I shall write to my folks and<sup>1</sup> ask<sup>2</sup> them for money. 23. Sir, I am not the girl's betrothed; I am a relative of hers. 24. That is what I command you. 25. We received letters from our brother and sister: hers are more interesting than his. 26. Your duties are those of a daughter. 27. He placed himself in a seat opposite mine. 28. At the house of the ladies of Fernández they have spoken very badly of me. 29. Since those days my studies have advanced very much. 30. I asked him if the button was his. 31. Don Francisco was the first of his people who did not serve the king. 32. Anita is the one who has fallen sick. 33. Bring some apples of the kind that uncle likes best.<sup>3</sup> 34. One of the gentlemen who were present at the party related a long story about his business. 35. This fruit is one of that kind which is not known<sup>4</sup> in Europe, and therefore most people in Spain do not know its name. 36. What is the news in your town? Nothing is going on here; it is always the same.<sup>5</sup> 37. Father and son parted; the former to return to his business, the latter to go to his school. 38. He invested his wife's money<sup>6</sup> in the shares of the Eastern Railway, and his own in those of the Northern. 39. One of the friends who came to the wedding brought his children and his sister's. 40. Dealing with rascals of that stamp, who lie at every opportunity, one does not know what to expect.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Omit.

<sup>2</sup> Use present participle.

<sup>3</sup> más.

<sup>4</sup> Use reflexive verb.

<sup>5</sup> lo de siempre.

<sup>6</sup> caudal, *m.*

<sup>7</sup> atenderse a.

## CHAPTER VIII

### RELATIVES

#### 163. Relative Pronouns.

que  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{which} \\ \textit{that} \\ \textit{who} \\ \textit{whom} \end{array} \right\}$  referring to  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1, \text{ things} \\ 2, \text{ persons, when not governed by a preposition} \end{array} \right.$

quien, quienes, *who, whom*, referring to persons only

el que, la que, los que, las que  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{who} \\ \textit{which} \end{array} \right\}$  referring to both persons  
el cual, la cual, los cuales, las cuales  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{which} \\ \textit{that} \end{array} \right\}$  and things

lo que, lo cual, *which*, referring to clauses or ideas

cuyo, cuya  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{whose} \\ \textit{of whom} \end{array} \right\}$   
cuyos, cuyas  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{of whom} \\ \textit{of which} \end{array} \right\}$  possessive relative adjective

cuanto, cuanta  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{as much} \dots \textit{as} \\ \textit{as many} \dots \textit{as} \end{array} \right\}$  indefinite relative adjective and  
cuantos, cuantas  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{as many} \dots \textit{as} \\ \textit{all the} \dots \textit{that} \end{array} \right\}$  pronoun

**164. General Rules.** 1. Relative pronouns must not be omitted in Spanish though omitted in English: *el libro que tengo*, *the book I have*.

2. Prepositions governing relative pronouns must stand before them, not at the end of the clause as in English: *la casa en que vivo*, *the house that I live in*.

3. The student must beware a combination of the two foregoing peculiarities of English: *el asunto de que Vd. me hablaba*, *the affair you were telling me about*.

4. Relative pronouns must stand as close as possible to their antecedents:

Se quedó en casa de don Casto el oficial que era un teniente. *The officer, who was a lieutenant, remained at Don Casto's.*

5. The verb after a relative pronoun takes the person and number of the antecedent, while the past participle, except when used with *haber*, has the gender and number of the antecedent in accord with the rules for the agreement of adjectives. (See section 140.)

**Iré yo que soy más joven.** *I will go who am younger.*  
**El estrecho y la isla que fueron descubiertas por Bering.** *The strait and the island which were discovered by Bering.*

a. Some writers prefer the third person of the verb when the relative occurs after a predicate noun or pronoun.

**Yo soy el gitano que dió sus señas al capitán general.** *I am the gypsy that gave his description to the captain general.*

b. If the relative has indefinite force (see section 166, 3) the verb will be in the third person: **Quien va soy yo,** *I am the one who is going.*

6. In a relative clause the verb frequently stands before the subject.

**Aquel hombre disparó el tiro a que han contestado las tropas.** *That man fired the shot to which the soldiers have replied.*

**María Victoria es una muchacha muy linda a quien ama Juan, el conde de Peñafiel.** *Maria Victoria is a very pretty girl, whom John, the count of Peñafiel, loves.*

165. *Que* is invariable. After prepositions it refers only to things.

**La casa que compré.** *The house which I bought.*

**Los hombres que vimos.** *The men whom we saw.*

**Tiró la pluma con que escribía.** *He threw away the pen with which he was writing.*

a. *Donde*, *where*, may replace *que* governed by a preposition: **la ciudad donde vive,** *the city in which he lives.*

b. *Que* instead of *cuando* is customary in relative expressions defining time: **el día que llegué a Madrid,** *the day when I reached Madrid.*

166. *Quien*, *quienes*, in modern Spanish refers only to persons or personified things and abstractions.

**Encontramos a Doña Blanca, quien salía de misa.** *We met Doña Blanca, who was coming from mass.*

**No era la humildad cristiana quien había elegido aquellos tápicos de rojo terciopelo.** *It was not Christian humility that had selected those tapestries of red velvet.*

1. After prepositions, **quien** replaces **que** when referring to persons.

**Ese hijo de un posadero que viene a vuestra cabeza y a quien llaman Murat.** *That son of an innkeeper who comes at your head and whom they call Murat.*

**Entonces entraron en el comedor los caballeros con quienes tuve la conversación.** *Then there entered the dining-room the gentlemen with whom I had the conversation.*

2. A relative clause concerning persons, not restrictive of its antecedent, is usually introduced by **quien**.

**Escribo al Señor Romero, quien está en Chile.** *I am writing to Mr. Romero, who is in Chile.*

**Entregó las monedas al abogado, quien las pesó una por una.** *He handed the coins to the lawyer, who weighed them one by one.*

a. **El cual** (or **el que**) may also be used in nonrestrictive clauses.

**Pasó el gitano, el cual se paró a ver la tropa.** *The gypsy came along and stopped to see the soldiers.*

3. In indefinite expressions no antecedent is required for **quien**.

**No tengo a quien dirigirm.** *I have nobody to apply to.*

**¿ Hay quien sabe ?** *Is there anybody who knows ?*

**Quien mucho abarca poco aprieta.** *He who takes much in hand grasps feebly (or accomplishes little).*

a. In expressions corresponding to English *he who, they who the one who*, etc., **quien** may be said to include its own antecedent.

**Rodrigo fué quien acompañó a la niña.** *Roderick was the one who accompanied the girl.*

4. When the antecedent is necessarily separated from the relative, **quien** may show the correct antecedent.

**Bolívar es el héroe vencedor en Boyacá y en Carabobo quien fundó a Colombia.** *Bolívar is the hero, victor at Boyacá and Carabobo, who founded Colombia.*

NOTE. For uses 3 and 4 of **quien** the pronoun **el que** may be substituted.

**Mi reino y mis tesoros daré al que salve a mi hija.** *I will give my kingdom and my treasures to him who saves my daughter.*

5. As correlatives, **quién . . . quién** are used idiomatically as indefinite pronouns, *one . . . another*; in the plural, *some . . . others*.

**Quién** había contado los amores de Napoleón, **quién** la noche del dos de mayo en Madrid. *One had related the love affairs of Napoleon, another the night of the second of May in Madrid.*

**Los pescadores** dormían en varias actitudes, **quiénes** de bruces, **quiénes** respaldados. *The fishermen were sleeping in various positions, some face downwards, some on their backs.*

a. Note that as correlatives **quién . . . quién** bear the written accent.

167. **El cual, el que**, are employed as follows:

1. When the relative and the antecedent are separated by other words, the gender and number of the relative serves to show to which word it refers.

**Examinó** las colgaduras de la alcoba, **las cuales** eran de seda. *He examined the hangings of the bedroom, which were of silk.*

**He visto** a la hija del Señor Robledo, **la cual** está ahora en la ciudad. *I have seen Mr. Robledo's daughter, who is now in the city.*

**Don Roque**, un viejo parecido a Bismarck, **con el cual** nombre se le conocía. *Don Roque, an old man resembling Bismarck, by which name he was known.*

2. After prepositions, especially those of more than one syllable and compound prepositions; but after **a, con, de, en**, the simple relatives **que** and **quien** are more frequent.

**Tales son** las cosas sobre **las cuales** quiero su opinión. *Such are the things about which I wish your opinion.*

**Corrió** la madre a la calle, **en medio** de la cual se encontró con su hija. *The mother ran into the street, in the middle of which she met her daughter.*

**Metieron** al herido en la casa **delante** de la cual había caído. *They put the wounded man in the house in front of which he had fallen.*

**Escogieron** de los nuestros once campeones, **entre** los cuales el más célebre era Diego García de Paredes. *From our men were chosen eleven champions, among whom the most famous was Diego Garcia de Paredes.*

3. The neuter forms **lo cual**, **lo que**, refer to clauses or ideas. These should not be confused with **lo que** in the sense of *that which* or *what*.

Se le apareció el cerdo de San An-  
tón, por lo cual determinó me-  
terse a guardador de puercos.

Tal es nuestro famoso Capitán Ve-  
neno; por lo que suplico a Vd.  
tenga paciencia para aguantarlo  
algunas semanas.

Sus simpatías estuvieron por los  
partidarios de la emancipación  
americana, lo que le hizo sospe-  
choso a las autoridades españolas.

*There appeared to him St. Antho-  
ny's swine, on which account he  
decided to become a swineherd.*

*Such is our famous Captain Poi-  
son; wherefore I beg you to  
have patience to put up with  
him a few weeks.*

*His sympathies were for the parti-  
sans of American freedom, which  
made him a suspicious charac-  
ter to the Spanish authorities.*

#### But

¿Es verdad lo que oigo?

Repita Vd. lo que dijo.

Me conformaba con lo que era ley  
de la naturaleza, según el médico.

*Is that which (what) I hear true?  
Repeat what he said.*

*I complied with that which was a  
law of nature according to the  
doctor.*

a. The phrase **a lo que** means *according to*, or *as*.

a lo que me contó, *according to what he told me*

a lo que me parece, *as it seems to me*

b. **lo que es**, *as for*, *as to*.

Lo que es el tío Lucas no se marcha. *As for uncle Lucas, he does not go.*

168. **Cual** without the article is correlative with **tal**.

Tal era su conducta cual era de  
esperarse.

Tal o cual colocación.

Tal para cual.

*His conduct was such as was to  
be expected.*

*Some position or other.*

*Tit for tat.*

1. **Cuál . . . cuál**, as correlatives, mean *one . . . another*; **cuáles . . . cuáles**, *some . . . others*. See section 166, 5.

En cuanto a armas, cuál llevaba  
sable, cuál espadín de etiqueta.

Tengo muchos libros, cuáles de  
historia, cuáles de poesía.

*As for arms, one wore a saber,  
another a court rapier.*

*I have many books, some of his-  
tory, others of poetry.*

2. *Cual* also appears as a relative adverb in the sense of *as* or *like*.

**Un paje sonrosado y coloradete cual una muchacha.** *A page blushing and red as a girl.*

a. *Cual si* before clauses, *as if*; see section 112, d.

**169. Cuyo**, like other Spanish possessive adjectives, agrees in gender and number with the thing possessed.

**Los porteros, cuyo uniforme admiraba Anselmo.** *The gatekeepers, whose uniform Anselmo admired.*

**El caballero cuyas cartas ha traído Vd.** *The gentleman whose letters you have brought.*

**Un billete de lotería con cuya venta podría obtener unas cuantas piezas de cobre.** *A lottery ticket by the sale of which he might get a few coppers.*

a. When referring to the body or clothing, a *quien* as indirect object replaces *cuyo*.

**Por ella buscó un lance con el conde a quien ha roto la cabeza.** *For her sake he picked a quarrel with the count, whose head he has broken.*

**170. Cuanto** takes the gender and number of the noun to which it refers. It is equivalent to *todos los que*, *todo lo que*, etc.

**Estoy muy malo según la opinión de cuantos doctores me han visto.** *I am very ill according to the opinion of all the doctors who have seen me.*

**Le hice cuantas preguntas quise.** *I asked him all the questions that (or as many questions as) I wished.*

### EXERCISE 30

1. He gave the coins which he took from his pocket to the children. 2. The gentleman who was sitting at my right rose and shook hands with my daughter, who had come in a moment before. 3. To-day I saw my friend's daughter who has been sick. 4. The sexton locked the door near which we were standing. 5. I gave John the gold coins, who put them in his pocket. 6. We found ourselves in a handsome parlor, on whose walls was a rich



collection of paintings. 7. "Don't you see me?" said Victor, for it was he who spoke. 8. He had three dogs with which he spent a great deal of time. 9. On the table he found letters for different persons, and one whose address said, "To my dear Joseph." 10. The people were very merry: one was singing, another dancing. 11. That land I was telling you about is for sale. 12. The ladies you spoke to are Mexicans. 13. The father cried when he saw the ugly building in which his son was a prisoner. 14. A gentleman who said he would return soon has just left this card. 15. They gave prizes to all those who won them. 16. We hunted in the dictionary for all the words which we did not know. 17. The girl's mother was sick in the hospital, on which account she lived alone with her uncle. 18. Not many days ago I received a letter in which a certain friend of mine asked me for money. 19. He appeared like one who has lost his last dollar. 20. The piano which she is playing belongs to a man whose daughter has died. 21. It was Mary who selected the cloth. 22. The boy did not know his lesson, which displeased the teacher very much. 23. He promised him all the money that he had. 24. I know whom you are talking about, Guzman's wife. 25. All that I have is yours. 26. He asked the maidservant, "Was it you who rang?" 27. She answered, "It was not I who rang." 28. To you I owe all that I am. 29. The servant under (a) whose care he was gave him a glass of water. 30. To-day should arrive here the first regiment of infantry, which spent the night in Gerona. 31. He had written several works, in which he treated political questions. 32. His son was Philip the Second, on whose realms the sun never set. 33. One more, another less, all dream of the probability of great wealth. 34. It is all that I have to tell you. 35. He who distributes the letters to the houses is called the postman. 36. We were very busy on the day when he came. 37. The prisoner saw the daughter of the Moorish governor, of whose beauty he had heard.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> tenía noticias.

## CHAPTER IX

### INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

171. ¿quién? <i>who?</i>	¿qué? <i>what?</i>
¿a quién? <i>whom?</i>	¿cuál? <i>which? what?</i>
¿de quién? <i>whose?</i>	¿cuánto? <i>how much?</i>

a. The interrogatives require the written accent to distinguish them from the relatives.

172. **Quién** (**quiénes**) refers only to persons.

¿Quién es Vd.?	<i>Who are you?</i>
¿Sabe quién soy?	<i>Do you know who I am?</i>
¡Ahí están! — ¿Quiénes?	<i>There they are! — Who?</i>

1. Its objective case is a **quién**.

¿A quién hablaba?	<i>To whom was he talking?</i>
¿A quiénes vió Vd.?	<i>Whom did you see?</i>

2. Its possessive case is **de quién**.

¿De quién es aquella casa?	<i>Whose house is that?</i>
----------------------------	-----------------------------

a. The phrase **de quién** is seldom used except in the predicate after *ser*.

¿De quién es la casa que habita Vd.?	<i>Whose house do you live in?</i>
--------------------------------------	------------------------------------

b. The form **cúyo** was formerly used as an interrogative, but is now obsolescent. ¿Cúyo es el perro? *Whose dog is it?* Better ¿De quién es el perro?

c. Many English expressions containing *whose* will be rendered by the indirect object.

¿A quién compró Vd. el caballo?	<i>Whose horse did you buy? more strictly From whom did you buy the horse?</i>
---------------------------------	--

173. Qué is invariable and may be used either as an adjective or as a pronoun.

¿ Qué dice ?	<i>What does he say ?</i>
¿ Qué libro tiene Vd. ?	<i>What book have you ?</i>

174. Cuál (cuáles) indicates choice.

¿ Cuál es la fecha ?	<i>What is the date ?</i>
¿ Cuáles son los meses del año ?	<i>What are the months of the year ?</i>
¿ Cuál de los libros prefiere Vd. ?	<i>Which of the books do you prefer ?</i>
¿ Cuál de ustedes le ha visto ?	<i>Which of you have seen him ?</i>

a. Qué in contrast with cuál calls for a definition.

¿ Qué es la geografía ?	<i>What is geography ?</i>
¿ Cuál es la mejor geografía ?	<i>Which is the best geography ?</i>

b. Though cuál may be used as an adjective, it is preferable to use it only as a pronoun: not ¿ Cuáles amigos vienen ? but ¿ Cuáles de los amigos vienen ? *Which friends are coming ?*

175. Cuánto (cuánta, -os, -as).

¿ Cuánto vale ?	<i>How much is it worth ?</i>
¿ Cuánto cuesta ?	<i>How much does it cost ?</i>
¿ Cuántos libros tiene la biblioteca ?	<i>How many books has the library ?</i>
¿ Cuántas señoras hay ?	<i>How many ladies are there ?</i>

176. Interrogative idioms worthy of note are —

1. ¿ Qué tal ?	<i>What kind of ?</i>
¿ Qué tal cuarto le dieron a Vd. ?	<i>What sort of room did they give you ?</i>
¿ Qué tales son las flores ?	<i>What kind of flowers are they ?</i>
a. Perhaps more common in the same sense is ¿ qué clase de ?	
¿ Qué clase de hombre es el marqués ?	<i>What kind of a man is the marquis ?</i>
¿ Qué clase de gente hay aquí ?	<i>What sort of people are there here ?</i>

NOTE. ¿ Qué tal ? is also used as a familiar greeting: *Hello*, or more courteously, ¿ Qué tal sigue Vd. ? *How are you getting on ?*

2. ¿ Qué cosa ? in place of simple qué.	
¿ Qué cosa quiere ?	<i>What does he want ?</i>

3. ¿A qué? *for what purpose? why?*  
 ¿A qué estas notas lúgubres? *Why these mournful notes?*  
 ¿A qué viene esta orden? *For what purpose is this order?*
4. ¿Qué tanto? in place of cuánto.  
 ¿Qué tanto dista el pueblo? *How far is the town?*

177. Exclamations. 1. ¡Qué! is used in exclamations,

(i) Before nouns with the meaning of *what* or *what a*, without the indefinite article:

- ¡Qué suerte! *What luck!*  
 ¡Qué hombre! *What a man!*

a. When an adjective modifies the noun, **tan** or **más** may intensify the adjective.

- ¡Qué niña tan guapa! *What a pretty girl!*  
 ¡Qué pies tan fríos! *What cold feet!*  
 ¡Qué tinta más mala! *What poor ink!*

(ii) Before adjectives or adverbs with the meaning of *how*:

- ¡Qué bueno es Vd. ! *How good you are!*  
 ¡Qué mal habla! *How badly he speaks!*

2. ¡Qué de . . . ! before nouns means *how many*.

- ¡Qué de pobres hay! *How many poor there are!*

3. ¡Cuánto! is shortened to **cuán** before adjectives and adverbs, but not before comparatives, verbs or nouns.

- ¡Cuánto sabe! *How much he knows!*  
 ¡Cuántas cosas le diría! *How many things I would tell you!*  
 ¡Cuán dichosa es ella! *How fortunate she is!*  
 ¡Cuánto más dichosa es su hermana! *How much happier is her sister!*  
 ¡Cuán lejos le parecía todo! *How far away everything seemed to him!*

a. Lo que is sometimes used for cuánto.

- ¡Si él supiera lo que le quiero! *(I wish) he knew how much I love him!*  
 ¡Lo que nos divertiremos! *What a good time we shall have!*

**EXERCISE 31**

1. Who are you? 2. What have you? 3. Whose is it? 4. What is that? 5. Which pencil have you? 6. How much is it worth? 7. How many have you? 8. To whom were you talking? 9. Which door is open? 10. What time was it? 11. What a very lucky man! 12. Who is that young man? 13. Whose hat has John? 14. How happy they are! 15. With whom have they lived? 16. Which are my books and which are yours? 17. What is the price? 18. Which do you wish? 19. What kind of a dog is it? 20. What kind of a book do you want? 21. What do you want for it? 22. For whom are these letters? 23. One of these packages, I don't know which, is for you. 24. Is it true what he says? 25. What is the way to (de) Cádiz? 26. What are you talking about? 27. Which street is the station on? 28. What kind of meat will you have? 29. We have all kinds of books. Which will you have? 30. What vegetables are there on the bill of fare? 31. Have they told you what he has done? 32. Do you know who that gentleman is? 33. What language do you speak? 34. What kind of money do you want? 35. How many five-cent stamps do you want? 36. How much does he charge? 37. Whom do you think I met last night? My friend from Córdoba. 38. Whom are you waiting for? 39. How many plans! How many calculations! 40. What day was that? 41. How glad I am! 42. Tell me, which one gave me these flowers? 43. How horrible all this is! 44. How easy it is to give advice!

## CHAPTER X

### INDEFINITE EXPRESSIONS

**178. Indefinites.** The Spanish indefinite pronouns and adjectives are

<b>alguien</b> , <i>somebody, anybody</i>	<b>nadie</b> , <i>nobody</i>
<b>alguno</b> , <i>some, any</i>	<b>ninguno</b> , <i>no, none</i>
<b>algo</b> , <i>something, anything</i>	<b>nada</b> , <i>nothing</i>
<b>cosa</b> , <i>thing</i>	<b>otra cosa</b> , <i>something else</i>
<b>mucho</b> , <i>much</i>	<b>poco</b> , <i>little</i> ; <b>un poco</b> , <i>a little</i>
<b>muchos</b> , <i>many</i>	<b>pocos</b> , <i>few</i> ; <b>algunos</b> , <i>a few</i>
<b>unos</b> , <i>some, a pair</i>	<b>unos cuantos</b> , <i>a few</i>
<b>uno y otro</b> , <i>both</i>	<b>uno u otro</b> , <i>either</i>
<b>ambos</b> , <i>los dos</i> , <i>both</i>	<b>ni uno ni otro</b> , <i>neither</i>
<b>otro</b> , <i>another</i>	<b>el otro</b> , <i>the other</i> ; <b>los demás</b> , <i>the others</i>
<b>alguno que otro</b> , <i>occasional</i>	<b>ajeno</b> , <i>another's, others'</i>
<b>cada</b> , <i>each</i>	<b>cada uno</b> } <i>each one</i>
<b>todo</b> , <i>every, all</i>	<b>cada cual</b> }
<b>tal</b> , <i>such</i>	<b>un tal</b> , <i>a certain</i> ; <b>el tal</b> , <i>the said</i>

These words may be conveniently studied from the English point of view as in the following sections.

**179. Some — Any — No — Not A.** 1. The absence of the definite article before a noun denoting substances implies a part of the substance.

¿ Tiene Vd. pan ?	<i>Have you any bread ?</i>
¿ Quiere Vd. legumbres ?	<i>Do you wish some vegetables ?</i>

a. The negative of the above is expressed by the negative verb.

<b>No tengo pan.</b>	<i>I have no bread.</i>
<b>No quiero legumbres.</b>	<i>I do not wish any vegetables.</i>

2. **Alguno**, *some*; **ninguno**, *no*; or **no . . . alguno** (after the noun).

**Algún día.**

*Some day.*

**Ningún hombre.**

*No man.*

**No veo hombre alguno.**

*I see no man; or I don't see a single man.*

3. **Unos**, *some*; more indefinite than **algunos**; often of things in pairs.

**Unos ojos muy grandes.**

*A pair of very large eyes.*

**Unos pantalones.**

*A pair of trousers.*

4. **Lo, la, los, las**, before **hay** and other verbs expressing partitive ideas as in 1, signify *some*.

¿ **Hay manzanas?** **Sí, las hay en la mesa.**

*Are there any apples? Yes, there are some on the table.*

¿ **Tiene Vd. pan?** **Lo tengo.**

*Have you any bread? I have some.*

**Con su señora (los que la tenían).**

*With their wives (those who had one).*

5. **Alguno que otro** and **uno que otro** mean *occasional, some or other*.

**Alguno que otro pretexto.**

*Some pretext or other.*

**Alguna que otra mirada.**

*An occasional glance.*

**Mi vapor hace la carrera de América sólo una que otra vez.**

*My steamer goes to America only occasionally.*

180. **Some of — None of.**

**Algunos de mis amigos.**

*Some of my friends.*

**Ninguno (ningunos) de los libros.**

*Not one (none) of the books.*

181. **Somebody — Nobody.**

**Alguien viene.**

*Somebody is coming.*

**Nadie sabe.**

*Nobody knows.*

*a.* **Alguien** and **nadie** cannot be used before limiting prepositional phrases as in section 180.

182. **Something — Nothing, algo — nada.**

**Más vale algo que nada.**

*Something is better than nothing.*

See section 210, 3, for adverbial use.

*a.* **Alguna cosa** and **una cosa** are used for *something*, **ninguna cosa** for *nothing*, in some expressions.

¿ Quiere Vd. que le diga una cosa ? *Do you wish me to tell you something ?*

NOTE. When **ninguno**, **nadie**, or **nada** or any other negative is used after the verb, it is necessary to put **no** before it. See section 212, 2.

No tengo nada	}	<i>I have nothing.</i>
Nada tengo		
No conozco a nadie.		<i>I know nobody.</i>
Nadie me conoce.		<i>Nobody knows me.</i>
No ha adquirido ninguna cosa.		<i>He has purchased nothing.</i>

### 183. Else.

Otra cosa.	<i>Something else.</i>
Nada más.	<i>Nothing else.</i>

### 184. Much — Many, mucho, muchos.

Mucho azúcar.	<i>Much sugar.</i>
Muchos hombres.	<i>Many men.</i>

*a.* *Very much* is **muchísimo**.

*b.* Similar to English *a great deal*, *plenty*, etc. are such expressions as the following :

<i>gran parte:</i> Fusilaron a gran parte de personajes influyentes.	<i>They executed many influential persons.</i>
<i>gran número:</i> En el Congreso se ha notado la ausencia de gran número de diputados.	<i>In the Congress was observed the absence of many members.</i>
<i>una porción de:</i> El chico dió a Juan una porción de golpes.	<i>The boy gave John plenty of blows.</i>

### 185. Little — Few, poco, pocos.

<i>a little,</i>	un poco de
<i>a few</i>	{ algunos
	{ unos cuantos
	{ un par de ( <i>couple</i> )
	{ cuatro (see section 149, 3)

poca leche, <i>little milk</i>	algunas palabras, <i>a few words</i>
pocas naranjas, <i>few oranges</i>	unos cuantos limones, <i>a few lemons</i>
un poco de dinero, <i>a little money</i>	un par de horas, <i>a couple of hours</i>



a. *A little* as an adverb is more frequently *un poquito*: **Hablo español un poquito, I speak Spanish a little.**

**186. Both, ambos, los dos, las dos, uno y otro.**

<b>Ambas manos.</b>	<i>Both hands.</i>
<b>Traiga Vd. pescado para los dos.</b>	<i>Bring fish for (us) both.</i>
<b>Uno y otro sexo.</b>	<i>Both sexes.</i>

a. For *both . . . and*, as correlatives, see section 236.

**187. Either . . . Neither, uno u otro, ni uno ni otro**, and their declined forms.

<b>Uno u otro puede venir.</b>	<i>Either may come.</i>
<b>No saben la verdad ni uno ni otro.</b>	<i>Neither knows the truth.</i>

a. For the number of the verb see section 261, d.  
 b. *Neither . . . nor*, as correlatives, *ni . . . ni*; *either . . . or*, *o . . . o*; see section 236.

**188. Other.**

- El otro, the other.**
- Otro, another** (always without the indefinite article): **otra vez, another time, again, encore.**
- Los demás, the others** (i.e. the remainder).

<b>Cuando mi padre salió del cuarto,</b>	<i>When my father left the room,</i>
<b>los demás me hicieron muchas preguntas.</b>	<i>the others asked me many questions.</i>

- Ajeno, another's, other's.**  
**en casa ajena, in another's house**      **lo ajeno, other people's property**

- With numerals and adjectives of quantity, **otro** precedes.  

<b>Otros diez.</b>	<i>Ten others.</i>
<b>Otro tanto.</b>	<i>As much more.</i>
<b>Otros muchos.</b>	<i>As many others.</i>
<b>Van cuatro o cinco señoras y otras tantas señoritas.</b>	<i>Four or five ladies are going and as many misses.</i>

**189. Each : cada** (invariable).

Cada uno or cada cual.

*Each one.*

Cada uno de nosotros.

*Each one of us.*

Callamos, quedando cada cual con sus ideas.

*We were silent, each one having his own ideas.*

**190. Each Other.** This idea is expressed by the plural of the reflexive verb. (See section 257 for conjugation.)

Nos veremos.

*We shall see each other.*

Se odian.

*They hate each other.*

By adding **uno y otro**, **uno a otro**, **uno de otro**, and the declined forms (also with the definite article, **el uno el otro**), great precision may be obtained.

Se temen el uno al otro.

*They fear each other (one man another).*

Se aman unos a otras.

*They love each other (men and women).*

No se recuerdan la una de la otra.

*They do not remember each other (one woman another).***191. Every.** 1. **Todo** (without article): **toda mujer**, *every woman*.

2. In expressions of time with the article and plural: **todos los sábados**, *every Saturday*; **todas las noches**, *every night*.

3. In phrases expressing frequency **cada** is used.

cada diez minutos, *every ten minutes*cada dos horas, *every two hours*4. **Todo el mundo**, *everybody*.

a. Before a relative, **todo** alone: **todo el que cae en nuestro poder**, *everybody who falls into our power*.

5. **Todo** (neuter), *everything*.

a. When **todo** is the direct object of a verb, **lo** before the verb indicates it: **Mi padre lo perdió todo**, *My father lost everything*.

**192. All : todo** (with the definite article between it and the noun).todo el día, *all day*toda la casa, *the whole house*todos los señores, *all the men*todo Madrid, *all Madrid*

**193. Such :** *tal* (without the indefinite article), *semejante*.

Tal día como hoy.	<i>Such a day as to-day.</i>
Tales son las cosas.	<i>Such are the things.</i>
Semejante disparate.	<i>Such a blunder.</i>
No he visto a semejante hombre.	<i>I have not seen such a man (as he).</i>

**194. A Certain.** 1. *Cierto* (without the indefinite article): *cierto hombre, a certain man.*

2. *Un tal García, a certain García, one García.*

3. *No sé qué* (lit. *I do not know what*): *no sé qué día de agosto, on a certain day in August.*

**195. The Said :** *el tal, dicho, referido.*

<i>el tal López, the said Lopez</i>	<i>las referidas madre e hija, the said</i>
<i>la tal comedia, the said comedy</i>	<i>mother and daughter</i>
<i>dicho príncipe, the said prince</i>	

**196. Indefinite Subject.** When the doer of an action is indefinite, Spanish uses —

1. The reflexive verb. (See section 272.)

2. The third person plural of the verb.

<i>Dicen.</i>	<i>They say.</i>
<i>Llaman a la puerta.</i>	<i>There is a knock at the door.</i>

3. *Uno*; sometimes *persona*, in the negative; less frequently, *hombre* and *gente*.

<i>En un instante puede uno coger una gran rama de violetas.</i>	<i>In a moment one can gather a big bunch of violets.</i>
<i>¿ No te acuerdas de uno que tenía un estanco en la calle de Peregrinos ?</i>	<i>Don't you remember a man who had a tobacco shop in Peregrinos Street ?</i>
<i>No quedó persona a vida.</i>	<i>Nobody remained alive.</i>
<i>Llegar hombre a casa y no poder subir a su cuarto, no es cosa de risa para gente cansada.</i>	<i>For a man to reach home and not be able to get into his room is no joke for a tired person.</i>

4. Whenever a fictitious name is preferable, as John Doe, or Mr. or Miss So-and-so, Spanish uses **fulano**, **Don Fulano de Tal**, **mengano**, or **zutano**.

**Fulano y zutana han preguntado por Vd.**      *Mr. So-and-so and Miss So-and-so have inquired for you.*

197. Ever joined to adverbs and pronouns is **quiera**, present subjunctive of **querer**.

1. **Dondequiera que iba**, *wherever he used to go.*

2. **Quienquiera que sea**, *whoever it may be.*

3. **Cualquiera (cualesquiera)**, *any* in sense that does not require negation, *any you please.*

**Es un modo de vivir como otro cualquiera.**      *It is a way of earning one's living like any other.*

**Cualquiera de los dos.**      *Either one of the two.*

a. As an adjective **cualquiera** may drop the final vowel before a noun.  
**cualquier día**, *any day*      **de cualquier modo**, *in some fashion*

b. **un cualquiera**, *a person of no account, a nobody.*

The plural of this expression is **unos cualquiera**s.

### EXERCISE 32

1. Have you any money? Very little. 2. We have no Spanish books. 3. I wish some white paper and black ink. 4. I am going to buy some good trousers. 5. No woman knows. 6. There is something which I do not understand. 7. Somebody is knocking at the door. 8. It is none of my acquaintances. 9. Some of the Frenchmen rose. 10. It is nothing. 11. Has anybody come? No, nobody. 12. Many are called but few are chosen. 13. I bought a few pounds of meat and some vegetables. 14. I will take a little black coffee. 15. We had neither ink nor paper. 16. Neither has come, because both are sick. 17. After these letters, I received four others and wrote as many more. 18. He sang the same song many other nights. 19. He opened the windows and rested both elbows on the sill. 20. Every afternoon I walk for a couple of

hours. 21. Mother and son embrace each other. 22. We have much to say to each other. 23. The gentlemen do not know each other. 24. None of the girls understood all that they read. 25. Everybody says it; nobody knows if it is true. 26. He thinks that he knows everything. 27. Such a thing has never been seen.<sup>1</sup> 28. There are no such books in the library. 29. Every boy is here, none is absent. 30. He has not slept all<sup>2</sup> night. 31. A certain gentleman used to come here every Monday. 32. A certain Suárez came to see me. 33. The said Suárez was another acquaintance of mine. 34. On a certain day of<sup>3</sup> last month there arrived letters for each one of them. 35. Where can one find a good restaurant? There is one on Burgos street. 36. Some one is ringing the bell. Some huckster, I suppose.<sup>4</sup> 37. Where are there some sheets for the bed, Mary? There are some in the closet. 38. Are there any pillow-cases there? There are some also. 39. That is luck and nothing else. 40. Either of these books will be useful to anybody who is studying Spanish. 41. Other people's money does not interest me. 42. Each boy has his own seat. 43. A large part of the audience remained standing, but the rest sat down. 44. I met our friend So-and-so this morning. He knows nothing of what has occurred. 45. Every one who reads Spanish knows something about Cervantes' Don Quixote. 46. I have read to-day's paper without finding anything about the marriage. 47. Have you anything pretty in your store? 48. He does not owe anything to anybody.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> jamás se ha visto.

<sup>3</sup> del.

<sup>2</sup> Insert *en* before *all*.

<sup>4</sup> será. See section 266.

<sup>5</sup> Say *nothing to nobody*.

## CHAPTER XI

### PERSONAL PRONOUNS

**198. Methods of Address.** 1. The forms of the second person singular are used in addressing members of the family, intimate friends, children, or pet animals. Foreign speakers will always use **usted** with the third person singular of the verb, as this is the form employed by persons who desire to be courteous to each other.

*a. Usted* is derived from **vuestra merced**, *your grace*. Other similar forms are **Usía**, used in addressing magistrates, lower officers of the army, etc.; **Vuecencia**, to ambassadors, members of the king's cabinet, etc. The different degrees of nobility also have their proper form of address or **tratamiento**.

2. The second plural, **vosotros**, is primarily the plural of **tú**; but it is sometimes employed in addressing persons collectively, who singly would be addressed by **usted**: for example, in public speeches, in friendly letters addressed to two or more persons, and in public advertisements.

**Vosotros, hijos de la Revolución,** *You, sons of the Revolution, are*  
**venís a España.** *coming to Spain.*

*a.* The older form **vos**, instead of **vosotros**, is still found in prayers, or in literature to represent ancient manners.

**Vos, Señor, que sacasteis de la nada** *You, Lord, that drew this world*  
**este mundo.** *from chaos.*

**¡Eh! Maestro . . . vos os burláis.** *Ah! Master, you are jesting.*

*b.* **Nos** for **nosotros** is used by sovereigns and magistrates, and in religious forms.

**Nos el rey.** *We the king.*

**199. It.** 1. As the subject of a verb, *it* is usually unnecessary in Spanish: **lueve**, *it is raining*. When necessary, *it* will be the

masculine **él** or the feminine **ella**, according to the gender of the noun represented. Referring to an idea, *it* is neuter (section 206).

2. Instead of *it* after a preposition, adverbs of place are sometimes found.

**Le dió una cajita. Allí miró la joven esposa con asombro.** *He gave her a little box. The young wife looked at it with surprise.*

a. This use of adverbs of place is also extended to persons.

**Se me echa encima.** *He throws himself on me.*  
**De pronto se me puso delante.** *Suddenly he stood before me.*

**200. Le — Lo — La — Les.** The objective pronouns of the third person singular are used somewhat indiscriminately by some writers.

1. **Le** may be the direct object form referring to things.

**No hay lazo alguno que conmigo te ligue; y si le hay, yo le desato y le rompo.** *There is no bond that binds you to me; and if there is any, I unbind it and break it.*

2. **La** and **las** may be the indirect object feminine.

**Cuando la visité, estaba allí su primo y nada la dije.** *When I visited her, her cousin was there and I said nothing to her.*

a. **La** and **las** are the proper forms for use with the reflexive verb when used impersonally. See section 273.

**Se la admira.** *One admires her; or, She is admired.*  
**Se las ve venir.** *They are seen coming.*

3. **Les** may be direct object plural referring to persons.

**Les forzaba a partir la poca seguridad de la playa.** *The insecurity of the beach compelled them to depart.*  
**¡Pobrecitos niños! Todo el mundo sabe que les adoro.** *Poor children! Everybody knows that I adore them.*

NOTE. The student should not imitate the constructions described in this section, but should be guided by the following :

le	{	<i>him</i> or <i>you</i> , direct and indirect object masculine	<b>la</b> , <i>her</i> , direct object feminine
		<i>to her</i> , indirect object feminine	<b>les</b> , <i>to them</i> , indirect object masculine and feminine
	{	<i>to her</i> , indirect object feminine	
		<i>it</i> or <i>him</i> , direct object masculine	<b>los</b> , <i>them</i> , direct object masculine

**201. Indefinite Feminine.** The feminine of pronouns often has indefinite force. The form most frequently occurring is *la*.

Ese hombre <i>la</i> echa de gracioso.	<i>That man pretends to be funny.</i>
<i>La</i> (or <i>las</i> ) pagará.	<i>He will pay for it (that is, get his punishment).</i>
¡ Buena <i>la</i> hicimos !	<i>We gave it to them good.</i>
Entonces será <i>ella</i> .	<i>Then will come the pinch.</i>
En éstas y en otras llegamos a <i>Manresa</i> .	<i>In the meantime we reached Manresa.</i>
Ellos harán de <i>las</i> tuyas.	<i>They will play some of their tricks.</i>

**202. The Prepositional Forms** of the personal pronouns are the only ones which can be used with verbs that require a preposition before the direct object.

El café está en <i>la</i> plaza, y en <i>él</i> entramos a refrescarnos.	<i>The café is on the square, and we entered it for refreshment.</i>
Se casó con <i>ella</i> .	<i>He married her.</i>
No me acuerdo de <i>él</i> .	<i>I do not remember him.</i>
<i>Ella</i> , al reparar en mí, irguió altivamente <i>la</i> cabeza.	<i>When she noticed me, she raised her head haughtily.</i>

*a.* The prepositional forms are often called *disjunctive*, because they are not directly dependent on the verb.

**203. Redundant Pronoun.** Whenever the pronouns *le*, *les*, or *se* are vague in meaning, they may be made definite by the employment of the disjunctive (prepositional) forms.

Le llama a <i>Vd.</i>	<i>He is calling you.</i>
Les enviaremos a ellos <i>las</i> tarjetas.	<i>We shall send the cards to them.</i>
Se <i>las</i> entregó a <i>ella</i> .	<i>He delivered them to her.</i>

1. For the sake of emphasis or contrast, the same construction is frequent with the other personal pronouns.

Esas cosas me hacen más daño a mí que a ti.	<i>Those things hurt me more than you.</i>
A mí me gusta viajar pero a mi madre no <i>le</i> gusta.	<i>I like to travel, but my mother does not like to.</i>



2. This double-pronoun construction has been extended to nouns. Whenever for emphasis the direct or indirect object precedes the verb, the corresponding pronoun is also usually employed.

Le envió a éste un regalo.	<i>He sent the latter a present.</i>
A las señoras les mandó ramos de flores.	<i>To the ladies he sent bouquets of flowers.</i>
La primera muñeca que tuve me la dió él.	<i>The first doll that I had he gave me.</i>
Eso te lo habría dicho tu tía.	<i>Your aunt probably told you that.</i>

a. The neuter indefinite pronoun **todo**, when the object of a verb, must always be represented by **lo**.

Mi padre lo sabe todo.	<i>My father knows all.</i>
Quiero confesárselo todo.	<i>I wish to confess everything to you.</i>
Frutas, flores, montes, lagos, ríos, todo lo había en esta tierra bendita.	<i>Fruits, flowers, mountains, lakes, rivers, there was everything in this happy land.</i>

**204. Ethical Dative.** There is sometimes used a redundant pronoun, indirect object form, of the same person and number as the subject. It appears to give a slight degree of emphasis to the person.

Me lo comeré.	<i>I shall eat it.</i>
Me la he encontrado muriéndose.	<i>I found her dying.</i>
Hemos sacado a esa niña del convento y nos la llevamos a Madrid.	<i>We have taken that girl from the convent and are escorting her to Madrid.</i>

**205. Mismo** lends emphasis to a personal pronoun like the English *self*. When **mismo** emphasizes the subject, the pronoun must be expressed.

Él mismo salió a recibirme.	<i>He himself came out to receive me.</i>
Lo haré yo mismo.	<i>I shall do it myself.</i>
Prometí a mis amigos volver pronto y a mí mismo hacer la visita definitiva.	<i>I promised my friends that I would return soon, and to myself that I would make the visit the last.</i>

a. **Propio**, *own*, also intensifies a noun or pronoun :

Mis propias manos.	<i>My own hands.</i>
El propio rey lo hizo.	<i>The king himself did it.</i>
Por sí propio (or mismo).	<i>On one's own account.</i>

**206. Neuter Pronouns.** 1. The neuter pronoun has the forms

SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT	INDIRECT OBJECT	PREPOSITIONAL
ello	lo	le	ello

2. As subject the neuter pronoun is found mainly in the expression *ello es* (or *fué*) *que*.

**Ello es que no sabemos nada de lo que hace.** *The fact is that we do not know anything of what he does.*

3. The neuter forms refer to phrases or ideas without gender.

¿ Cree Vd. lo que dice? Ya lo creo. *Do you believe what he says? I surely do believe it.*

¿ Qué mal hay en ello? *What harm is there in it?*  
**Son las seis de la tarde. Lo ha dicho el reloj de la catedral.** *It is six o'clock in the afternoon. The cathedral clock has said it.*

**Cierta mujer en traje de baile.** *A certain woman in evening dress.*

¿ Quién era? Lo ignorábamos. *Who was she? We did not know.*

**Comió demasiado. Por ello tuvo que sufrir una indigestión.** *He ate too much. On that account he had an attack of indigestion.*

4. After the verb *ser*, in the predicate, *lo* refers to the whole phrase rather than to a single word. In such cases no word appears necessary in English; consequently, the student must be careful to employ the pronoun *lo* when required by Spanish usage.

¿ Son huérfanas? Lo son. *Are the girls orphans? They are.*  
**Irene fué una Venus, es decir, lo fué más tarde.** *Irene was a Venus; that is, she was later.*

a. Sometimes the English word corresponding to *lo* is *so*.

**Parece viejo sin serlo.** *He seems old without being so.*  
**No bien deseaba una cosa (a veces sin decirlo), me lo proporcionaba.** *No sooner did I desire a thing, sometimes without saying so, than he got it for me.*

b. If the pronoun refers to a definite person it takes the gender and number of the noun to which it refers or may be omitted.

¿ Es Vd. la señora de González? *Are you Mrs. González? I am,*  
**Para servir a Vd., la soy.** *at your service.*

5. Whenever a second verb in a clause refers to a foregoing predicate noun, adjective, or adverb, it is customary to insert **lo**.

**Si tal o cual recibo es falso o no lo es.** *If such and such a receipt is false or not.*

6. Instead of repeating a verb, one may substitute **hacer** and the neuter **lo**.

**Todos examinaron el bicho, y yo después también lo hice.** *All examined the bug, and afterwards I too did so.*

**Ella me invitó a sentarme en el sofá y lo hizo también.** *She invited me to sit on the sofa, and she did so too.*

**207. Position.** The remarks about the position of the personal pronouns (sections 81 ; 68, a ; 91) require the following additions :

1. As a matter of style an unemphatic pronoun rarely begins a sentence except in conversation, but is appended to the verb.

**Servíalo en silencio.** *She served him in silence.*

**Abriéronse las iglesias.** *The churches were opened.*

2. When several verbs occur in series, if one of them has a pronoun it is appended to the verb.

**Sacó papel del bolsillo, redactó una carta, púsole el sobre, pególo y echóse a reír.** *He took paper from his pocket, composed a letter, put it in an envelope, sealed it, and began to laugh.*

3. The pronoun may be attached to the auxiliary of a compound verb, but never to the past participle, though this is found in older writers and occasionally even now.

**Habíanos visto.** *He had seen us.*

**Siente haberle expuesto a perder la vida.** *She regrets having exposed you to lose your life.*

**Después de haberla leído y hechote cruces.** *After having read it and crossed yourself.*

4. With the verbs **poder, querer, deber, ir, salir, volver a, haber de**, and other similar verbal expressions, the pronoun may stand before the auxiliary verb or be attached to the dependent infinitive.

**Se lo puedo enviar a Vd. }  
Puedo enviárselo a Vd. }** *I can send it to you.*

¿ Me quiere Vd. vender la casa ?	} Will you sell me the house ?
¿ Quiere Vd. venderme la casa ?	
Les vuelvo a suplicar.	} I beg you again.
Inclinó la frente. Pronto volvió a alzarla.	} He bowed his forehead. Soon he raised it again.
¿ Dónde se ha de colocar Eduardo ?	} Where is Edward to put himself ?
La niña no ha de negarme la obediencia.	} The girl shall not refuse me obedience.

5. In the progressive (periphrastic) conjugation (see section 258), the pronouns may stand before the auxiliary or be attached to it or to the present participle.

La costa se iba alejando	} The coast kept getting farther away.
Íbase alejando la costa	
La costa iba alejándose	

## EXERCISE 33

1. This is a large house and many people live in it. 2. My daughters also like very much to go to the theater. 3. You may believe that<sup>1</sup> now, but you may change your ideas. 4. Does that price suit you? Yes, it suits me very well. 5. O! Valencia! I never found anything comparable to it. 6. This book I dedicate to my parents. 7. He wished to send to the hotel for my valise; finally I consented to it. 8. The fact is that I should not have bought myself this fur coat. 9. Nobody could be more satisfied than I was. 10. He was only happy when he was talking, and he did it very well. 11. The only business that had turned out well was the steamer business, and that he had inherited from his father. 12. They have also told me that his uncle and aunt are rich; but they are not. 13. If my brother-in-law should not marry, that title would be for my son: Isabella the First herself gave it. 14. But I was happy, I could not conceal it. 15. On hearing me, he turned around and pushed the cash drawer to close it. 16. Generally he listened to nobody but himself. 17. You may count on me; I will

<sup>1</sup> Put first in sentence. See section 203, 2.

be there. 18. It was now nine o'clock, as I ascertained by<sup>1</sup> my watch. 19. I am going to tell him that you have arrived. 20. Tell him that I hoped to have met him at the station. 21. The fact was that the train arrived two hours late.<sup>2</sup> 22. When the poor man cut the bread his knife struck<sup>3</sup> a coin which was inside it. 23. That fellow thinks<sup>4</sup> he is handsome. 24. All confessed that Robert was brave when it was necessary to be so. 25. She loved him more than he did<sup>5</sup> her. 26. Pepita loved D. Gumersindo as the man to whom she owed everything. 27. Is the man rich? I do not think so myself; if he is, he must be a miser. 28. I have heard the name but I cannot remember it. If I could do so, I would tell it to you. 29. The coins are mine and I am going to prove it, I tell you again, the old man shouted to those who were in front of him. 30. It seems difficult to do this but it is not. 31. Many things attracted the good man's<sup>6</sup> attention and he tried to see most of them during his short visit. 32. To his wife he brought a diamond ring, and to his daughters he gave presents of money. They said so themselves. 33. There are things which one knows without having seen them. 34. Soldiers, you owe it to yourselves, to your families, to your country, to bear yourselves as brave men. 35. Having dressed myself hurriedly, I forgot to put it on. 36. Henry asked<sup>7</sup> Prieto and Co. for<sup>8</sup> a position and they have promised it to him. 37. Hereupon he took out one of the telegrams which he had received and read it to them. — I am glad of it. 38. My dear brother and sister, I thank you a thousand times for the present. You know yourselves what a pleasure it gives to receive such a reminder.

<sup>1</sup> en.      <sup>2</sup> con dos horas de retraso.      <sup>3</sup> dar con.      <sup>4</sup> See section 201.

<sup>5</sup> Omit.      <sup>6</sup> Indirect object; put first in the sentence.      <sup>7</sup> solicitar.

## CHAPTER XII

### ADVERBS

#### 208. Adverbs of Place.

aquí	} <i>here</i>	abajo, <i>down</i>
acá		arriba, <i>up</i>
ahí, <i>there</i> (near the person addressed)		cerca, <i>near</i>
		lejos, <i>far</i>
allá	} <i>there</i> (at a distance), <i>yonder</i>	donde, <i>where</i>
allí		enfrente, <i>opposite</i>
adentro, <i>within</i>	} (implying movement)	dentro, <i>inside</i>
afuera, <i>without</i>		fuera, <i>outside, out of doors</i>
adelante, <i>forward</i>		delante, <i>in front</i>
atrás, <i>backwards</i>		detrás, <i>behind</i>
	Interrogative,	dónde, <i>where</i>

a. Aquí and allí are more precise and defined, while acá and allá have a more general meaning: *Tengo el dinero aquí en el bolsillo, I have the money here in my pocket*; acá would be incorrect in this sentence.

Allí implies a definite spot, while allá denotes distant places: *allá en Cuba, there in Cuba*; allá, the invisible world; acá, this world.

Acá is frequently used with venir: *Ven acá, Come here*.

With estar, acá refers to the house in which one is speaking or writing: *Acá todos estamos bien, We are all well here*.

Note also *Tráe acá, Bring (it) here*.

Acá denotes present time, allá the remote past; *de ayer acá, now*; *allá en el siglo de oro, then in the golden age*.

b. Aquí, acá, allí, allá, and ahí may be preceded by prepositions and followed by other adverbs of place.

de allí a poco, <i>a short time from then, thereafter</i>	por ahí, <i>near you, that way</i>
de allí en adelante, <i>henceforward</i>	allá arriba, <i>up there</i>
por aquí, <i>around here, in this direction</i>	allí fuera, <i>outside, out there</i>
	aquí dentro, <i>in here</i>

c. Adverbs of direction are preceded by the preposition **hacia** after verbs of motion.

**Viene hacia aquí.**

*He is coming this way.*

**Cayó hacia atrás.**

*He fell backwards.*

**Marcharon hacia adelante.**

*They marched forward.*

**Mirando hacia arriba.**

*Looking upward.*

d. The neuter article combines with adverbs of place in numerous expressions.

**lo de atrás, the rear**

**lo de delante atrás, hind side fore-**

**lo de arriba abajo, upside down**

**most**

e. Parte forms adverbial phrases equivalent to English compounds with *where*; these are preceded by different prepositions according to sense.

**Dios está en todas partes.**

*God is everywhere.*

**Lo busqué por todas partes.**

*I searched for it everywhere.*

**No vamos a ninguna parte.**

*We are not going anywhere.*

f. The interrogative **dónde** is usually defined by prepositions. This preposition often appears at the end of the clause in English.

¿A dónde va Vd.?

*Where are you going (to)?*

¿en dónde? ¿por dónde? ¿de dónde?

## 209. Adverbs of Time.

ahora } *now*  
ya }

aun } *yet, still*  
todavía }

entonces, *then*

siempre, *always*

ayer, *yesterday*

después, *afterwards*

hoy, *to-day*

luego, *next, after*

mañana, *to-morrow*

antes, *before, rather*

anoche, *last night*

temprano, *early*

pasado mañana, *day after to-morrow*

tarde, *late*

anteayer, *day before yesterday*

jamás, *ever*

pronto, *soon*

nunca, *never*

mientras, *in the meantime, while*

Interrogative, **cuándo**, *when*

a. Adverbs of time and direction are generally placed after nouns.

**años antes, years before**

**mar afuera, out to sea**

**meses después, months afterward**

**tierra adentro, inland**

**escalera arriba, up stairs**

**boca abajo, face downwards**

b. **Mismo** intensifies adverbs of time and place.

ahora mismo, *right now*  
ahí mismo, *right there*

esta noche mismo, *this very night*  
ayer mismo, *only yesterday*

c. **Ya** with past tenses means *already*:

Ya han venido.

*They have already come.*

With present tenses, *now*:

Era muy rico, pero ya es pobre.

*He was very rich, but now he is poor.*

With future tenses, *at another time*:

Ya nos veremos.

*We shall see each other later.*

**Ya** is frequently used, however, to intensify statements.

Ya estamos. *Here we are.*

Ya se ve. *Now it is evident.*

Ya entiendo. *Now I comprehend.*

Ya lo creo. *I should say so.*

¡Ya voy! *I am coming* (note the use of *ir* instead of *venir*).

¿Andrés no vuelve? Ya, ya tarda.

*Andrew doesn't return? He is very late.*

(1) **Ya no** means *no longer*.

Los que ya no pueden trabajar.

*Those who can no longer work.*

No está ya en el mundo.

*He is no longer in the world.*

(2) **Ya . . . ya** introduces alternatives.

Ya de día, ya de noche.

*By day or by night.*

See section 278, 4 for use of subjunctive mood.

d. The English adverb *long* referring to time is **mucho tiempo**.

Más tiempo.

*Longer.*

¿Cuánto tiempo dura?

*How long does it last?*

Demasiado tiempo.

*Too long.*

Hace tanto tiempo.

*It is so long ago.*

Poco tiempo ha.

*A short time ago.*

(1) Note the idiom **tardar en + infinitive** (lit. *to delay in*).

No tardará mucho en venir.

*He will not be long in coming, or  
It will not be long before he comes.*

Tardó poco en llegar.

*He arrived in a short time, or He  
soon arrived.*



e. **Cuando** (unaccented) and **mientras** are also relative conjunctive adverbs introducing clauses, and sometimes have prepositional force.

**cuando las elecciones, at the time of the elections**      **mientras jóvenes, when young men**

**Cuando** also enters into various adverbial phrases.

**cuando más, at most**      **de cuando en cuando, from time to time**  
**cuando menos, at least**

## 210. Adverbs of Quantity or Degree.

<b>apenas, scarcely</b>	<b>mucho, much; muy, very</b>
<b>bastante, enough</b>	<b>poco, little</b>
<b>casi, almost</b>	<b>más, more</b>
<b>demasiado, too much, too</b>	<b>menos, less</b>
<b>tanto, tan, so much</b>	<b>harto, full well, enough</b>
Interrogative, <b>cuánto, how much</b>	

1. **Muy**, the shortened form of **mucho**, stands before adverbs and adjectives (except comparatives, but including past participles), and is never used alone.

<b>Muy bien.</b>	<i>Very well.</i>
<b>Un azul muy claro.</b>	<i>A very light blue.</i>
<b>Un azul mucho más claro.</b>	<i>A much lighter blue.</i>
<b>Estoy muy agradecido.</b>	<i>I am much obliged.</i>
<b>Parece muy cansado. Sí, mucho.</b>	<i>He seems very tired. Yes, very.</i>

a. **Muy** never modifies **mucho**. The absolute superlative is **muchísimo**.

2. **Mucho**, being also an adjective, appears for *very* in those idiomatic expressions in which Spanish has a noun corresponding to an English adjective.

<b>Tiene mucho frío y mucha hambre.</b>	<i>He is very cold and hungry.</i>
<b>Es mucha verdad.</b>	<i>It is very true.</i>

3. The indefinite pronouns **algo** and **nada** are also used as adverbs of degree.

<b>Yo soy nada curiosa.</b>	<i>I am not at all curious.</i>
<b>Su cabeza era algo calva.</b>	<i>His head was somewhat bald.</i>

## 211. Adverbs of Manner.

<i>así, thus, so</i>	<i>bien, well</i>	<i>alto, loud</i>	<i>despacio, slowly</i>
<i>quedo, softly, gently</i>	<i>mal, badly, ill</i>	<i>bajo, low</i>	<i>de prisa, fast</i>
	Interrogative, cómo, how		

a. From adjectives, adverbs of manner are formed by adding **mente** to the feminine singular.

<b>seguro</b> — <b>seguramente</b> , <i>safely</i>
<b>habilísimo</b> — <b>habilísimamente</b> , <i>very skillfully</i>
<b>feliz</b> — <b>felizmente</b> , <i>happily</i>

With two or more adjectives **mente** is used only once.

**Escribe más correcta que elegantemente.** *He writes more correctly than elegantly.*

1. **Como** (unaccented) has relative force, *as*. For its use in comparisons see section 50.

**Asistía a la boda como testigo.** *He attended the wedding as a witness.*

2. **Recientemente**, shortened to **recién**, is common with past participles.

**el recién llegado**, *the new arrival*      **los recién casados**, *the newly wedded*

3. Adverbial expressions of manner are also formed by the phrases **de una manera**, **de un modo**.

**de una manera encantadora**, *in a charming manner*      **de este modo**, *in this manner*

4. From adjectives and nouns of nationality, adverbial expressions are formed as follows.

<b>a la francesa</b> , <i>in the French style</i>	<b>al estilo de Jaén</b> , <i>in the fashion of Jaén</i>
<b>arroz a la valenciana</b> , <i>rice in Valencian style</i>	<b>vestida a lo rústico</b> , <i>dressed in rustic style</i>
<b>al estilo gótico</b> , <i>in the Gothic style</i>	

## 212. Adverbs of Affirmation and Negation.

<b>no</b> , <i>no</i>	<b>justo</b> , <i>right</i>
<b>sí</b> , <i>yes</i>	<b>claro</b> , <i>evidently</i>
<b>tampoco</b> , <i>neither</i>	<b>¡eso no!</b> <i>no, indeed!</i>
<b>ni . . . ni</b> , <i>neither . . . nor</i>	<b>¡eso sí!</b> <i>yes, indeed!</i>
<b>ni siquiera</b> , <i>not even</i>	<b>sí tal</b> , <i>surely</i>

1. No precedes the verb and the objective personal pronouns.

Yo no le ví.	<i>I did not see him.</i>
A mí no me gusta decir.	<i>I do not like to say.</i>
Pedro no ha venido.	<i>Peter has not come.</i>

2. No must precede the verb when other negative words follow it.

No conozco a nadie.	<i>I know nobody.</i>
No tengo nada.	<i>I have nothing.</i>
No veo a ninguno de mis amigos.	<i>I see none of my friends.</i>
Pablo no lo tiene tampoco.	<i>Paul hasn't it either.</i>

a. But if the negatives precede the verb, no is omitted.

Nada tengo.	<i>I have nothing.</i>
A nadie conozco.	<i>I know nobody.</i>

3. No usually follows adverbs and pronouns when used without a verb.

ahora no, <i>not now</i>	yo no, <i>not I</i>
todavía no, <i>not yet</i>	a mí no, <i>not to me</i>

4. If a second verb, noun, or adjective is included in the negation, ni precedes it. No era joven ni muy viejo. *He was not young nor very old.*

This is equivalent to omitting one of the correlatives ni . . . ni.

No tengo libros franceses ni españoles.	} <i>I have neither French nor Spanish books.</i>
No tengo libros ni franceses ni españoles.	

a. Note also that the adverb ni is required even when the negation is merely implied.

Una noche sin luna ni estrellas.	<i>A night without moon or stars.</i>
¿Qué tienes que partir en mi riqueza ni en mi pobreza?	<i>What concern have you with my wealth or my poverty?</i>

5. After the adjective todo the negative is frequently suppressed.

En toda la noche he podido dormir.	<i>I have not been able to sleep the whole night.</i>
En toda mi vida he visto semejante cosa.	<i>In my whole life I have never seen such a thing.</i>

a. The last expression often omits toda, hence en mi vida is a common expression for never.

En mi vida lo hice.	<i>I never did it.</i>
---------------------	------------------------

Similar expressions are **en días de Dios, en los días de la vida**, meaning *never*.

6. **Sí** often intensifies a statement, especially in contrast to a preceding negative.

**En cuanto a los muebles, no costosos pero sí cómodos y de forma elegante.** *As for the furniture, not costly but comfortable and of elegant shape.*

¿**Nos pagarán todo lo que nos deben? Todo, eso sí.** *Will they pay us all that they owe us? All of it, surely.*

**Lo que sí le ruego.** *That's what I do ask him.*

### 213. Adverbs of Doubt.

acaso  
tal vez  
quizá  
quizás

} *perhaps*

apenas  
apenas si

} *hardly*

1. The subjunctive mood often appears with these adverbs, see section 278, 5. **Acaso tenga Vd. la culpa**, *Perhaps you are to blame.*

2. In questions **acaso** implies improbability or shows that a negative answer is expected.

¿**Acaso lo sé yo?** *How do I know?*

¿**Van acaso a saberlo?** *How are they going to know?*

**214. Intensification.** The following methods of intensifying or modifying the meaning of words and statements exist.

1. Absolute superlative of the adverb, or the use of **sobre manera** or **sumamente**; **sumo**, **-a**, before nouns.

lejos, **lejísimo**, *very far*

sumamente  
sobre manera

} *difficult, extremely difficult*

con **suma gracia**, *with the utmost grace*

2. **Sí que.**

**Entonces sí que no nos perdonarían.** *Then surely they would not pardon us.*

**Eso sí que no.** *Not that by any means.*

**Ahora sí que hueles, y no a ambar.** *Now verily you do smell, and not of amber.*

## 3. Que.

¡ Socorro ! ¡ que me matan !  
 ¡ Tío, que te espero !

*Help ! they are killing me !  
 Uncle, I am waiting for you !*

## 4. Si.

Si no ve, la pobre.  
 Si no parece la misma casa.

*Why, she doesn't see, poor girl.  
 It really does not seem like the  
 same house.*

¡ Que si lo sé !

*I should say I do know it.*

## 5. Tan — Tanto.

Un instante, tan sólo un instante.  
 ¡ Qué día tan hermoso !  
 Ni tan siquiera.  
 Tengo tanto gusto en conocerle.

*A moment, only just a moment.  
 What a fine day !  
 Not even.  
 I am so pleased to make your ac-  
 quaintance.*

## 6. Bastante.

Hace bastante frío.  
 Es bastante rico.  
 La monotonía de mi vida empieza  
 a fastidiarme bastante.

*It is rather cold.  
 He is quite rich.  
 The monotony of my life begins  
 to bore me considerably.*

## 7. Repetition.

Así así es como se castiga a los  
 pillos.  
 Casi, casi estoy tentado a pensarlo.

*That is the way to punish rascals.  
 I am very nearly tempted to think  
 so.*

¡ Nada, nada !  
 ¡ Digo, digo !

*No, no ! (absolute refusal)  
 I declare ! Do tell !*

## 8. The diminutive -ito in familiar and colloquial speech.

¡ cuidadito ! *take good care*

¡ en seguidita ! *right away*

9. Conque introduces a natural consequence of what has just been said ; or recalls to mind, and insists on, the subject under discussion.

¡ Conque vamos !  
 ¡ Conque las seiscientas pesetas !

*Well then, let's go.  
 Come now, (take) the six hundred  
 pesetas (which I have offered).*

### 215. Adverbial Phrases are formed in various ways :

#### 1. With the definite article.

a (la) derecha, <i>on the right</i>	al momento, <i>instantly</i>
a (la) izquierda, <i>on the left</i>	en el acto, <i>at once</i>
a la moda, <i>in style</i>	en el día, <i>nowadays</i>
a la vista, <i>in (at) sight</i>	en lo sucesivo, <i>in the future</i>
a la verdad, <i>in truth</i>	por lo común, <i>commonly</i>
al contado, <i>(in) cash</i>	por lo pronto, <i>for the time being</i>
al fin, <i>finally</i>	por lo tanto, <i>consequently</i>

#### 2. Without the article, singular.

a fondo, <i>thoroughly</i>	de cabeza { <i>head first</i>
a mano, <i>by hand</i>	{ <i>on one's head</i>
a menudo, <i>often</i>	de pronto, <i>suddenly</i>
a pie, <i>on foot</i>	de propósito, <i>on purpose</i>
con todo, <i>nevertheless</i>	en contra, <i>against</i>
de antemano, <i>beforehand</i>	en fin, <i>in short</i>
de balde, <i>gratis</i>	en pro, <i>in favor of</i>
de buena gana, <i>willingly</i>	en seguida, <i>immediately</i>
de día, <i>by day</i>	por consiguiente, <i>consequently</i>
de noche, <i>by night</i>	por supuesto, <i>of course</i>
de nuevo, <i>again</i>	por último, <i>finally</i>

#### 3. Without the article, plural.

a ciegas, <i>blindly</i>	de espaldas, <i>on (with) one's back</i>
a escondidas, <i>secretly</i>	de oídas, <i>by hearsay</i>
a gatas, <i>on all fours</i>	de puntillas, <i>on tiptoe</i>
a sabiendas, <i>knowingly</i>	de rodillas, <i>on one's knees</i>
a solas, <i>alone</i>	de veras, <i>in truth, really</i>

#### 4. Miscellaneous adverbial phrases.

a manos llenas, <i>by handfuls</i>	desde luego, <i>right away</i>
a más no poder, <i>with all one's might</i>	de vez en cuando, <i>from time to time</i>
a sus anchas, <i>at one's ease</i>	gota a gota, <i>drop by drop</i>
al por mayor, <i>by wholesale</i>	ni con mucho, <i>not by a good deal</i>
al por menor, <i>by retail</i>	para siempre, <i>forever</i>
cuanto antes, <i>as soon as possible</i>	poco a poco, <i>little by little</i>
	siempre jamás, <i>forever and ever</i>

**216. Position of Adverbs.** Adverbs should stand close to the verb they modify; if emphatic they are placed first in the sentence.

<b>Mañana viene él.</b>	<i>He comes to-morrow.</i>
<b>Bien sabes.</b>	<i>You know very well.</i>
<b>Llama con cuidado a Rosa.</b>	<i>Call Rosa cautiously.</i>

a. They stand before adjectives and past participles, but must not come between the parts of compound tenses formed with **haber**.

<b>Ha dicho demasiado.</b>	<i>He has said too much.</i>
<b>Está bien dicho.</b>	<i>It is well said.</i>
<b>He ganado siempre.</b>	<i>I have always won.</i>

b. **Bien** before the verb is especially emphatic and must be translated by other words than *well*.

<b>Bien hemos charlado esta noche.</b>	<i>We have had a good long talk to-night.</i>
<b>Bien creímos que se moría.</b>	<i>We surely thought he was dying.</i>
<b>Bien se lo debo.</b>	<i>I certainly owe it to him.</i>

c. Adverbs modifying adverbial phrases stand before the whole phrase.

<b>muy a menudo, very often</b>	<b>tan de prisa, so fast</b>
---------------------------------	------------------------------

#### EXERCISE 34

(This exercise contains examples of the irregular verbs and those with change of spelling. See sections 242 to 251. Adverbs must be taken from the chapter, not from vocabulary.)

1. I arrived the day before yesterday.
2. Where did you come from?
3. He fell down from the top of the stairs.
4. They put themselves in front.
5. Do you see that light up there?
6. I had my breakfast later than usual.
7. It is snowing outside.
8. They fell forward.
9. He was not around there.
10. Come inside here.
11. He died a short time thereafter.
12. His land extends farther up.
13. He built the house months ago.
14. The bird flies out to sea.
15. Tell me right now.
16. He no longer hears.
17. He repeats it right there.
18. He sleeps anywhere.
19. He plays a long time with the boy.
20. He slept too long.
21. He will come before long.
22. He runs away very fast.
23. He thinks so.
24. I approached on

tiptoe. 25. He neither sees nor hears. 26. It is good for nothing. 27. He was frying the potatoes. 28. Do not laugh so loud. 29. Perhaps he knows, but I doubt it. 30. Now you are surely lying. 31. He took leave of us last night. 32. He is sleeping on his back. 33. Is he really coming? 34. We will come immediately. 35. Consequently I warn you. 36. He asks me for money from time to time. 37. He dresses himself as soon as possible. 38. I am sending him on purpose. 39. They have finally returned the book. 40. Commonly he does not return so soon. 41. It smells of kerosene. 42. *Sólo* as an adverb is accented. 43. Who defends the prisoner gratis? 44. I paid cash. 45. Go out alone. 46. He went on all fours. 47. He had turned around with his back toward the door. 48. They came secretly. 49. He sits down on the left. 50. We had the steamer in sight a long time. 51. Of course you will say yes. 52. I shall not say that he lies, but I shall say that he is mistaken. 53. He has not done it yet. 54. She dresses in the Sevillian style. 55. They distinguish themselves in a very respectable manner. 56. I ascertained the law at once. 57. I drew the newcomer out of the room. 58. The bell rings almost always at eight o'clock. 59. Don't bite, child. 60. We were somewhat tired. 61. Over there in America you govern extremely well. 62. Concluding my speech, I left at once. 63. I began to shoot blindly. 64. Bring me Valencian rice. 65. Blow your cornet loudly and distinctly. 66. He feels too sick to go out. 67. He saw her again opposite. 68. We shall surely know something certain at last. 69. That fellow truly is the type of a bad man. 70. The diligence rolled up the street, afterwards forward on the highway. 71. Nothing seemed to him criminal nor even unpermitted. 72. In my whole life I have never had such luck.



## CHAPTER XIII

### PREPOSITIONS, CONJUNCTIONS, INTERJECTIONS

**217. Prepositions.** The simple prepositions in Spanish are

<i>a, at, to</i>	<i>hacia, towards</i>
<i>ante, before</i>	<i>hasta, until, to, up to, as far as</i>
<i>bajo, under</i>	<i>mediante, by means of</i>
<i>con, with</i>	<i>menos, except, but</i>
<i>contra, against</i>	<i>para, for</i>
<i>de, of, from</i>	<i>por, for, by</i>
<i>desde, from, since</i>	<i>salvo, except, save</i>
<i>durante, during</i>	<i>según, according to</i>
<i>en, in, to, at, on</i>	<i>sin, without</i>
<i>entre, among, between</i>	<i>sobre, on, about</i>
<i>excepto, except</i>	<i>tras, after</i>

**218.** From adjectives, and adverbs in *mente*, prepositions are formed by the use of *a* :

<i>adversamente a, adversely to</i>	<i>junto a, close to, near</i>
<i>conforme a, according to</i>	<i>relativamente a, in relation to</i>
<i>contrario a, contrary to</i>	<i>respecto a, with respect to</i>
<i>correspondiente a, agreeably to</i>	<i>tocante a, in regard to</i>
<i>frente a, opposite to</i>	

**219.** From adverbs of place and time, prepositions are formed by using *de* :

<i>acerca de, about, concerning</i>	<i>dentro de, within</i>
<i>alrededor de, around</i>	<i>después de, after (time, order)</i>
<i>antes de, before (time, order)</i>	<i>detrás de, behind, after (place)</i>
<i>cerca de, near, about</i>	<i>encima de, over, on top of</i>
<i>debajo de, under</i>	<i>fuera de, outside of</i>
<i>delante de, before (place)</i>	<i>lejos de, far from</i>

## 220. Prepositional Phrases.

a causa de, *on account of*  
 a excepción de, *with the exception of*  
 a fuerza de, *by dint of*  
 al lado de, *beside*  
 a lo largo de, *along*  
 a más de, *besides, farther than*  
 a pesar de, *in spite of*  
 a punto de, *about to*  
 a (or al) través de, *across, through*  
 además de, *besides, in addition to*  
 con motivo de, *on account of*

de parte de, *from*  
 en contra de, *against*  
 en cuanto a, *as for*  
 en frente de, *in front of*  
 en pro de, *in favor of*  
 en vez de, *instead of*  
 en virtud de, *by virtue of*  
 más allá de, *beyond*  
 por medio de, *by means of*  
 por razón de, *by reason of, at the rate of*  
 sin embargo de, *notwithstanding*

a. Especially to be noted are

a fines de agosto, *at the end of August*  
 a mediados del siglo XV, *about the middle of the fifteenth century*  
 a principios de 1492, *at the beginning of 1492*

b. Adverbial phrases may combine with prepositions.

de espaldas a la puerta, *with his back to the door*      a escondidas de mi madre, *without my mother's knowledge*

## 221. A — En. 1. A implies motion, en rest.

Voy a casa. *I am going home.*      Estamos en casa. *We are at home.*  
 Se arrojó al mar.      He threw himself into the sea.  
 Estaré en París.      I shall be in Paris.

a. The verbs caer, *to fall*, entrar, *to go in*, saltar, *to jump*, require en. Entró en la ciudad. *He went into the city.*

2. Concerning time, a considers the termination of the time, en the length of time in which an action takes place.

A las tres. *At three o'clock.*      Al día siguiente. *On the next day.*  
 A dos días de estar aquí.      After being here two days.  
 Al mes justo de esta conversación se celebraron las bodas.      Exactly a month after this conversation the wedding took place.  
 Llegaré a París en dos días.      I shall reach Paris in two days.  
 Estará de vuelta en ocho días.      He will be back in a week.  
 Creo que ni en veinte años me moriré.      I believe that I shall not die in twenty years.

3. With expressions of distance, a signifies *away*.

A dos pasos.

*Two steps away.*

La ciudad está a media milla.

*The city is half a mile away.*

### 222. Ante — Delante de — Antes de.

**Ante** means *before* an authority, *in the presence of*; or figuratively it denotes preference; **delante de**, *before*, in respect to place; **antes de**, *before*, in respect to time.

ante el juez, *before the judge*

ante la nación, *before the nation*

ante la belleza, *in the presence of  
beauty*

ante todo, *before all*

delante de él, *in front of him*

delante de la casa, *before the house*

antes de junio, *before June*

antes de la noche, *before night*

**223. Bajo — Debajo de.** **Bajo**, *under* or *below*, usually in figurative sense; **debajo de**, *under* or *below*, in physical position.

bajo el general Reyes, *under Gen-  
eral Reyes*

bajo una condición, *on* (lit. *under*)  
*one condition*

diez grados bajo cero, *ten degrees  
below zero*

debajo de la mesa, *under the table*

**224. Detrás de — Tras — Después de.** **Detrás de** refers to physical position, *behind*; **tras** to succession, *after*, *behind*; **después de**, *after*, in respect to time.

Detrás de la puerta.

*Behind the door.*

Las poblaciones unas tras otras se  
rindieron.

*The towns, one after another, sur-  
rendered.*

Cerró tras sí la puerta.

*He shut the door behind him.*

Murió la madre, y tras ella, a los  
pocos días, el padre.

*The mother died, and after her, in  
a few days, the father.*

Después de las diez.

*After ten o'clock.*

**225. En — Encima de — Sobre.** **En** means *in* or *on*; **encima de**, *on top of* or *above*; **sobre**, *on*, physically and figuratively.

Vive en Cádiz.

*He lives in Cádiz.*

La comida está en la mesa.

*The dinner is on the table.*

Una lámpara colgante encima de  
la mesa.

*A hanging lamp above the table.*

Estaba de pie sobre la silla.	<i>He was standing on the chair.</i>
Una conferencia sobre Cervantes.	<i>A lecture on Cervantes.</i>
Le prestó mil duros sobre una finca.	<i>He loaned him a thousand dollars on an estate.</i>

**226.** Desde means *since, from*, often a correlative with *hasta, to*.

desde Valencia hasta Madrid, <i>from Valencia to Madrid</i>	desde entonces, <i>since then</i>
desde allí, <i>from there</i>	desde ahora, <i>from now</i>

**227.** Hasta, *until, till, as far as*, refers to both time and place.

Hasta el 15 del mes.	<i>Until the 15th of the month.</i>
Me acompañó hasta la puerta.	<i>He accompanied me as far as the door.</i>

*a.* Hasta is frequently used as an adverb in the sense of *even*.

Hasta París cansa.	<i>Even Paris wearies.</i>
Hasta es bonita.	<i>She is even pretty.</i>
Hasta cinco hombres me encontraron.	<i>As many as five men met me.</i>

**228.** Entre, *between, among*, makes also adverbial expressions in the sense of *half*.

entre aquella mujer y yo, <i>between that woman and me.</i> (Note the pronoun in subject form.)	entre los árboles, <i>among the trees</i>
	entre llanto y risa, <i>half crying, half laughing</i>

**229.** Para — Por divide the many meanings of English *for* and *by*. Para denotes destination or purpose; por, exchange or reason.

El tren para Chicago.	<i>The train for Chicago.</i>
Una mesa para la cocina.	<i>A table for the kitchen.</i>
Pagué un duro por el libro.	<i>I paid a dollar for the book.</i>
Tomé su sombrero por el mío.	<i>I took your hat for mine.</i>
Por méritos de guerra ha obtenido la cruz de San Fernando.	<i>For meritorious service he has obtained the cross of San Fernando.</i>
No lo digo por mí.	<i>I do not say it for my own sake.</i>

1. Note also, concerning **para**,

<b>Es alta para su edad.</b>	<i>She is tall for her age.</i>
<b>Leyó la carta para sí.</b>	<i>He read the letter to himself.</i>
<b>Decir para sí.</b>	<i>To say to one's self.</i>
<b>Dejar para mañana.</b>	<i>To leave for to-morrow.</i>
<b>La lección para mañana.</b>	<i>The lesson for to-morrow.</i>
<b>Estar para partir.</b>	<i>To be about to leave (more common, <b>estar á punto de partir</b>).</i>

2. **Por** is used in expressions of —

## a. Time, usually indefinite :

<b>por la noche, at night</b>	<b>por entonces, about that time</b>
<b>mañana por la mañana, to-morrow morning</b>	<b>por la Navidad, about Christmas</b>

## b. Place, implying movement through :

<b>Volar por el aire.</b>	<i>To fly through the air.</i>
<b>Pasar por la calle.</b>	<i>To go through the street.</i>
<b>¿ Por dónde se va ?</b>	<i>Which way does one go ?</i>
<b>Por allí.</b>	<i>In that direction.</i>
<b>Por aquí.</b>	<i>In this direction.</i>

(1) Hence **por** combines with the prepositions **debajo de**, **delante de**, **detrás de**, **encima de**, and **entre**, after verbs of movement.

<b>Tiró la pelota por encima de la tapia.</b>	<i>He threw the ball over the wall.</i>
<b>Me dió un puntapie por debajo de la mesa.</b>	<i>He gave me a kick under the table.</i>

## c. Oaths and exclamations :

<b>¡ Por Dios !</b>	
<b>¡ Por vida mía !</b>	<i>Upon my life !</i>
<b>¡ Bien por mi sobrino !</b>	<i>Good for my nephew !</i>

## d. Part of body or object concerned :

<b>La cogió por la mano.</b>	<i>He took her by the hand.</i>
------------------------------	---------------------------------

e. In certain verbal expressions very similar to English :

<b>enviar por el médico, to send for the doctor</b>	<b>preguntar por alguien, to inquire for anybody</b>
<b>ir por carne, to go for meat</b>	<b>tomar por esposa, to take as wife</b>

*f.* In numerous adverbial and conjunctive expressions :

por . . . que, <i>however</i> (followed by subjunctive mood)	
por malo que sea, <i>however bad he is</i>	
por más que digan, <i>however much (whatever) they may say</i>	
por decirlo así, <i>so to say</i>	por el estilo, <i>of that style</i>
por mayor, <i>at wholesale</i>	por desgracia, <i>by misfortune</i>

3. For **por** after passive verb see sections 270, 2 ; 272, *a*.

4. In regard to **para** and **por** with infinitives, see section 106, 5 and 6.

**230. Double Prepositions** are a peculiarity of Spanish :

1. After verbs denoting movement.

Cogió al muchacho por debajo de los brazos. *He caught the boy under the arms.*

El agua mana de entre las peñas. *The water issues from among the rocks.*

2. **Para con** appears in ideas of conduct, English *toward*.

deberes para con los padres, *duties toward one's parents*      indulgencia para conmigo, *indulgence toward me*

3. **De a** (see section 157, 1).

un puesto de a real la pieza, *a five-cent stand* (a booth or stand where articles are sold at a uniform price)

**231.** Prepositions complete the meaning of verbs in various ways. The same verb has different meanings according to the preposition used after it, an important thing for students to note.

pensar (without preposition before an infinitive), <i>intend</i>	pensar de, <i>think of, have an opinion about</i>
	pensar en, <i>think of, meditate on</i>

*a.* A verb which requires a preposition before a noun object requires the same preposition before a clause that may depend on it.

No consiento en la proposición. *I do not consent to the proposition.*

No consiento en que Vd. se vaya. *I do not consent to your going.*

Me enteró de que eran naturales de Madrid. *He informed me that they were natives of Madrid.*

**232. Conjunctions.** The simple conjunctions uniting coördinate clauses are

y, *and*  
o, *or*

ni, *nor*  
pero, mas, sino, *but*

1. **Y** reverts to **e** before words beginning with **i** or **hi**, except before questions and words beginning with the diphthong **ie**.

español **e** inglés, *Spanish and English*      nieve **y** hielo, *snow and ice*  
¿ **y** Inés ? *and Inez ?*

madre **e** hija, *mother and daughter*

a. Spanish often uses **y** at the beginning of a sentence or phrase merely as a mark of emphasis.

**Y** ¿ usted aquí ?

*Why, you here ?*

¡ **Y** si no llega a tiempo !

*Suppose he doesn't come on time !*

2. **O** becomes **u** before a word beginning with **o** or **ho**.

uno **u** otro, *one or the other*  
siete **u** ocho, *seven or eight*

mujer **u** hombre, *woman or man*

3. **Mas**, *but*, is more rhetorical than **pero**, and is sometimes used for euphony.

Para sí **no** quería grandezas : mas  
para su hijo todo le parecía poco.      *For herself she did not desire titles; but for her son everything seemed to her little.*

4. **Sino**, *but*, is used after a negative.

**No es** español **sino** portugués.

*It is not Spanish but Portuguese.*

**De** nadie tiene que hablar **sino** de esta mujer.

*He can talk about nobody but this woman.*

5. English *but* as a preposition in the sense of *only* is generally **no . . . más que**.

**No** tenemos más que un huevo.

*We have but one egg.*

a. **No . . . más que** is common with **hacer**: **No** hace más que dar un silbido, *He only hisses.*

**233.** Simple conjunctions introducing dependent clauses are

como, *as, as soon as*  
cuando, *when*  
mientras, *while*

pues, *since*  
que, *that*  
si, *if*

1. **Pues** is frequently used as an adverb.

<b>Pues a mí no me digas.</b>	<i>Well, don't tell me.</i>
<b>Pues yo, aquí es donde más he parado.</b>	<i>Well, as for me, here is where I have stopped most.</i>
<b>Pues si somos casi paisanos.</b>	<i>Well, we are surely almost fellow-countrymen.</i>
<b>Esta noche no iré. — ¿Pues?</b>	<i>"I shall not go to-night." "How is that?"</i>
<b>Conque habló mal de mí. — Pues.</b>	<i>"So then he spoke ill of me. "He surely did."</i>

2. **Que, that**, besides forming other conjunctions (see below), has many peculiar uses.

a. It is required after affirmations or oaths before adverbs and clauses, though redundant in English.

<b>Dice que sí.</b>	<i>He says yes or He says so.</i>
<b>Creo que no.</b>	<i>I believe not.</i>
<b>Claro que no.</b>	<i>Plainly no.</i>
<b>A sabiendas de que no.</b>	<i>Knowing the contrary.</i>
<b>Se fué a la calle, supongo que a recorrer los sitios donde estuviera.</b>	<i>He has gone out on the street, I suppose to go over the places where he had been.</i>
<b>¡Por Dios! que no es verdad.</b>	<i>By God, it is not true.</i>

b. **Que** often has comparative force, implying progressive or continuous action.

<b>Mis esperanzas muertas que muertas.</b>	<i>My hopes deader and deader.</i>
<b>Mejor que mejor.</b>	<i>Better and better.</i>
<b>Corría que no andaba.</b>	<i>She ran rather than walked.</i>
<b>Tarde que temprano.</b>	<i>Sooner or later.</i>
<b>Corre que corre.</b>	<i>It runs faster and faster.</i>
<b>Perú estaba sentado, cavila que cavila.</b>	<i>Peru was seated, thinking and thinking.</i>

c. **A que** implies a bet.

<b>A que no sabe Vd. ¿cuántos años tiene?</b>	<i>I bet you don't know how old he is.</i>
---	--

d. For **que** as an intensifier see section 214.



**234. Conjunctions** formed from adverbs and prepositions by the addition of *que* are

antes (de) *que*, *before*  
 así *que*, *as soon as, so that*  
 aunque } *although*  
 bien *que* }  
 desde *que*, *since (time)*  
 después *que*, *after*  
 hasta *que*, *until*  
 luego *que*, *as soon as*

mientras *que*, *while*  
 para *que*, *in order that, so that*  
 porque, *because*  
 pues *que* }  
 puesto *que* } *for, since (reason)*  
 supuesto *que* }  
 ya *que* }  
 sin *que*, *without*

**235. Conjunctions** formed from prepositional phrases by the addition of *que* are

a fin de *que*, *in order that*  
 con tal (de) *que*, *provided that*  
 dado *que* } *in case*  
 en caso de *que* }  
 and others.

a medida *que*, *as*  
 de { modo } *que, so that*  
   { manera }  
   { suerte }

### 236. Correlatives.

apenas . . . cuando, *scarcely . . . when*

Apenas había andado doscientos pasos, cuando quince o veinte hombres rodearon mi coche. *Scarcely had I gone two hundred paces when fifteen or twenty men surrounded my coach.*

así . . . como }  
 tanto . . . como } *both . . . and*  
 lo mismo . . . que } *as well . . . as*

Bebieron vino y comieron dulces así los enfermos como los sanos. *They drank wine and ate goodies, both the sick and the well.*  
 Tanto en el patio como en las salas hay flores y plantas. *Both in the court and in the rooms there are flowers and plants.*  
 Hubiera sido mejor para España así como para Venezuela. *It would have been better for Spain as well as for Venezuela.*  
 Lo mismo los frailes que los caballeros. *Both the friars and the gentlemen.*

ni . . . ni, *neither . . . nor*

Ni Juan ni Pepe tienen razón. *Neither John nor Joe is right.*

no bien . . . cuando (cuando often omitted), *no sooner . . . than*

No bien dejó de hablar Ramón cuando me levanté. *No sooner did Ramón stop speaking than I arose.*

no sólo . . . sino (que), *not only . . . but also*

No sólo vino a mi cuarto sino que me llevó al suyo. *He not only came to my room but took me to his own.*

o . . . o  
o bien . . . o bien } *either . . . or*

O locura o santidad. *Either madness or sanctity.*

O bien todo es cálculo, o bien enlaza la prosa de vivir y la poesía de sus ensueños en una perfecta armonía. *Either all is calculation or she unites the prose of life and the poetry of her dreams into perfect harmony.*

ora . . . ora, *now . . . now*

Ora por cartas, ora citándonos. *Now by letters, now by appointments*

sea . . . sea } *whether . . . or*  
ya . . . ya }

Sea por impulso propio, sea por sugerencias ajenas. *Whether by one's own impulse or by the suggestions of others.*

Ya me quites la vida, ya me la dejes. *Whether you take my life or grant it to me.*

**237.** Interjections are more numerous and important in Spanish than in English.

1. Divine names as exclamations are common, and are not usually regarded as profane :

¡Dios!	<i>Gracious!</i>	¡Válgame Dios!	<i>Bless me!</i>
¡Por Dios!	<i>For goodness' sake!</i>	¡Jesús!	<i>Heavens!</i>
¡Dios mío!	<i>Dear me!</i>	Jesús, María y José	(after a sneeze)
¡Ay Dios mío!	<i>Oh dear me!</i>	¡Virgen santísima!	<i>Mercy me!</i>
¡Dios te oiga!	<i>Just listen!</i>	¡Ay María!	<i>Goodness!</i>

a. Similarly, ¡demonio! ¡diantre! ¡diablo! *The deuce!*

## 2. Peculiar to Spanish :

Caramba !	} <i>By jingo !</i> <i>Gosh !</i> <i>The dickens !</i>
Caray !	
Caracoles !	
Canastos !	
Canario !	
Cáspita !	
Fuego !	

and others.

Caramba qué suerte !	<i>Gosh, what luck !</i>
Qué caramba de viaje es ése !	<i>What dickens of a trip is that !</i>
Caramba contigo !	<i>The deuce take you !</i>

## 3. Ordinary interjections are

Oh !   ah !	<i>Oh !</i>
Ay !	<i>Oh ! alas ! ah !</i>
Ha ! (exultation)	<i>Ha !</i>
He ! (shock, start)	<i>Eh !</i>
Ea ! (encouragement)	<i>Come !</i>
Ea, ea ! (impatience)	<i>Come, come !</i>
Huy ! (pain, disgust)	<i>Ouch ! phew !</i>
Ola ! or   Hola ! (recognition or discovery)	<i>Ah ! oh ! hello !</i>
Ole ! (approval)	<i>Bully ! bravo !</i>
Puf ! (aversion)	<i>Ugh !</i>
Uf ! (weariness)	<i>Oh ! poh !</i>
Ca ! and   quia ! (denial or doubt)	<i>No ! nonsense !</i>
Bah ! (incredulity or contempt)	<i>Pshaw !</i>
Chist ! } (to impose silence)	<i>Hush !</i>
Chitón ! }	
Ah ! Esteban.   Hola ! Manolo !	<i>Hey, Stephen ! Say, Manolo !</i>
Al verse en el espejo, no pudo menos de lanzar un   ah ! de admiración.	<i>On seeing himself in the mirror, he could not help uttering an ah ! in admiration.</i>
Chist ! habla bajo.	<i>Hush ! speak low.</i>
Está sufriendo un ataque de melancolía. —   Quia ! contestó el médico. Lo que tiene esta señora es un cólico.	<i>She is suffering an attack of melancholy. Nonsense ! answered the doctor. The trouble with this lady is the colic.</i>

- ¿ Va bien el violín ? — ¡ Ca ! Hay *Violin practice going nicely ? No !*  
 veces que lo rompería ! *There are times when I would*  
*like to smash it.*
- Dicen que Alsina ha perdido en *They say that Alsina has lost on the*  
 Bolsa. — ¡ Uf ! Es natural. *exchange. Poh ! That's natural.*
- ¡ Ea ! ¡ a trabajar ! *Come ! get to work !*
- Dos días revuélcase en la cama *For two days he turns in his bed*  
 lanzando ¡ ayes ! doloridos. *uttering cries of pain.*

4. Some imitations of natural sounds are

- |               |            |              |                       |
|---------------|------------|--------------|-----------------------|
| ¡ ajajá !     | } laughter | ¡ pum, pum ! | pistol shot, blows of |
| ¡ je ! ¡ je ! |            | any sort     |                       |
| ¡ cataplúm !  | splash     | ¡ zas !      | smash                 |

5. Used to animals :

- |                       |                   |             |                                  |
|-----------------------|-------------------|-------------|----------------------------------|
| ¡ Arre !              | } <i>Get up !</i> | ¡ Miz miz ! | (To cats) { <i>Puss, puss !</i>  |
| ¡ Alza !              |                   | ¡ Zape !    |                                  |
| ¡ Anda !              |                   | ¡ Tus tus ! | (To dogs) { <i>Here ! here !</i> |
| ¡ So ! ¡ jo ! ¡ cho ! | ¡ Toma !          |             |                                  |
- Whoa !*

6. Imperatives frequently become interjections :

- |           |                       |                                   |
|-----------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| ¡ Anda !  | { (incredulity)       | <i>Pshaw ! go away !</i>          |
|           | { (impertunity)       | <i>Come ! do !</i>                |
| ¡ Calla ! | ¡ Calle ! { (command) | <i>Shut up ! keep still !</i>     |
|           |                       | { (incredulity)                   |
| ¡ Diga !  |                       | <i>Say ! do tell !</i>            |
| ¡ Oye !   | ¡ Oiga !              | <i>Listen ! hear, hear !</i>      |
| ¡ Mira !  | ¡ Mire Vd. !          | <i>Look ! listen !</i>            |
| ¡ Quita ! | ¡ Quítese Vd. !       | <i>Get out ! let me alone !</i>   |
| ¡ Toma !  |                       | <i>Why ! here, take it !</i>      |
| ¡ Vamos ! | ¡ Vaya !              | <i>Come on !</i>                  |
| ¡ Viva !  |                       | <i>Hurrah !</i>                   |
| ¡ Muera ! |                       | <i>Down with him ! kill him !</i> |

¡ Vaya ! is the commonest of these, and the hardest to render by a single word. Study the examples :

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| ¡ Vaya ! abur.                             | <i>Well, good-by.</i>                                |
| ¡ Carta de tu tío ! Y ¡ vaya si es gorda ! | <i>Letter from your uncle ! And it's a fat one !</i> |
| ¡ Vaya una hora de venir !                 | <i>This is a pretty hour to come !</i>               |
| ¡ Vaya si le conozco !                     | <i>I should say I do know him !</i>                  |

7. Nouns and adjectives may become interjections :

¡ Al asesino !	<i>Murder !</i>	¡ Cuidado !	<i>Take care ! look out !</i>
¡ Al ladrón !	<i>Stop thief !</i>	¡ Firme !	<i>Steady !</i>
¡ Alto !	<i>Halt !</i>	¡ Fuego !	<i>Fire !</i>
¡ Bravo !	<i>Good !</i>	¡ Socorro !	<i>Help !</i>
¡ Ojo ! ¡ Mucho ojo ! <i>Attention ! With care !</i> (Used sometimes on shipping cases containing breakable merchandise.)			

8. Personal pronouns are connected with adjectives used as interjections by the preposition **de** ; which is also true of ¡ **Ay** ! with nouns or pronouns.

¡ Necio de mí !	<i>Fool that I am !</i>
¡ Pobrecita de ella !	<i>Poor little girl !</i>
¡ Ay de mí !	<i>Woe is me !</i>
¡ Ay de los vencidos !	<i>Woe to the conquered !</i>

9. **Hombre, mujer, chico, hijo, hija**, are frequent in conversation for emphasis or protestation. ¡ **Hombre** ! is used even to women and by women to each other. **Señor** appears in expressions not addressed to a particular individual : ¡ **Pues, señor, no esperaba escapar tan bien**, *Well, sir, I did not expect to get off so easily.*

### EXERCISE 35

1. We saw the man run through the street. 2. Having neither brothers nor sisters, he is an only son. 3. Christopher Columbus did not go to discover the new world but to seek a new way to the Indies. 4. I shall know at the end of the month. 5. The wedding was fixed for the beginning of December. 6. They followed the shadow along the walls. 7. Federico had learned the facts in two days. 8. He looked at them over his spectacles. 9. Buyers had come even from England. 10. There was nobody in the dining-room but her and her mother. 11. I bet they don't dare tell me so. 12. I was sure that you were going to say that. 13. I trust that they will put me back soon. 14. I have scolded an innkeeper. Why? where? when? how? Because where, when I eat, they serve badly, I get out of patience. 15. I do not know anything in

regard to the affair. 16. They came around the city. 17. He would come about Christmas if you asked<sup>1</sup> him. 18. Come under the bridge. 19. On account of the weather, he brought a wrap. 20. On the next day he wanted to return. 21. We wish to reach home in a fortnight. 22. A week after learning this, he had a letter from his partner. 23. He learned that they would come before October. 24. The President has put the army under the command of General Grant. 25. About that time the army was below the city. 26. What shall we do with the boy who stands before us? 27. He went from Caracas to La Guaira in a few hours. 28. I leave for Spain about the middle of next month. 29. He knows a good deal for his age. 30. He said to himself, "I shall get out of here before night." 31. Send for a doctor. 32. She went for medicine. 33. Has anybody inquired for me during my absence? 34. The enemy came out from among the trees. 35. Go and distribute this money among the poor. 36. Ferdinand and Isabella had no male children that lived to inherit the kingdom. 37. He neither translated the sentence nor knew the sense of it. 38. He produced but one great work. 39. She did nothing but sing all day. 40. I made ten or eleven mistakes in that exercise. 41. Being able not only to hear but also to see very well, I was satisfied. 42. They are not French but Russian. 43. After they came, the army departed for the Peninsula. 44. Hearing the noise, we jumped out of bed. 45. Coming from under the bridge, the man said he was not an enemy but a fisherman. 46. Who says yes? 47. Before he obtained the prize, he worked both night<sup>2</sup> and day.<sup>2</sup> 48. Since I have seen you, business goes much better. 49. It was the signal that the enemy was approaching.

<sup>1</sup> Use imperfect subjunctive of *pedir*.

<sup>2</sup> Adverbial; insert *de*.

## CHAPTER XIV

### VERB FORMS

**238.** The changes in form which a verb undergoes are classified by voice, mood, tense, number, and person. The Spanish verb makes these changes by means of endings and auxiliaries. Their systematic arrangement is called conjugation.

**239.** Verbs are divided into three classes according to the endings of the infinitive :

I. -ar

II. -er

III. -ir

But the -er and -ir verbs differ in only four forms ; namely, the infinitive, the first and second persons plural of the present indicative, and the second person plural of the imperative.

#### 240. Regular Verbs.

##### INFINITIVE MOOD

##### PRESENT TENSE

comprar, *to buy*

vender, *to sell*

vivir, *to live*

##### PARTICIPLES

##### PRESENT (GERUND)

comprando, *buying*

vendiendo, *selling*

viviendo, *living*

##### PAST

comprado, *bought*

vendido, *sold*

vivido, *lived*

##### INDICATIVE MOOD

##### PRESENT TENSE

SING. I. compro

*I buy*

vendo

*I sell*

vivo

*I live*

*I do buy*

*I do sell*

*I do live*

*I am buying*

*I am selling*

*I am living*

2. <i>compras</i>	<i>you buy</i> <i>you do buy</i> <i>you are buying</i>	<i>vendes</i>	<i>you sell</i> <i>you do sell</i> <i>you are selling</i>	<i>vives</i>	<i>you live</i> <i>you do live</i> <i>you are living</i>
3. <i>compra</i>	<i>he buys</i> <i>he does buy</i> <i>he is buying</i>	<i>vende</i>	<i>he sells</i> <i>he does sell</i> <i>he is selling</i>	<i>vive</i>	<i>he lives</i> <i>he does live</i> <i>he is living</i>
PLUR. 1. <i>compramos</i>	<i>we buy</i> <i>we do buy</i> <i>we are buying</i>	<i>vendemos</i>	<i>we sell</i> <i>we do sell</i> <i>we are selling</i>	<i>vivimos</i>	<i>we live</i> <i>we do live</i> <i>we are living</i>
2. <i>compráis</i>	<i>you buy</i> <i>you do buy</i> <i>you are buying</i>	<i>vendéis</i>	<i>you sell</i> <i>you do sell</i> <i>you are selling</i>	<i>vivís</i>	<i>you live</i> <i>you do live</i> <i>you are living</i>
3. <i>compran</i>	<i>they buy</i> <i>they do buy</i> <i>they are buying</i>	<i>venden</i>	<i>they sell</i> <i>they do sell</i> <i>they are selling</i>	<i>viven</i>	<i>they live</i> <i>they do live</i> <i>they are living</i>

## NEGATIVE FORM

<i>no compro, I do not buy</i> etc.	<i>no vendo, I do not sell</i> etc.	<i>no vivo, I do not live</i> etc.
--	--	---------------------------------------

## INTERROGATIVE FORM

<i>¿Compra Vd.?</i> <i>Do you buy? etc.</i>	<i>¿Vende Vd.?</i> <i>Do you sell? etc.</i>	<i>¿Vive Vd.?</i> <i>Do you live? etc.</i>
--	--	---

## IMPERFECT TENSE

SING. 1. <i>compraba</i>	<i>I was buying</i> <i>I used to buy</i>	<i>vendía</i>	<i>I was selling</i> <i>I used to sell</i>
2. <i>comprabas</i>	<i>you were buying</i> <i>you used to buy</i>	<i>vendías</i>	<i>you were selling</i> <i>you used to sell</i>
3. <i>compraba</i>	<i>he was buying</i> <i>he used to buy</i>	<i>vendía</i>	<i>he was selling</i> <i>he used to sell</i>
PLUR. 1. <i>comprábamos</i>	<i>we were buying</i> <i>we used to buy</i>	<i>vendíamos</i>	<i>we were selling</i> <i>we used to sell</i>
2. <i>comprabais</i>	<i>you were buying</i> <i>you used to buy</i>	<i>vendíais</i>	<i>you were selling</i> <i>you used to sell</i>
3. <i>compraban</i>	<i>they were buying</i> <i>they used to buy</i>	<i>vendían</i>	<i>they were selling</i> <i>they used to sell</i>

vivir like vender



## PRETERIT TENSE

SING. 1. compré, <i>I bought</i>	vendí, <i>I sold</i>	vivir like vender
2. compraste, <i>you bought</i>	vendiste, <i>you sold</i>	
3. compró, <i>he bought</i>	vendió, <i>he sold</i>	
PLUR. 1. compramos, <i>we bought</i>	vendimos, <i>we sold</i>	
2. comprasteis, <i>you bought</i>	vendisteis, <i>you sold</i>	
3. compraron, <i>they bought</i>	vendieron, <i>they sold</i>	

## NEGATIVE FORM

no compré, *I did not buy*, etc.      no vendí, *I did not sell*, etc.

## INTERROGATIVE FORM

¿Compró Vd.? *Did you buy?* etc.      ¿Vendió Vd.? *Did you sell?* etc.

## FUTURE TENSE

SING. 1. compraré, <i>I shall buy</i>	venderé, <i>I shall sell</i>	
2. comprarás, <i>you will buy</i>	viviré, <i>I shall live</i>	
3. comprará, <i>he will buy</i>	and same endings as for comprar	
PLUR. 1. compraremos, <i>we shall buy</i>	added to the infinitive	
2. compraréis, <i>you will buy</i>		
3. comprarán, <i>they will buy</i>		

## CONDITIONAL

SING. 1. compraría, <i>I should buy</i>	vendería, <i>I should sell</i>	
2. comprarías, <i>you would buy</i>	viviría, <i>I should live</i>	
3. compraría, <i>he would buy</i>	and same endings as for comprar	
PLUR. 1. compraríamos, <i>we should buy</i>	added to the infinitive	
2. compraríais, <i>you would buy</i>		
3. comprarían, <i>they would buy</i>		

## IMPERATIVE MOOD

2d SING. compra, <i>buy</i>	vende, <i>sell</i>	vive, <i>live</i>
2d PLUR. comprad, <i>buy</i>	vended, <i>sell</i>	vivid, <i>live</i>

For the negative, use corresponding person and number of the present subjunctive: *no compres, do not buy*; see section 87.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

## PRESENT TENSE

compre	venda	vivir like vender
compres	vendas	throughout subjunctive
compre	venda	
compremos	vendamos	
compréis	vendáis	
compren	vendan	

## IMPERFECT TENSE

FIRST FORM		SECOND FORM	
comprase	vendiese	comprara	vendiera
comprases	vendieses	compraras	vendieras
comprase	vendiese	comprara	vendiera
comprásemos	vendiésemos	compráramos	vendiéramos
compraseis	vendieseis	comprarais	vendierais
comprasen	vendiesen	compraran	vendieran

## FUTURE TENSE (HYPOTHETICAL)

comprare	vendiere
comprares	vendieres
comprare	vendiere
compráremos	vendiéremos
comprareis	vendiereis
compraren	vendieren

NOTE. Translations of the subjunctive mood, being likely to cause misconceptions, are not given.

**241. Compound Tenses.** The compound tenses of all verbs are formed from the past participle and the various tenses of the auxiliary verb *haber*, *to have*.

## INFINITIVE (PRESENT PERFECT)

**haber comprado, to have bought**

## PARTICIPLE (PRESENT PERFECT OR PERFECT GERUND)

**habiendo comprado, having bought**

## INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT PERFECT (pres. ind. of **haber** + past participle)**he comprado**, *I have bought*, etc.PLUPERFECT (imper. ind. of **haber** + past participle)**había comprado**, *I had bought*, etc.PRETERIT PERFECT (preterit ind. of **haber** + past participle)**hube comprado**, *I had bought*, etc.FUTURE PERFECT (fut. ind. of **haber** + past participle)**habré comprado**, *I shall have bought*, etc.CONDITIONAL PERFECT (conditional of **haber** + past participle)**habría comprado**, *I should have bought*, etc.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT PERFECT (pres. subj. of **haber** + past participle)**haya comprado**, etc.PLUPERFECT 1st FORM (imper. subj. **-se** form of **haber** + past participle)**hubiese comprado**, etc.PLUPERFECT 2d FORM (imper. subj. **-ra** form of **haber** + past participle)**hubiera comprado**, etc.FUTURE PERFECT (fut. subj. of **haber** + past participle)**hubiere comprado**, etc.

NOTE. The student, in forming compound tenses according to this scheme, must take care to use the correct form of the past participle; as **he vendido**, *I have sold*; **he escrito**, *I have written*; etc.

**242. Orthographic Changes.** As a Spanish verb throughout its conjugation maintains the sound of the final consonant of the radical,

it is necessary at times to change the spelling to preserve the sound. See section 7 for changes in spelling.

a. The following table shows changes of spelling which occur in both regular and irregular verbs.

VERBS WHOSE INFINITIVES

END WITH	CHANGE	BEFORE	IN	EXAMPLES
1. car 2. gar 3. guar 4. zar	c to qu g to gu gu to gü z to c	e	1st person preterit indic., and all pres. subj.	sacar, to draw out llegar, to arrive averiguar, to ascertain lanzar, to throw
5. ger 6. gir 7. quir 8. guir 9. consonant before cer, cir 10. Vowel be- fore cer, cir	g to j g to j qu to c gu to g c to z have zc	o and a	1st person present indic., and all pres. subj.	coger, to catch dirigir, to address delinquir, to transgress distinguir, to distinguish vencer, to conquer, fall due esparcir, to scatter conocer, to know lucir, to shine

1. Preterit indic.	saqué, sacaste, etc.	Present subj.	saque, etc.
2. " "	llegué, llegaste, etc.	" "	llegue, etc.
3. " "	averigüé, averiguaste, etc.	" "	averigüe, etc.
4. " "	lancé, lanzaste, etc.	" "	lance, etc.
5. Present	cojo, coges, etc.	" "	coja, etc.
6. " "	dirijo, diriges, etc.	" "	dirija, etc.
7. " "	delinco, delinques, etc.	" "	delinca, etc.
8. " "	distingo, distingues, etc.	" "	distinga, etc.
9. " "	venzo, vences, etc.	" "	venza, etc.
" "	esparzo, esparces, etc.	" "	esparza, etc.
10. " "	conozco, conoces, etc.	" "	conozca, etc.
" "	luzco, luces, etc.	" "	luzca, etc.

NOTE. Important exceptions to 10 are *mecer, to rock*; *cocer, to cook, to boil*; *empecer, to damage*, with forms according to 9: while *hacer, to make*; *decir, to say*, are irregular, see section 250.

*b.* Unaccented *i* cannot stand between two vowels, but is changed to *y*. This occurs whenever an ending containing the diphthong *ie* or *ió* is added to a verb-stem ending in a vowel; as,

**Creer, to believe**

PRETERIT INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
creí	FIRST FORM
creíste	creyese, etc.
creyó	
creímos	SECOND FORM
creísteis	creyera, etc.
creyeron	
PRESENT PARTICIPLE	FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE
creyendo	creyere, etc.

Many verbs ending in *-uir* have similar changes; see section 248.

*c.* Verbs whose stems end in *ll* or *ñ* lose the *i* of the diphthongs *ie* and *ió*; as, **engullir, to devour**, and **tañer, to play (a stringed instrument)**:

PRETERIT INDICATIVE		IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE	
engullí	tañí	FIRST FORM	
engulliste	tañiste	engullese	tañese
engulló	tañó		
engullimos	tañimos	SECOND FORM	
engullisteis	tañisteis	engullera	tañera
engulleron	tañeron		
PRESENT PARTICIPLE		FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE	
engullendo	tañendo	engullere	tañere

(1) Likewise after *j* of the preterit stems of **decir, -ducir, and traer**, the *i* of the diphthongs *ie* and *ió* disappears; see the verbs, section 250.

*d.* Most verbs ending in *-lar* and *-uar* accent the weak vowel of the termination in the 1st, 2d, and 3d persons singular and the 3d

plural of the present indicative and present subjunctive, and the 2d singular of the imperative.

**Enviar, to send**

PRESENT INDICATIVE	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE
envío	envíe	—
envías	envíes	envía
envía	envíe	—
enviamos	envíemos	—
enviáis	envíeis	enviad
envían	envíen	—

**Continuar, to continue**

PRESENT INDICATIVE	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE
continúo	continúe	—
continúas	continúes	continúa
continúa	continúe	—
continuamos	continuémos	—
continuáis	continuéis	continúad
continúan	continúen	—

Some important verbs which do *not* accent the vowel are

<b>cambiar, exchange</b>	<b>limpiar, clean</b>	<b>remediar, remedy</b>
<b>diferenciar, differentiate</b>	<b>principiar, begin</b>	All verbs in <b>-guar</b> (see
<b>estudiar, study</b>	<b>presenciar, witness</b>	section 242, a, 3)

e. The past participles of verbs of the *-er* and *-ir* conjugations whose stems end in *a*, *e*, or *o* require a written accent on the termination to show that the adjacent vowels do not form a diphthong with a consequent shift of spoken accent.

caído

leído

corroído

NOTE. Common verbs conjugated like the models in section 242 are

Radical change indicated thus, (i) (ue)

a. 1. <b>acercarse, approach</b>	<b>suplicar, beg</b>
<b>fabricar, manufacture</b>	<b>tocar, touch</b>
<b>provocar, provoke</b>	<b>volcar (ue), overturn</b>

2. <i>cargar</i> , load colgar (ue), hang entregar, deliver juzgar, judge	negar (ie), deny pagar, pay pegar, stick, strike rogar (ue), ask
3. <i>apaciguar</i> , pacify fraguar, forge, invent	menguar, lessen santiguar, make sign of cross, bless
4. <i>alcanzar</i> , reach almorzar (ue), breakfast calzar, put on (shoes etc.) empezar (ie), begin	forzar (ue), force gozar, enjoy rezar, pray tropezar (ie), stumble
5. <i>acoger</i> , receive escoger, choose, select	recoger, pick up, collect proteger, protect
6. <i>afigirse</i> , worry corregir (i), correct elegir (i), elect	exigir, demand regir (i), rule
8. <i>seguir</i> (i), follow	See section 248, 2
9. <i>torcer</i> (ue), twist	uncir, yoke
10. <i>agradecer</i> , thank carecer, lack crecer, grow	merecer, deserve parecer, seem permanecer, remain

(There are about 200 verbs having this termination. Many are formed from adjectives, thus :

duro, hard ; endurecer, harden  
verde, green ; enverdecer, become green

Such verbs are called inceptive verbs.)

- b. leer, read    poseer, possess  
Proveer, provide, has past participles *proveído* and *provisto*.
- c. bullir, boil    brufir, polish  
mullir, beat soft                                    ceñir (i), gird  
refir (i), scold
- d. The following verbs accent the vowel :
- |                       |                  |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| confiar, trust        | variar, vary     |
| criar, raise, educate | acentuar, accent |
| guiar, guide          | efectuar, effect |

**243. Principal Parts.** Radical-changing and irregular verbs are conveniently memorized by referring their forms to six principal parts, as follows :

INFINITIVE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	PAST PARTICIPLE	PRESENT INDICATIVE 1ST SING.	PRÆTERIT INDICATIVE 1ST SING.	PRÆTERIT INDICATIVE 3D SING.
gives		gives	gives		gives
(from whole infinitive)		COMPOUND TENSES	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE		IMPERFECT AND FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE
FUTURE					
CONDITIONAL					
<hr/>					
(from stem of infinitive)					
PRESENT INDICATIVE (except 1st sing.)					
IMPERFECT INDICATIVE					
IMPERATIVE					

(This scheme is not an absolute guide, as there are some exceptions, but it is an aid to memory.)

**244. Radical-Changing Verbs** are those whose irregularities consist chiefly in a change of the radical vowel when it is accented or when it precedes certain other vowels. The following may serve as models, divided for convenience into classes.

**Class I.** Verbs having a change of *e* to *ie* and *o* to *ue* when the stem is accented.

**I. Pensar, to think**

PRIN. PARTS Pensar, pensando, pensado, pienso, pensé, pensó					
PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRÆT. IND.
pienso	pensaba	—	piense	pensaré	pensé
piensas	<i>etc.</i>	piensa	pienses	<i>etc.</i>	pensaste
piensa		—	piense		pensó
pensamos		—	ensemos	CONDITIONAL	pensamos
pensáis		pensad	enseís	pensaríais	pensasteis
piensan		—	piensen	<i>etc.</i>	pensaron
	IMPF. SUBJ.			FUT. SUBJ.	
	1ST FORM		2D FORM		
	piensase		piensara		piensare
	<i>etc.</i>		<i>etc.</i>		<i>etc.</i>



## 2. Contar, to count

PRIN. PARTS Contar, contando, contado, cuento, conté, contó

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
cuento	contaba	—	cuento	contaré	conté
cuentas	<i>etc.</i>	cuenta	cuentes	<i>etc.</i>	contaste
cuenta		—	cuento		contó
contamos		—	contemos	CONDITIONAL	contamos
contáis		contad	contéis	contaría	contasteis
cuentan		—	cuenten	<i>etc.</i>	contaron
				FUT. SUBJ.	
	IST FORM	IMPF. SUBJ.	2D FORM		
	contase, <i>etc.</i>	contara, <i>etc.</i>		contare, <i>etc.</i>	

## 3. Perder, to lose

PRIN. PARTS Perder, perdiendo, perdido, pierdo, perdí, perdió

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
pierdo	perdía	—	pierda	perderé	perdí
pierdes	<i>etc.</i>	pierde	pierdas	<i>etc.</i>	perdiste
pierde		—	pierda		perdió
perdemos		—	perdamos	CONDITIONAL	perdimos
perdéis		perded	perdáis	perdería	perdisteis
perden		—	pierdan	<i>etc.</i>	perdieron
				FUT. SUBJ.	
	IST FORM	IMPF. SUBJ.	2D FORM		
	perdiese, <i>etc.</i>	perdiera, <i>etc.</i>		perdiere, <i>etc.</i>	

## 4. Mover, to move

PRIN. PARTS Mover, moviendo, movido, muevo, moví, movió

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
muevo	movía	—	mueva	moveré	moví
mueves	<i>etc.</i>	mueve	muevas	<i>etc.</i>	moviste
mueve		—	mueva		movió
movemos		—	movamos	CONDITIONAL	movimos
movéis		moved	mováis	movería	movisteis
mueven		—	muevan	<i>etc.</i>	movieron
				FUT. SUBJ.	
	IST FORM	IMPF. SUBJ.	2D FORM		
	moviese, <i>etc.</i>	moviera, <i>etc.</i>		moviere, <i>etc.</i>	

1. Like pensar are

acertar, *hit the mark*  
 alentar, *encourage*  
 apretar, *squeeze*  
 atravesar, *cross*  
 calentar, *warm*  
 cerrar, *shut*  
 confesar, *confess*  
 despertar, *wake*  
 empezar, *begin*  
 encomendar, *recommend*

gobernar, *govern*  
 helar, *freeze*  
 manifestar, *show, inform*  
 merendar, *take lunch*  
 nevar, *snow*  
 quebrar, *break*  
 regar, *irrigate, water*  
 remendar, *mend, patch*  
 sentarse, *sit down*  
 temblar, *tremble*

2. Like contar are

acordarse, *remember*  
 acostarse, *go to bed*  
 almorzar, *take breakfast*  
 apostar, *wager, bet*  
 colgar, *hang*  
 consolar, *console*  
 costar, *cost*

encontrar, *meet*  
 forzar, *force*  
 mostrar, *show*  
 probar, *try, test*  
 recordar, *remind*  
 rodar, *roll*  
 rogar, *ask, beg*

soltar, *let go, loosen*  
 sonar, *ring*  
 soñar, *dream*  
 tronar, *thunder*  
 volar, *fly*  
 volcar, *upset*

3. Like perder are

ascender, *ascend*  
 atender, *heed*  
 defender, *defend*

descender, *descend*  
 encender, *kindle, light*  
 entender, *understand*

extender, *extend*  
 verter, *pour, shed*

4. Like mover are

doler, *pain, ache*      llover, *rain*      morder, *bite*      torcer, *twist*

245. Belonging to Class I are certain verbs with peculiarities:

1. **Errar**, *to err*, has *ye* in place of *ie* to avoid that spelling at the beginning of a word.

PRIN. PARTS **Errar**, *errando, errado, yerro, erré, erró*

PRES. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.	IMPERAT.
yerro	yerre	—
yerras	yerras	yerra
yerra	yerre	—
erramos	erremos	—
erráis	erréis	errad
yerran	yerren	—

2. *a. Jugar, to play*, has *ue* when the stem is accented. For spelling of present subjunctive and first person singular preterit, see section 242, *a*, 2.

PRIN. PARTS Jugar, jugando, jugado, juego, jugué, jugó					
PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
juego	jugaba	—	juegue	jugaré	jugué
juegas	<i>etc.</i>	juega	juegues	<i>etc.</i>	jugaste
juega		—	juegue		jugó
jugamos		—	juguemos	CONDITIONAL	jugamos
jugáis		jugad	juguéis	jugaría	jugasteis
juegan		—	jueguen	<i>etc.</i>	jugaron
	IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.		
	1ST FORM	2D FORM			
	jugase, <i>etc.</i>	jugara, <i>etc.</i>	jugare, <i>etc.</i>		

*b. Agorar, to augur*, and other verbs having *go* in the stem, as *degollar, to behead*, and *avergonzar, to shame*, will require the dieresis when this syllable breaks to *ue* under the accent. Otherwise like *contar*.

PRIN. PARTS Agorar, agorando, agorado, agüero, agoré, agoró		
PRES. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.	IMPERAT.
agüero	agüere	—
agüeras	agüeres	agüera
agüera	agüere	—
agoramos	agoremos	—
agoráis	agoréis	agorad
agüeran	agüeren	—

*c. Desosar, to bone*, and *desovar, to spawn*, have an *h* inserted before *ue* in the accented syllable.

PRES. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.	IMPERAT.
deshueso	deshuese	—
deshuestas	deshueses	deshuesa
deshuesa	deshuese	—
desosamos	desosemos	—
desosáis	desoséis	desosad
deshuesan	deshuesen	—

3. *a. Discernir, to discern*, being derived from *cerner*, has the vowel-changes of *perder* but the endings of the *-ir* conjugation in the first and second plural, the present indicative, the second plural imperative, and the infinitive.

PRIN. PARTS *Discernir, discerniendo, discernido, discernir, discerní, discernió*

PRES. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.	IMPERAT.
discierno	discierna	—
disciernes	disciernas	discierne
discierne	discierna	—
discernimos	discernamos	—
discernís	discernáis	discernid
disciernen	disciernan	—

*b. Concernir, to concern*, has the peculiarities of *discernir*, but is defective, being used only in the third person singular and plural of each tense.

4. *a. Volver, to return*, has an irregular past participle but is otherwise like *mover*.

PRIN. PARTS *Volver, volviendo, vuelto, vuelvo, volví, volvió*

Like *volver* are

<i>devolver, give back</i>	<i>absolver, absolve</i>
<i>envolver, wrap up</i>	<i>disolver, dissolve</i>
<i>revolver, stir</i>	<i>resolver, resolve</i>
	<i>solver, loosen</i>

*b. Oler, to smell*, has *hue* when the stem is accented, because no word should begin with *ue*.

PRIN. PARTS *Oler, oliendo, olido, huelo, olí, olió*

PRES. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.	IMPERAT.
huelo	huela	—
huelas	huelas	huele
huele	huela	—
olemos	olamos	—
oléis	oléis	oled
huelen	huelan	—

**246. Class II.** Verbs whose stem-vowel *e* becomes *ie* when accented, and *i* before an accented syllable containing *ie*, *ió*, or *a*; or whose stem-vowel *o* becomes *ue* or *u* under the same circumstances.

**1. Sentir, to feel**

PRIN. PARTS Sentir, sintiendo, sentido, siento, sentí, sintió						
PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.	
siento	sentía	—	sienta	sentiré	sentí	
sientes	sentías	siente	sientas	<i>etc.</i>	sentiste	
siente	sentía	—	sienta	CONDITIONAL	sintió	
sentimos	sentíamos	—	sintamos		sentimos	
sentís	sentáis	sentid	sintáis	sentiría	sentisteis	
sienten	sentían	—	sientan	<i>etc.</i>	sintieron	
			IMPF. SUBJ.	FUT. SUBJ.		
1ST FORM		2D FORM				
sintiese		sintiera		sintiere		
<i>etc.</i>		<i>etc.</i>		<i>etc.</i>		

**2. Dormir, to sleep**

PRIN. PARTS Dormir, durmiendo, dormido, duermo, dormí, durmió						
PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.	
duermo	dormía	—	duerma	dormiré	dormí	
duermes	<i>etc.</i>	duerme	duermas	<i>etc.</i>	dormiste	
duerme		—	duerma	CONDITIONAL	durmió	
dormimos		—	durmamos		dormimos	
dormís		dormid	durmáis	dormiría	dormisteis	
duermen		—	duerman	<i>etc.</i>	durmieron	
			IMPF. SUBJ.	FUT. SUBJ.		
1ST FORM		2D FORM				
durmiese		durmiera		durmiere		
<i>etc.</i>		<i>etc.</i>		<i>etc.</i>		

**1. Like sentir are**

advertir, <i>warn</i>	divertir, <i>amuse</i>	mentir, <i>lie</i>
arrepentirse, <i>repent</i>	herir, <i>strike, wound</i>	preferir, <i>prefer</i>
convertir, <i>convert</i>	hervir, <i>boil</i>	referir, <i>relate</i>
consentir, <i>consent</i>	invertir, <i>invest</i>	resentirse, <i>resent</i>

2. Like **dormir**, but with irregular past participle, is **morir**, *to die*.

PRIN. PARTS **Morir**, muriendo, muerto, muero, morí, murió

a. The past participial **muerto** is used with active meaning instead of **matado** when referring to human beings; as, **Han muerto al capitán**, *They have killed the captain*.

3. **Adquirir**, *to acquire*, and **inquirir**, *to inquire*, have **ie** when the stem is accented and **i** when unaccented.

PRIN. PARTS **Adquirir**, adquiriendo, adquirido, **adquiero**, **adquirí**, **adquirió**

PRIN. IND.	PRIN. SUBJ.	IMPERAT.	Other forms
<b>adquiero</b>	<b>adquiera</b>	—	regular
<b>adquieres</b>	<b>adquieras</b>	<b>adquiere</b>	
<b>adquiere</b>	<b>adquiera</b>	—	
<b>adquirimos</b>	<b>adquiramos</b>	—	
<b>adquirís</b>	<b>adquiráis</b>	<b>adquirid</b>	
<b>adquieren</b>	<b>adquieran</b>	—	

**247. Class III.** Verbs whose stem-vowel **e** becomes **i** when accented, or before an accented syllable containing **ie**, **íe**, or **a**.

1. **Pedir**, *to request, ask for*

PRIN. PARTS **Pedir**, pidiendo, pedido, pido, **pedí**, **pidió**

PRIN. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRIN. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
<b>pido</b>	<b>pedía</b>	—	<b>pida</b>	<b>pediré</b>	<b>pedí</b>
<b>pides</b>	<b>pedías</b>	<b>pide</b>	<b>pidas</b>	<i>etc.</i>	<b>pediste</b>
<b>pide</b>	<b>pedía</b>	—	<b>pida</b>	CONDITIONAL	<b>pidió</b>
<b>pedimos</b>	<b>pedíamos</b>	—	<b>pidamos</b>		<b>pediría</b>
<b>pedís</b>	<b>pedíais</b>	<b>pedid</b>	<b>pidáis</b>	<i>etc.</i>	<b>pedisteis</b>
<b>piden</b>	<b>pedían</b>	—	<b>pidan</b>		<b>pidieron</b>

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
<b>pidiese</b>	<b>pidiera</b>	<b>pidiere</b>
<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>

Like **pedir** are

**competir**, *compete*  
**concebir**, *conceive*  
**derretir**, *melt*  
**despedirse**, *take leave*  
**expedir**, *forward, ship*  
**gemir**, *groan*  
**impedir**, *prevent*  
**medir**, *measure*  
**rendirse**, *surrender*

**repetir**, *repeat*

**servir**, *serve*

**vestir**, *dress*

**corregir**, *correct*

**elegir**, *elect*

**regir**, *rule*

**ceñir**, *gird*

**refir**, *scold*

**teñir**, *dye*

} See  
 section 242, a, 6.

} See section 242, c.

2. **Seguir**, *to follow*, and its derivatives are like **pedir**, but with orthographic changes according to section 242, a, 8.

PRIN. PARTS **Seguir**, *siguiendo*, *seguido*, *sigo*, *seguf*, *siguió*

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
<b>sigo</b>	<b>segufa</b>	—	<b>sig</b>	<b>seguiré</b>	<b>seguf</b>
<b>sigues</b>	<i>etc.</i>	<b>sigue</b>	<b>sigas</b>	<i>etc.</i>	<b>seguiste</b>
<b>sigue</b>		—	<b>sig</b>		<b>siguió</b>
<b>seguimos</b>		—	<b>sigamos</b>	CONDITIONAL	<b>seguimos</b>
<b>seguís</b>		<b>seguid</b>	<b>sigáis</b>	<b>seguiría</b>	<b>seguisteis</b>
<b>siguen</b>		—	<b>sigan</b>	<i>etc.</i>	<b>siguieron</b>
				FUT. SUBJ.	
	1ST FORM	IMPF. SUBJ.	2D FORM		
	<b>siguiese, etc.</b>		<b>siguiera, etc.</b>	<b>siguiere, etc.</b>	

Like **seguir** are

**conseguir**, *succeed*

**perseguir**, *pursue*

**proseguir**, *prosecute*

3. **Erguir**, *to erect*, may have either *ie* (written *ye*) or *i* when the stem is accented.

PRIN. PARTS **Erguir**, *irguiendo*, *erguido*, *yergo* } , *erguf*, *irguió*  
*irgo*

PRES. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.	IMPERAT.	
<b>yergo</b> , <b>irgo</b>	<b>yerga</b> , <b>irga</b>	—	Other forms like
<b>yergues</b> , <b>irgues</b>	<b>yergas</b> , <b>irgas</b>	<b>yergue</b> , <b>irgue</b>	<b>seguir</b>
<b>yergue</b> , <b>irgue</b>	<b>yerga</b> , <b>irga</b>	—	
<b>erguimos</b>	<b>irgamos</b>	—	
<b>erguís</b>	<b>irgáis</b>	<b>erguid</b>	
<b>erguen</b> , <b>irguen</b>	<b>yergan</b> , <b>irgan</b>	—	

4. Verbs ending in *-eír* belong to this class, but lose one *i* when two *i*'s come together. Note the many forms with written accent.

*Reír, to laugh*

PRIN. PARTS *Reír, riendo, reído, río, ref, rió*

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
<i>río</i>	<i>refa</i>	—	<i>ría</i>	<i>reiré</i>	<i>ref</i>
<i>ríes</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>rie</i>	<i>rías</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>reíste</i>
<i>ríe</i>		—	<i>ría</i>		<i>rió</i>
<i>reímos</i>		—	<i>riamos</i>	CONDITIONAL	<i>reímos</i>
<i>refs</i>		<i>reíd</i>	<i>riáis</i>	<i>reiría</i>	<i>reísteis</i>
<i>ríen</i>		—	<i>rían</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>rieron</i>

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
<i>riese</i>	<i>riera</i>	<i>riere</i>
<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>

Like *reír* are

*engreír, make conceited*

*sonreír, smile*

*Freír, fry*, has irregular past participle *frito*, as well as *freído*.

248. Verbs ending in *-uir* have a *y* added to the stem-vowel *u* except before *i*; and *i* unaccented between two vowels is changed to *y*.

I. *Huir, to run away, flee*

PRIN. PARTS *Huir, huyendo, huido, huyo, huf, huyó*

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
<i>huyo</i>	<i>hufa</i>	—	<i>huya</i>	<i>huiré</i>	<i>huf</i>
<i>huyes</i>	<i>hufas</i>	<i>huye</i>	<i>huyas</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>huíste</i>
<i>huye</i>	<i>hufa</i>	—	<i>huya</i>		<i>huyó</i>
<i>huimos</i>	<i>hufamos</i>	—	<i>huyamos</i>	CONDITIONAL	<i>huimos</i>
<i>húis</i>	<i>hufáis</i>	<i>huid</i>	<i>huyáis</i>	<i>huiría</i>	<i>huísteis</i>
<i>huyen</i>	<i>hufan</i>	—	<i>huyan</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>huyeron</i>

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
<i>huyese</i>	<i>huyera</i>	<i>huyere</i>
<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>



Like *huir* are

<i>atribuir, attribute</i>	<i>excluir, exclude</i>
<i>concluir, finish</i>	<i>incluir, include, inclose</i>
<i>construir, construct</i>	<i>influir, influence</i>
<i>contribuir, contribute</i>	<i>instruir, instruct</i>
<i>destituir, remove from office</i>	<i>obstruir, obstruct</i>
<i>destruir, destroy</i>	<i>restituir, restore</i>
<i>distribuir, distribute</i>	<i>sustituir, substitute</i>

2. *Argüir* requires the diæresis before *i* but not before *y*.

PRIN. PARTS *Argüir, arguyendo, argüido, arguyo, argüí, arguyó*

IMPF. IND. *Argüía, etc.*

249. Irregular Past Participles. Some verbs otherwise regular have irregular past participles :

<i>abrir</i>	<i>to open</i>	<i>abierto</i>
<i>cubrir</i>	<i>to cover</i>	<i>cubierto</i>
<i>descubrir</i>	<i>to discover</i>	<i>descubierto</i>
<i>escribir</i>	<i>to write</i>	<i>escrito</i>
<i>freír</i>	<i>to fry</i>	<i>frito, frito</i>
<i>imprimir</i>	<i>to print</i>	<i>impreso</i>
<i>oprimir</i>	<i>to oppress</i>	<i>oprimido, opreso</i>
<i>prender</i>	<i>to take, arrest</i>	<i>prendido, preso</i>
<i>proveer</i>	<i>to provide</i>	<i>provelido, provisto</i>
<i>romper</i>	<i>to break</i>	<i>rompido, roto</i>
<i>suprimir</i>	<i>to suppress</i>	<i>suprimido, supreso</i>

a. The form *roto* is used when the verb is transitive, otherwise *rompido*.

Ha roto la pierna.  
He rompido con mi novia.

*He has broken his leg.  
I have broken with my sweetheart.*

b. The forms *frito, opreso, preso, provisto, supreso*, are preferred as adjectives. With *haber* the regular form is used, though *frito* and *provisto* may occur.

Pescado frito.  
Parrón está preso.  
Ha prendido el fuego en el convento.

*Fried fish.  
Parrón is captured.  
The fire spread to, or broke out in,  
the convent.*

250. **Irregular Verbs** may be conveniently divided into two groups according to their preterits. In one group, the preterits, like those of regular verbs, are accented on the ending in the first and third persons of the singular; the preterits of the second group accent the stem in the first and third singular. The arrangement is alphabetical in each group.

**Group I.**

**Asir, to grasp**

PRIN. PARTS Asir, asiendo, asido, asgo, así, asió

PRS. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRS. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
asgo	asía	—	asga	asiré	así
ases	<i>etc.</i>	ase	asgas	<i>etc.</i>	asiste
ase		—	asga		asíó
asimos		—	asgamos	CONDITIONAL	asimos
asís		asid	asgáis	asiría	asisteis
asen		—	asgan	<i>etc.</i>	asieron

IMPF. SUBJ.

FUT. SUBJ.

1ST FORM

2D FORM

asiese

asiera

asiere

*etc.*

*etc.*

*etc.*

**Caer, to fall**

PRIN. PARTS Caer, cayendo, caído, caigo, caí, cayó

PRS. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRS. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
caigo	caía	—	caiga	caeré	caí
caes	<i>etc.</i>	cae	caigas	<i>etc.</i>	caíste
cae		—	caiga		cayó
caemos		—	caigamos	CONDITIONAL	caímos
caéis		caed	caigáis	caería	caísteis
caen		—	caigan	<i>etc.</i>	cayeron

IMPF. SUBJ.

FUT. SUBJ.

1ST FORM

2D FORM

cayese

cayera

cayere

*etc.*

*etc.*

*etc.*

Note that a written accent is necessary on the *i* of the past participle and of the second singular and first and second plural of the preterit.

## SPANISH GRAMMAR

*Dar, to give*PRIN. PARTS *Dar, dando, dado, doy, dás, dió*

PRS. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRS. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRÉT. IND.
doy	daba	—	dé	daré	dí
das	<i>etc.</i>	da	des	<i>etc.</i>	diste
da		—	dé		dió
damos		—	demos	CONDITIONAL	dimos
dais		dad	deis	daría	disteis
dan		—	den	<i>etc.</i>	dieron
	IMPF. SUBJ.			FUT. SUBJ.	
	1ST FORM		2D FORM		
	diese, <i>etc.</i>		diera, <i>etc.</i>		diere, <i>etc.</i>

*Ir, to go*PRIN. PARTS *Ir, yendo, ido, voy, fuí, fué*

PRS. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRS. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRÉT. IND.
voy	iba	—	vaya	iré	fuí
vas	ibas	ve	vayas	irás, <i>etc.</i>	fuiste
va	<i>etc.</i>	—	vaya		fué
vamos		vamos	vayamos	CONDITIONAL	fuiimos
vais		id	vayáis	iría	fuisteis
van		—	vayan	irías, <i>etc.</i>	fueron
	IMPF. SUBJ.			FUT. SUBJ.	
	1ST FORM		2D FORM		
	fuese, <i>etc.</i>		fuera, <i>etc.</i>		fuere, <i>etc.</i>

*Irse, to go away*PRIN. PARTS *Irse, yendose, ido, me voy, me fuí, se fué**Oír, to hear*PRIN. PARTS *Oír, oyendo, oído, oigo, oí, oyó*

PRS. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRS. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRÉT. IND.
oigo	oía	—	oiga	oiré	oí
oyes	<i>etc.</i>	oye	oigas	<i>etc.</i>	oíste
oye		—	oiga		oyó
oímos		—	oigamos	CONDITIONAL	oímos
oís		oíd	oigáis	oiría	oísteis
oyen		—	oigan	<i>etc.</i>	oyeron
	IMPF. SUBJ.			FUT. SUBJ.	
	1ST FORM		2D FORM		
	oyese, <i>etc.</i>		oyera, <i>etc.</i>		oyere, <i>etc.</i>

Note the many written accents, occurring on *i* when stressed after *o*.

**Salir, to go out, leave**

PRIN. PARTS Salir, saliendo, salido, salgo, salí, salíó

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
salgo	salía	—	salga	saldré	salí
sales	<i>etc.</i>	sal	salgas	saldrás, <i>etc.</i>	saliste
sale		—	salga		salíó
salimos		—	salgamos	CONDITIONAL	salimos
salís		salid	salgáis	saldría	salisteis
salen.		—	salgan	saldrían, <i>etc.</i>	salieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
saliese, <i>etc.</i>	saliera, <i>etc.</i>	saliere, <i>etc.</i>

**Ser, to be**

PRIN. PARTS Ser, siendo, sido, soy, fui, fué

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
soy	era	—	sea	seré	fui
eres	eras	sé	seas	<i>etc.</i>	fuiste
es	era	—	sea		fué
somos	éramos	—	seamos	CONDITIONAL	fuimos
sois	erais	sed	seáis	sería	fuisteis
son	eran	—	sean	<i>etc.</i>	fueron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
fuese, <i>etc.</i>	fuera, <i>etc.</i>	fuere, <i>etc.</i>

**Valer, to be worth**

PRIN. PARTS Valer, valiendo, valido, valgo, valí, valíó

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
valgo	valía	—	valga	valdré	valí
vales	<i>etc.</i>	val or vale	valgas	<i>etc.</i>	valiste
vale		—	valga		valíó
valemos		—	valgamos	CONDITIONAL	valimos
valéis		valed	valgáis	valdría	valisteis
valen		—	valgan	<i>etc.</i>	valieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
valiese, <i>etc.</i>	valiera, <i>etc.</i>	valiere, <i>etc.</i>

Derivatives are

equivaler, to be equal to

prevaler, avail

**Ver, to see**

PRIN. PARTS Ver, viendo, visto, veo, ví, vió

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
veo	veía	—	vea	veré	ví
ves	<i>etc.</i>	ve	veas	<i>etc.</i>	viste
ve		—	vea		vió
vemos		—	veamos	CONDITIONAL	vimos
veis		ved	veáis	vería	visteis
ven		—	vean	<i>etc.</i>	vieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
viere	viera	viere
<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>

The derivative **proveer, to provide**, is regular but has also the irregular past participle **provisto**.

**Yacer, to lie**PRIN. PARTS Yacer; yaciendo; yacido; yazco, yazgo, *or* yago; yací; yació

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
yazco, yazgo, <i>or</i> yago	yacía <i>etc.</i>	— yace	yazca, yazga, yaga <i>etc.</i>	yaceré <i>etc.</i>	yací yaciste
yaces		<i>or</i> yaz	<i>etc.</i>		yació
yace		—			yacimos
yacemos		—		CONDITIONAL	yacisteis
yacéis		yaced		yacería	yacieron
yacen		—		<i>etc.</i>	

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
yaciese	yaciera	yaciere
<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>

**Group II.** The preterits in this group have unaccented *e* and *o* in the first and third persons of the singular because the spoken accent falls on the stem; the stem-vowel is usually different from the stem-vowel of the infinitive.

**Andar, to go**

PRIN. PARTS Andar, andando, andado, ando, anduve, anduyo

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
ando	andaba	—	ande	andaré	anduve
<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	anda	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	anduviste
		—			anduvo
		—		CONDITIONAL	anduvimos
		andad		andaría	anduvisteis
		—		<i>etc.</i>	anduvieron

	IMPF. SUBJ.	FUT. SUBJ.
IST FORM	2D FORM	
anduviese, <i>etc.</i>	anduviera, <i>etc.</i>	anduviere, <i>etc.</i>

**Caber, to be contained in, hold**

PRIN. PARTS Caber, cabiendo, cabido, quepo, cupe, cupo

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
quepo	cabía	—	quepa	cabré	cupe
cabes	<i>etc.</i>	cabe	quepas	<i>etc.</i>	cupiste
cabe		—	quepa		cupo
cabemos		—	quepamos	CONDITIONAL	cupimos
cabéis		cabed	quepáis	cabría	cupisteis
caben		—	quepan	<i>etc.</i>	cupieron

	IMPF. SUBJ.	FUT. SUBJ.
IST FORM	2D FORM	
cupiese, <i>etc.</i>	cupiera, <i>etc.</i>	cupiere, <i>etc.</i>

**Decir, to say**

PRIN. PARTS Decir, diciendo, dicho, digo, dije, dijo

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
digo	decía	—	diga	diré	dije
dices	<i>etc.</i>	di	digas	dirás, <i>etc.</i>	dijiste
dice		—	diga		dijo
decimos		—	digamos	CONDITIONAL	dijimos
decís		decid	digáis	diría	dijisteis
dicen		—	digan	dirías, <i>etc.</i>	dijeron

	IMPF. SUBJ.	FUT. SUBJ.
IST FORM	2D FORM	
dijese, <i>etc.</i>	dijera, <i>etc.</i>	dijere, <i>etc.</i>

The present indicative third singular has the special indefinite form **diz, it is said.**

The derivatives **bendecir**, *to bless*, and **maldecir**, *to curse*, differ from **decir** as follows :

PAST PART.	IMPERATIVE (2D SING.)	FUT. IND.
bendecido	bendice	bendeciré, <i>etc.</i>
maldecido	maldice	maldeciré, <i>etc.</i>

Other derivatives are like **decir** except in the imperative singular :

	IMPERATIVE (2D SING.)
<b>contradecir</b> , <i>contradict</i>	contradice
<b>desdecir</b> , <i>gainsay</i>	desdice
<b>predecir</b> , <i>predict</i>	predice

**-ducir** (STEM NOW OBSOLETE)

**Conducir**, *to conduct, drive*

PRIN. PARTS conducir, conduciendo, conducido, conduzco, conduje, condujo

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
conduzco	conducía	—	conduzca	conduciré	conduje
conduces	<i>etc.</i>	conduce	conduzcas	<i>etc.</i>	condujiste
conduce		—	conduzca		condujo
conducimos		—	conduzcamos	CONDITIONAL	condujimos
conducís		conducid	conduzcáis	conduciría	condujisteis
conducen		—	conduzcan	<i>etc.</i>	condujeron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
condujese	condujera	condujere
<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>

Derivatives are

**deducir**, *deduce*  
**educir**, *bring out*  
**inducir**, *induce*  
**introducir**, *introduce*

**producir**, *produce*  
**reducir**, *reduce*  
**reproducir**, *reproduce*  
**traducir**, *translate*

**Estar, to be**

PRIN. PARTS Estar, estando, estado, estoy, estuve, estuvo

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
estoy	estaba	—	esté	estaré	estuve
estás	<i>etc.</i>	está	estés	<i>etc.</i>	estuviste
está		—	esté		estuvo
estamos		—	estemos	CONDITIONAL	estuvimos
estáis		estad	estéis	estaría	estuvisteis
están		—	estén	<i>etc.</i>	estuvieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
estuviese, <i>etc.</i>	estuviera, <i>etc.</i>	estuviere, <i>etc.</i>

**Haber, to have**

PRIN. PARTS Haber, habiendo, habido, he, hube, hubo

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
he	había	—	haya	habré	hube
has	<i>etc.</i>	(hé)	hayas	habrás, <i>etc.</i>	hubiste
ha		—	haya		hubo
hemos		—	hayamos	CONDITIONAL	hubimos
habéis		habed	hayáis	habría	hubisteis
han		—	hayan	habrías, <i>etc.</i>	hubieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
hubiese, <i>etc.</i>	hubiera, <i>etc.</i>	hubiere, <i>etc.</i>

NOTE. Though chiefly used as an auxiliary verb, **haber** remains as a finite verb in such expressions as

**El malhechor fué habido.**

¡ **Haya paces!**

¡ **Bien haya!**

¡ **Mal haya!**

*The criminal was apprehended.*

*Stop quarreling!*

*Blessed is he!*

*Curses on him.*

The imperative combines with the adverbs **aquí**, **ahí**, and **allá**. Personal pronouns are appended to the verb: thus, **Héme aquí**, *Here I am*; **Hétenos allá**, *There we are*.

Some grammarians deny the derivation of **hé** from **haber**, and attribute it to **ver**.



**Hacer, to make, to do**

PRIN. PARTS Hacer, haciendo, hecho, hago, hice, hizo

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
hago	hacía	—	haga	haré	hice
haces	<i>etc.</i>	haz	hagas	harás, <i>etc.</i>	hiciste
hace		—	haga		hizo
hacemos		—	hagamos	CONDITIONAL	hicimos
hacéis		haced	hagáis	haría	hicisteis
hacen		—	hagan	harías, <i>etc.</i>	hicieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
hiciese, <i>etc.</i>	hiciera, <i>etc.</i>	hiciere, <i>etc.</i>

The derivative **satisfacer, to satisfy**, retains the original *f* of the Latin:  
 PRIN. PARTS Satisfacer, satisfaciendo, satisfecho, satisfago, satisfice, satisfizo

**Poder, to be able, can**

PRIN. PARTS Poder, pudiendo, podido, puedo, pude, pudo

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
puedo	podía	<i>wanting</i>	pueda	podré	pude
puedes	<i>etc.</i>		puedas	podrás, <i>etc.</i>	podiste
puede			pueda		pudo
podemos			podamos	CONDITIONAL	podimos
podéis			podáis	podría	podisteis
pueden			puedan	podrías, <i>etc.</i>	podieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
puadiese, <i>etc.</i>	puadiera, <i>etc.</i>	puadiere, <i>etc.</i>

**Poner, to put**

PRIN. PARTS Poner, poniendo, puesto, pongo, puse, puso

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
pongo	ponía	—	ponga	pondré	puse
pones	<i>etc.</i>	pon	pongas	pondrás, <i>etc.</i>	pusiste
pone		—	ponga		puso
ponemos		—	pongamos	CONDITIONAL	pusimos
ponéis		poned	pongáis	pondría	pusisteis
ponen		—	pongan	pondrías, <i>etc.</i>	pusieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
pusiese, <i>etc.</i>	pusiera, <i>etc.</i>	pusiere, <i>etc.</i>

A few derivatives are

<b>anteponer</b> , <i>put before</i>	<b>exponer</b> , <i>expose</i>	<b>recomponer</b> , <i>mend</i>
<b>componer</b> , <i>compose, mend</i>	<b>imponer</b> , <i>impose</i>	<b>proponer</b> , <i>propose</i>
<b>disponer</b> , <i>dispose</i>	<b>oponer</b> , <i>oppose</i>	<b>suponer</b> , <i>suppose</i>

**Reponer**, *to reply*, is used chiefly in the preterit, **repuso**.

**Querer**, *to wish, desire; to love*

PRIN. PARTS **Querer**, *queriendo*, *querido*, **quiero**, *quise*, **quiso**

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
quiero	quería	—	quiera	querré	quise
quieres	<i>etc.</i>	quiere	quieras	querrás, <i>etc.</i>	quisiste
quiere		—	quiera		quiso
queremos		—	queramos	CONDITIONAL	quisimos
queréis		quered	queráis	querría	quisisteis
quieren		—	quieran	querrías, <i>etc.</i>	quisieron

IMPF. SUBJ.

1ST FORM	2D FORM
quisiese	quisiera
<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>

FUT. SUBJ.

quisiere
<i>etc.</i>

**Saber**, *to know*

PRIN. PARTS **Saber**, *sabiendo*, *sabido*, **sé**, *supe*, **supo**

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
sé	sabía	—	sepa	sabré	supe
sabes	<i>etc.</i>	sabe	sepas	sabrás, <i>etc.</i>	supiste
sabe		—	sepa		supo
sabemos		—	sepamos	CONDITIONAL	supimos
sabéis		sabed	sepáis	sabría	supisteis
saben		—	sepan	sabrías, <i>etc.</i>	supieron

IMPF. SUBJ.

1ST FORM	2D FORM
supiese	supiera
<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>

FUT. SUBJ.

supiere
<i>etc.</i>

**Tener, to have**

PRIN. PARTS Tener, teniendo, tenido, tengo, tuve, tuvo

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
tengo	tenía	—	tenga	tendré	tuve
tienes	<i>etc.</i>	ten	tengas	tendrás, <i>etc.</i>	tuviste
tiene		—	tenga		tuvo
tenemos		—	tengamos	CONDITIONAL	tuvimos
tenéis		tened	tengáis	tendría	tuvisteis
tienen		—	tengan	tendrían, <i>etc.</i>	tuvieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
tuviese	tuviera	tuviere
<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>

Derivatives are

**abstenerse, abstain****atenerse, stick to, heed****contener, restrain****detener, stop****entretener, entertain****mantener, maintain****obtener, obtain****retener, retain****sostener, sustain****Traer, to bring**

PRIN. PARTS Traer, trayendo, traído, traigo, traje, trajeo

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
traigo	traía	—	traiga	traeré	traje
traes	<i>etc.</i>	trae	traigas	<i>etc.</i>	trajiste
trae		—	traiga		trajo
traemos		—	traigamos	CONDITIONAL	trajimos
traéis		traed	traigáis	traería	trajisteis
traen		—	traigan	<i>etc.</i>	trajeron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
trajese	trajera	trajere
<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>

Derivatives are

**atraer, attract****contraer, contract****distraer, distract****extraer, extract**

Venir, to come

PRIN. PARTS Venir, viniendo, venido, vengo, vine, vino

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
vengo	venfa	—	venga	vendré	vine
vienes	etc.	ven	vengas	vendrás, etc.	viniste
viene		—	venga		vino
venimos		—	vengamos	CONDITIONAL	vinimos
venís		venid	vengáis	vendría	vinisteis
vienen		—	vengan	vendrían, etc.	vinieron

IMPF. SUBJ.

1ST FORM

viniese

etc.

2D FORM

viniera

etc.

FUT. SUBJ.

viniere

etc.

Important derivatives are

*avénir, reconcile*

*convenir, agree*

*prevenir, warn, anticipate*

*provenir, take rise from*

*sobrevenir, come unexpectedly*

*subvenir, assist*

**251. Defective Verbs, having only certain forms in use, are —**

1. *Placer, to please*, usually found only in the third person singular.

PRES. PART.	PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
placiendo	place	placía	plega, or plegue, or plazca	placerá	plugo, or plació
				CONDITIONAL placerfa	

IMPF. SUBJ.

1ST FORM

pluguiése, or

placiése

2D FORM

pluguiera, or

placiera

FUT. SUBJ.

pluguiere

2. *Raer, to erase*. This verb, but little used, is conjugated like *caer* with the addition in the present subjunctive of the forms *raya, rayas*, etc.

3. **Roer, to gnaw.**

PRES. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.
roo, roigo, royo	roa, roiga, roya
roes	roas, roigas, royas
roe	roa, roiga, roya
roemos	<i>etc.</i>
roéis	
roen	

a. The derivative **corroer, to corrode**, avoids the forms with **-ig-** or **-y-**.

4. Ten verbs ending in **-ir** are commonly used only in those forms which have **i** in the ending. Hence they lack the present indicative singular and third plural, the present subjunctive, and the imperative singular. Otherwise their conjugation is regular. These verbs are

<b>abolir, to abolish</b>	<b>despavorir, to become frightened</b>
<b>aguerrir, to make warlike</b>	<b>embaír, to impose upon</b>
<b>arrecirse, to become numb</b>	<b>empedernir, to harden</b>
<b>aterirse, to become numb</b>	<b>garantir, to guarantee</b>
<b>desmarrirse, to become sad</b>	<b>manir, to become tender</b>

**252. Impersonal Verbs** denote the action of an unspecified subject, generally *it* in English, but not referring to any person or thing. Such verbs in Spanish use the infinitive, the participles, and the third person singular of the various tenses.

1. Impersonal verbs denoting phenomena of nature are

<b>amanecer, to dawn : amanece, it is dawning</b>
<b>anochecer, to get dark or night : anochece, it is getting dark</b>
<b>deshelar, to thaw : deshiela, it is thawing</b>
<b>granizar, to hail : graniza, it hails</b>
<b>helar, to freeze : hiela, it is freezing</b>
<b>llover, to rain : llueve, it is raining</b>
<b>nevar, to snow : nieva, it is snowing</b>
<b>relampaguear, to lighten : relampaguea, it lightens</b>
<b>tronar, to thunder : truena, it thunders</b>

2. Other impersonal verbs are

- acontecer**, *to happen* : *acontece, it happens*  
**bastar**, *to be enough* : *basta, it is enough*  
**constar**, *to be evident* : *consta, it is evident*  
**convenir**, *to suit* : *conviene, it suits*  
**importar**, *to matter* : *importa, it matters*  
**suced**, *to happen* : *sucede, it happens*

**Haber, hacer, estar, and ser** may also be used impersonally.

**253. Haber Impersonal.** For the sake of the translation, a complete conjugation of **haber** used impersonally is here given.

INFINITIVE	<b>haber, be</b> ; <i>as, no puede haber, there cannot be</i>
PRES. PART.	<b>habiendo</b> , <i>there being</i>
PAST PART.	<b>habido</b> , <i>there having been</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT	<b>hay</b> , <i>there is, there are</i>
IMPERFECT	<b>había</b> , <i>there was, there were</i>
PRETERIT	<b>hubo</b> , <i>there was, there were</i>
FUTURE	<b>habrá</b> , <i>there will be</i>
CONDITIONAL	<b>habría</b> , <i>there would be</i>
PRES. PERF.	<b>ha habido</b> , <i>there has been</i>
PLUPERFECT	<b>había habido</b> , <i>there had been</i>
PRET. PERF.	<b>hubo habido</b> , <i>there had been</i>
FUT. PERF.	<b>habrá habido</b> , <i>there will have been</i>
CONDIT. PERF.	<b>habría habido</b> , <i>there would have been</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT	<b>haya</b> , <i>let there be</i>	<b>haya habido</b>
IMPERFECT 1ST	<b>hubiese</b>	<b>hubiese habido</b>
2D	<b>hubiera</b>	<b>hubiera habido</b>
FUTURE	<b>hubiere</b>	<b>hubiere habido</b>

a. With expressions of time **ha** is used instead of **hay**: **poco tiempo ha**, *a short time ago*.

**254. Passive Voice.** The passive voice of a Spanish verb is formed from the auxiliary **ser** and the past participle of the verb.

The past participle must agree in gender and number with the subject. For other auxiliaries see section 270, 1, a.

INFINITIVE	<b>ser llamado, to be called</b>
PRES. PART.	<b>siendo llamado, being called</b>
PAST PART.	<b>sido llamado, been called</b>

## INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT	<b>soy llamado, I am called</b> <b>eres llamado, you are called</b> <b>es llamado, he is called</b> <b>ella es llamada, she is called</b> <b>somos llamados, we are called</b> <b>sois llamados, you are called</b> <b>son llamados, they are called</b>
IMPERFECT	<b>era llamado, I was called</b> <b>eras llamado, you were called, etc.</b>
PRETERIT	<b>fui llamado, I was called, etc.</b>
FUTURE	<b>seré llamado, I shall be called, etc.</b>
CONDITIONAL	<b>sería llamado, I should be called, etc.</b>
IMPERATIVE 2D SING.	<b>sé llamado, be called</b>
2D PLUR.	<b>sed llamados, be called</b>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT	<b>sea llamado, etc.</b>
IMPERFECT 1ST FORM	<b>fuese llamado, etc.</b>
2D FORM	<b>fuera llamado, etc.</b>
FUTURE	<b>fuere llamado, etc.</b>

## COMPOUND TENSES

## INDICATIVE MOOD

PRES. PERF.	<b>he sido llamado, I have been called, etc.</b>
PLUPERFECT	<b>había sido llamado, I had been called, etc.</b>
PRET. PERF.	<b>hube sido llamado, I had been called, etc.</b>
FUT. PERF.	<b>habré sido llamado, I shall have been called, etc.</b>
CONDIT. PERF.	<b>habría sido llamado, I should have been called, etc.</b>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT	<b>haya sido llamado, etc.</b>
IMPERFECT 1ST FORM	<b>hubiese sido llamado, etc.</b>
2D FORM	<b>hubiera sido llamado, etc.</b>
FUTURE	<b>hubiere sido llamado, etc.</b>

## 255. Reflexive Verbs.

INFINITIVE	<i>levantarse, to get up</i>
PRES. PART.	<i>levantándose, getting up</i>
PAST PART.	<i>levantado, (got) up</i>

## PRESENT INDICATIVE

SING. 1.	<i>me levanto, I get up</i>	PLUR. 1.	<i>nos levantamos, we get up</i>
2.	<i>te levantas, you get up</i>	2.	<i>os levantáis, you get up</i>
3.	<i>se levanta, he gets up</i>	3.	<i>se levantan, they get up</i>
Vd.	<i>se levanta, you get up</i>	Vds.	<i>se levantan, you get up</i>

IMPERF. IND.	<i>me levantaba, I was getting up, etc.</i>
PRET. IND.	<i>me levanté, I got up, etc.</i>
FUT. IND.	<i>me levantaré, I shall get up, etc.</i>
CONDITIONAL	<i>me levantaría, I should get up, etc.</i>
PRES. PERF. IND.	<i>yo me he levantado, I have got up, etc.</i>
NEG.	<i>yo no me he levantado, I have not got up, etc.</i>
INTERR.	<i>¿ se ha levantado Vd. ? did you get up ? etc.</i>
NEG. INTERR.	<i>¿ no se ha levantado Vd. ? did you not get up ? etc.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD

SING. 2.	<i>levántate, get up</i>	For the negative, supply corresponding persons from the present subjunctive.
PLUR. 2.	<i>levantaos, get up</i>	

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE AS IMPERATIVE

SING. 2.	<i>que te levantes, get up</i>	<i>no te levantes, don't get up</i>
(formal)	<i>levántese Vd., get up</i>	<i>no se levante Vd., don't get up</i>
3.	<i>que se levante, let him get up</i>	<i>que no se levante, let him not get up</i>
PLUR. 1.	<i>levantémonos, let us get up</i>	<i>no nos levantemos, let us not get up</i>
2.	<i>que os levantéis, get up</i>	<i>no os levantéis, don't get up</i>
(formal)	<i>levántense Vds., get up</i>	<i>no se levanten Vds., don't get up</i>
3.	<i>que se levanten, let them get up</i>	<i>que no se levanten, let them not get up</i>

Other forms of reflexive verbs are formed in a similar way. The pronouns precede the verb except the infinitive, the present



participle, and the positive imperative, to which the pronoun is appended. A written accent is required whenever, by the addition of this extra syllable, the spoken accent is thrown farther back than the second syllable from the end of the word. Before *nos* the final *s* of the first person plural, and before *os* the final *d* of the second person plural, are dropped.

Thus,        *levantemos* + *nos* gives *levantémonos*  
                   *levantad* + *os* gives *levantaos*

But            *id* + *os* gives *idos*, from *irse*, *to go away*

### 256. Impersonal Reflexive.

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE

<i>se me ocurre, it occurs to me</i>	<i>se nos ocurre, it occurs to us</i>
<i>se te ocurre, it occurs to you</i>	<i>se os ocurre, it occurs to you</i>
<i>se le ocurre, it occurs to him, her</i>	<i>se les ocurre, it occurs to them</i>
<i>se le ocurre a Vd., it occurs to you</i>	

#### PRESENT PERFECT INDICATIVE

*se me ha ocurrido, it has occurred to me, etc.*

#### PRETERIT INDICATIVE

*se me ocurrió, it occurred to me, etc.*

**257. Reciprocal Verb.** The plural of some reflexive verbs may be called reciprocal because they represent the action as occurring between two or more individuals.

*amarse, to love each other*

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE

*nos amamos, we love each other*  
*os amáis, you love each other*  
*se aman, they love each other*

The persons concerned may be defined as to gender and number by the use of *el uno el otro, la una la otra*, etc.

*Juan y María se aman el uno a la otra. John and Mary love each other.*  
*Las mujeres se aman unas a otras. The women love each other.*

## 258. Periphrastic Conjugation. (Progressive Form.)

## PRESENT INDICATIVE

**estoy cantando, I am singing**  
**estás cantando, you are singing**  
**está cantando, he is singing**  
**estamos cantando, we are singing**  
**estáis cantando, you are singing**  
**están cantando, they are singing**

## IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

**estaba cantando, I was singing, etc.**

## PRETERIT INDICATIVE

**estuve cantando, I was singing, etc.**

Other tenses and moods are formed in a similar way.

Instead of **estar** other verbs may be used as the auxiliary, especially **ir**. See section 275.

## PRESENT INDICATIVE

**voy siendo, I am getting**  
**vas siendo, you are getting**  
**va siendo, he (it) is getting**  
**vamos siendo, we are getting**  
**vais siendo, you are getting**  
**van siendo, they are getting**

## IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

**iba siendo, I was getting, etc.**

## PRETERIT INDICATIVE

**fui siendo, I was getting, etc.**

**EXERCISE 36**I. *Make lists of*—

1. Irregular past participles.
2. Present participles with change of stem-vowel.
3. Irregular futures and conditionals, 1st person singular.
4. Irregular imperatives.

5. Preterits having an unaccented termination in the 1st and 3d person singular; as, *tuve, tuvo*.

6. Present indicatives, 1st person singular, having the letter *g* as the last letter of the stem, and the corresponding present subjunctive; as, *tengo, tenga*.

II. Study the irregular verbs according to the following scheme by substituting each verb in turn.

<i>I</i>	} sell	{ <b>vendo</b>	<i>he sells, vende</i>
<i>we</i>		{ <b>vendemos</b>	<i>do you sell? ¿ vende Vd. ?</i>
<i>they</i>		{ <b>venden</b>	

<i>I was selling, vendía</i>	<i>he used to sell, vendía</i>
------------------------------	--------------------------------

<i>I</i>	} have sold	{ <b>he vendido</b>	<i>have you sold? ¿ ha vendido Vd. ?</i>
<i>we</i>		{ <b>hemos vendido</b>	
<i>they</i>		{ <b>han vendido</b>	

<i>I</i>	} sold	{ <b>vendí</b>	<i>did you sell? ¿ vendió Vd. ?</i>
<i>he</i>		{ <b>vendió</b>	
<i>they</i>		{ <b>vendieron</b>	

<i>I shall</i>	} sell	{ <b>venderé</b>	<i>I should</i>	} sell	{ <b>vendería</b>
<i>we shall</i>		{ <b>venderemos</b>	<i>he would</i>		{ <b>vendería</b>
<i>they will</i>		{ <b>venderán</b>	<i>we should</i>		{ <b>venderíamos</b>

<i>sell</i>	{ (familiar), <b>vende</b>	<i>don't sell</i>	{ (familiar) <b>no vendas</b>
	{ (formal), <b>venda Vd.</b>		{ (formal) <b>no venda Vd.</b>

<i>let him</i>	} sell	{ <b>que él venda</b>
<i>let us</i>		{ <b>vendamos</b>
<i>let them</i>		{ <b>que vendan</b>

(*he wishes*) *me to sell, que yo venda*

*in order that he might sell, para que vendiese or vendiera*

(*I ordered*) *him to sell, que él vendiese or vendiera*

## CHAPTER XV

### SYNTAX OF VERB. TENSES

**259. Agreement.** A verb must agree in person and number with its subject.

Yo estudio ; tú juegas.

*I study ; you play.*

Eran las once de la mañana.

*It was eleven in the morning.*

**260. Person.** If the subject has different persons, the verb will have the first person in preference to the second or third, and the second in preference to the third.

Él y yo íbamos en el mismo tren.

*He and I were traveling in the same train.*

Ella cree que tú y yo nos entendemos.

*She believes that you and I have an understanding.*

Tú y Juan no os amáis.

*You and John do not love each other.*

*a.* A relative pronoun, as the subject of a verb, has the same person as its antecedent. See section 164, 5.

Iré yo que soy más joven.

*I will go who am younger.*

Tú eres un pastelero que siempre quieres quedar bien con todo el mundo.

*You are a trimmer who always wants to be on good terms with everybody.*

**261. Number.** A compound subject requires a plural verb.

El vino y el aceite se venden bien.

*Wine and oil sell well.*

1. But if the verb precedes the compound subject, it sometimes agrees with the first noun only.

Se vende mucho vino y aceite.

*Much wine and oil are sold.*

2. A singular noun or pronoun is frequently used to sum up a series, in which case the verb is singular.

**Café, caña de azúcar, algodón, tabaco y cochinilla, todo se produce con facilidad.** *Coffee, sugar-cane, cotton, tobacco, and cochineal, all are easily produced.*

a. Two or more singular subjects, closely related in thought but not connected by a conjunction, may be followed by a singular verb.

**La profesión, el partido político, la vida entera de muchos hombres pende de casos fortuitos.** *The profession, the politics, the whole life of many men depend on chance circumstances.*

3. Two or more neuters take a singular verb; hence, two infinitives with a singular verb is common. If, however, it is desired to emphasize each idea by way of contrast, the article is used before each neuter, followed by a plural verb.

**Sería difícil el moralizar y evangelizar a estas gentes.** *To make moral these peoples and Christianize them would be difficult.*

**Saber teología y no saber montar desacreditaba a D. Luis a los ojos de su primo.** *To know theology and not to know how to ride discredited Louis in the eyes of his cousin.*

**El oír y el entender no son lo mismo.** *Hearing and understanding are not the same.*

4. Words connected by *ni . . . ni*, *o . . . o*, or similar connectives may take a plural or a singular verb according to sense, but require different verbs to show the person when the person differs in the several clauses.

**Ni uno ni otro es mi padre.** *Neither one is my father.*

**Era un joven de una belleza que ni la penitencia ni la agonía habían podido eclipsar.** *He was a young man of a beauty which neither fasting nor the hour of death had been able to eclipse.*

**O Vd. es loco o yo lo soy.** *Either you are crazy or I am.*

5. Collective nouns may be followed by either a singular or a plural verb, according as the whole or its component parts are uppermost in mind.

**El día de su salida acudieron a saludarlo muchas personas. Gran parte fué con él hasta la Guaira y no se apartaron hasta perder de vista el barco que lo conducía a la Habana.** *On the day of his departure many persons came to pay their respects. A large number went with him as far as La Guaira, and did not disperse until the vessel which was taking him to Havana was lost from sight.*

6. With **ser** the subject rather than the predicate noun determines the number; but if the subject is separated from the verb while the predicate noun comes close after it, the verb may agree with the predicate noun in both person and number.

**Sus colecciones eran una maravilla.** *His collections were a marvel.*  
**El alquiler de esta casa son mil pesetas al año.** *The rent of this house is one thousand pesetas a year.*  
**Son los cuadros de Murillo lo que más me gusta en Sevilla.** *Murillo's paintings are what I like best in Sevilla.*  
 But, **Los cuadros de Murillo es lo que más me gusta en Sevilla.**

**262. Present Tense.** 1. The Spanish present tense indicative, generally used as in English, may also represent an action which began in the past but is still continuing in the present. English has the present perfect.

**¿Desde cuándo está Vd. aquí?** *Since when have you been here?*  
**Estoy aquí desde ayer.** *I have been here since yesterday.*  
**Sesenta años llevo sirviendo al rey.** *I have spent sixty years serving the king.*

a. After the impersonal verb **hace** with expressions of time, the present tense is frequent.

**Hace días que no la veo.** *It is days since I have seen her.*  
**Hace dos meses que estoy aquí.** *I have been here for two months.*

2. In lively narrative, the present is sometimes used instead of the preterit.

**Estaban ciegos de cólera. Me entero del motivo de la disputa, les digo que unos y otros están equivocados y se ponen furiosos contra mí.** *They were blind with anger. I learned the cause of the dispute and told them they were both wrong, and they got angry at me.*

3. The present also appears for the future, especially in offers.

**Si quieres que me marche, mañana salgo para Barcelona, y espero allí a embarcar.** *If you wish me to go, I will leave to-morrow for Barcelona and wait there to embark.*

**Se lo doy a Vd. por dos pesetas.** *I will give it to you for two pesetas.*

4. The present tense is employed in certain idiomatic expressions, as

**A poco más se muere.** *He almost died.*

**Tropezó y por poco se cae.** *He stumbled and almost fell.*

**263. Imperfect, Preterit, and Present Perfect compared and contrasted in their regular uses, see sections 63, 65, and 73.**

**264. Imperfect Indicative.** 1. The imperfect tense, indicative, has the force of the English pluperfect when used with expressions of time denoting a continuance of the action.

**Hacía dos años que estaba en Madrid.** *I had been in Madrid two years.*

2. The imperfect indicative may appear in place of the conditional.

**Una de las cosas que hacía, si llegara a tocarme un buen premio, era regalarle al portero el pantalón mío de cuadros.** *One of the things which I should do, if I happened to win a good prize, would be to give the janitor my checked trousers.*

**265. Preterit Perfect, or past anterior, indicative, is used after conjunctions which denote time, as apenas, scarcely; así que, as soon as; después que, after; etc.**

**Mi amo apenas me hubo visto cuando me llamó por mi nombre.** *Scarcely had my master seen me when he called me by name.*

**Después que hubieron salido del aposento.** *After they had left the apartment.*

a. The simple preterit is generally employed instead of the compound preterit.

**Así que se marchó el médico.** *As soon as the doctor had gone.*

ð. The conjunctions compounded with *que* lose their first element if the participle stands first.

**Echado que hubo pie a tierra.** *As soon as he had set foot on the ground.*

**Salido que hubieron del aposento.** *After they had left the apartment.*  
**Sentado que se hubo ella.** *When she had seated herself.*

**266. Future.** The future indicative may denote probability.

**Serán las doce.** *It is probably twelve o'clock.*

¿ **Vd. sabrá bastante contabilidad y tendrá buena letra?** *No, señor, no la tengo muy buena ni muy mala siquiera. No sé leer.* *I suppose you know bookkeeping and write a good hand? No, sir, I don't write a very good hand nor even a very bad one. I can't read.*

*a.* The future tense is frequent in rhetorical questions that are considered undeniable by the speaker.

¿ **Habrà desgracia mayor?** *Can there be a greater misfortune?*  
 ¿ **Qué ojos los de aquella niña!** *"What eyes that girl has!"*  
 — ¿ **Serán más hermosos que los suyos?** *pregunté.* *"Can they be handsomer than yours?" I asked.*

*b.* For *haber de* and *ir a* as paraphrases for the future, see sections 107, 3; and 60.

**267. The Future Perfect** has uses corresponding to those of the simple future.

¡ **Qué asombro habrá sido el de Vd.!** *What astonishment yours must have been!*

**268. The Conditional** may be employed like the future, to denote probability, when referring to past time.

**Serían las tres de la madrugada.** *It was probably three in the morning.*

**Podría tener a la sazón catorce años.** *He might have been at that time fourteen years old.*

**Juan no vino. Estaría enfermo.** *John did not come. I suppose he was sick.*

**269. Impersonal Verbs.** Verbs that are used only in the third person singular are called impersonal. See section 252



1. Verbs denoting phenomena of nature are impersonal in both Spanish and English.

**Llueve.**

*It is raining.*

**Va a helar.**

*It is going to freeze.*

**Está nevando.**

*It is snowing.*

2. **Ser** with adjectives and a few nouns is common in the impersonal use.

**Es justo.**

*It is right.*

**Fué claro.**

*It was evident.*

**Fuerza es confesar.**

*It must be confessed.*

3. Spanish has many impersonal expressions which correspond to personal expressions in English. The person concerned in the action of the Spanish verb is expressed by the indirect object.

**A mí no me importa.**

*I don't care. (Lit. It doesn't matter to me.)*

**No me conviene vender.**

*It doesn't suit me to sell.*

**Le toca a Vd. hablar.**

*It is your turn to speak.*

4. Many reflexive verbs are used impersonally. As the person concerned is expressed by the indirect object pronoun, these verbs may be said to have an impersonal conjugation. See section 256.

**Se me figura.**

*I imagine.*

**Se me olvida.**

*I forget.*

**Se nos ocurre.**

*There occurs to us.*

**¿Qué se te ofrece?**

*What is the matter?*

**A D. Luis se le figuraba que iba a deslustrar su gloria.**

*Louis fancied that he was going to blast his reputation.*

### EXERCISE 37

1. The color, the drawing, the composition, all revealed a genius of the first rank. 2. You and I are going to Madrid. 3. Who says so? I, who have seen you take off your hat. 4. The old man and you were seated before the door. 5. The doctor, the notary, and the priest were present at the party. 6. Eating and drinking are

indispensable. 7. Neither John nor Paul has arrived. 8. Either she will write or I will. 9. Many people came to say good-by, and some wept. 10. I have been up<sup>1</sup> more than two hours. 11. You are probably a friend of the Spanish consul. 12. When I met you, I had been there half an hour. 13. It was only six months that they had been married. 14. We have always been friends from childhood. 15. He was probably forty years old when he took command<sup>2</sup> of the army. 16. As soon as he had finished his speech the audience shouted, "Bravo, bravo." 17. After the captain had gone ashore, the sailors stopped working. 18. There were many strangers who had come to attend the fair. 19. I promised that neither I nor any of my friends would raise insurrectionary<sup>3</sup> parties. 20. It is more than a year since I have spoken to him. 21. I have forgotten the lesson. 22. It did not occur to me to say anything. 23. He imagines he is<sup>4</sup> a great orator. 24. It does not matter to me what he says. 25. It is very fine weather to-day: the sun is shining and there is no dust. 26. There was no moon that night. 27. If it rains, it will be very muddy in the streets. 28. Was it very cold when you were in the country? 29. In the summer it dawns early and grows dark late. 30. I do not know what education he is likely to have, nor what books he may have read. 31. I suppose he is coming to-morrow morning. 32. She is to deliver the work next Monday evening. 33. Have you been waiting long? 34. The candidate had many friends in the audience, but a large number did not applaud his speech. 35. The salary of this position is two thousand dollars a year. 36. We are the ones who have the greatest interest in this project.

<sup>1</sup> *levantado*.

<sup>2</sup> Supply the definite article.

<sup>3</sup> Omit.

<sup>4</sup> Use infinitive.

## CHAPTER XVI

### PASSIVE VOICE. PARTICIPLES

**270. Passive Voice.** The passive voice indicates that the action is performed upon the subject ; as, *The dog was kicked by the boy.* The person performing the action is called the agent ; as, *boy* in the example.

1. In Spanish the passive voice is formed by the combination of the auxiliary verb *ser* and the past participle of the verb, which must agree in gender and number with the subject. See section 254 for conjugation.

*a.* Other verbs than *ser* are sometimes joined with the past participle in the formation of the passive voice ; as, *quedar, hallarse, encontrarse, verse, andar, ir.*

Queda explicado en la página 20.	<i>It is explained on page 20.</i>
Las tropas se hallaban mandadas por buenos oficiales.	<i>The troops were commanded by good officers.</i>
En el fondo del lienzo se veía pintado otro cuadro.	<i>In the background of the canvas was painted another picture.</i>
Van incluídas muchas fotografías en el diccionario.	<i>Many photographs are included in the dictionary.</i>

2. The agent in Spanish is introduced by *por* ; or, in case the action is mental, by *de*.

César fué asesinado por Bruto.	<i>Cæsar was assassinated by Brutus.</i>
César fué respetado de todos.	<i>Cæsar was respected by all.</i>

**271.** The passive voice is little used in Spanish. On the other hand, it is commonly employed in English for the following purposes :

(1) To give prominence to the thing acted on by placing it at the beginning of the sentence as the subject of the passive verb.

(2) To make a statement indefinite.

Now Spanish, using the active voice, obtains the same results as follows :

1. By reason of the personal *a* (see section 134) which allows the object to stand first in the sentence.

**A Carlos V sigue Felipe II.** *Charles V is succeeded by Philip II.*

2. Indefiniteness is obtained by the use of the third person plural. (See section 196.)

**Me llamaron a las cinco.** *I was called at five o'clock.*  
**Sintió que le tocaban en la espalda.** *He felt himself touched on the shoulder.*

3. By substituting the reflexive verb ; see section 272.

**272. Reflexive Substitute for Passive.** As a substitute for the passive voice, the reflexive verb is most important.

**Puede decirse.** *It may be said.*  
**Se han mandado los efectos por el vapor Caracas.** *The goods have been shipped by the steamer Caracas.*  
**Se daba la orden de ataque.** *The order for attack was given.*  
**Diéronseles las mejores armas.** *The best arms were given them.*

*a.* As with the true passive, the agent may be introduced by *por* after a reflexive verb.

**Firmóse la concordia primero por él y después por el rey.** *The agreement was signed first by him and afterwards by the king.*

*b.* The reflexive substitute for the passive occurs frequently in signs and general statements.

**Se vende la casa.** *The house is for sale.*  
**Se prohíbe fumar.** *Smoking forbidden.*  
**Aquí se habla español.** *Spanish spoken here.*  
**Se dice.** *It is said. (People say. They say.)*  
**Se alquila.** *For hire (or rent).*

**273. Impersonal Reflexive.** The reflexive verb used impersonally as a substitute for the passive voice conveys an idea of indefiniteness. *Se*, in the popular mind, acquires almost the meaning of *somebody* or *people*.

**Se nos pregunta por correo.**

*We are asked by mail. (Lit. It is asked us by mail.)*

**Se procesa a los criminales.**

*The criminals are prosecuted.*

**Se me busca a mí.**

*I am being looked for.*

**Se va a salir de la iglesia.**

*People are about to come out of the church.*

**274. Present Participle.** The present participle, or gerund, has many uses. It never changes its form; and may have a subject different from that of the principal verb. It may denote —

1. Time.

**Nos conocimos siendo niños.**

*We became acquainted when we were children.*

2. Manner.

**Vé corriendo.**

*Go on the run.*

3. Means.

**En otros siglos hubiera logrado su propósito pagando un asesino.**

*In other centuries he would have achieved his purpose by paying an assassin.*

4. Cause.

**No yendo nosotros, supongo que no irás tú.**

*Since we are not going, I suppose you will not go.*

**Siendo ella bonita y Luciano distinguido, hacían una buena pareja.**

*As she was pretty and Luciano distinguished, they made a fine couple.*

5. The only preposition used with the gerund is *en*; which then means *after*.

**En muriendo ella, saldrás de aquí.**

*After she dies, you will get out of here.*

6. The gerund must not be used as an adjective. Spanish has many adjectives derived from the Latin present participle in **ante** or **ente**, which take its place.

*una cesta colgante, a hanging basket*  
*agua corriente, running water*

a. If no adjective exists to express the idea, a relative clause must be employed.

**Remito a Vd. cuatro cajas que contienen cien fusiles.** *I send you four boxes containing a hundred rifles.*

**275. Periphrastic Conjugation.** The present participle is used with verbs to denote progressive action, whenever it is desired to emphasize the progressive character of the act. The weak English progressive is usually the corresponding simple tense form.

*She is singing.*

**Ella canta.**

*She was singing.*

**Ella cantaba.**

But, **Ella estaba cantando en el momento en que entré.** *She was singing at the time when I stepped in.*

The verb **estar** most frequently occurs as the auxiliary in the periphrastic conjugation; but other verbs, as **hallarse**, **encontrarse**, **venir**, **andar**, **quedar**, are employed and give great precision to the idea. With verbs denoting movement **ir** is especially common. The present participle with these words is closely allied to its use in expressing manner. For the progressive conjugation see section 258.

**Pedro está construyendo una tapia.** *Peter is building a wall.*  
**He estado arreglando la habitación.** *I have been putting the room in order.*

**Conforme ella iba leyendo la carta, se iba poniéndose pálida.** *As she continued reading the letter she kept growing paler and paler.*  
**Los relámpagos fueron siendo menos frecuentes.** *The flashes of lightning kept getting less frequent.*

**La casa de Cerinola venía cayendo desde tiempo del padre de Luis.** *The house of Cerinola had been decaying since the time of Louis' father.*

**Un día el pintor andaba recorriendo las iglesias de Madrid.** *One day the painter was visiting the churches of Madrid.*

**276. Past Participle.** With auxiliary verbs the Spanish past participle forms compound tenses and the passive voice. See sections 241, 254.

1. With **haber**, the past participle is invariable; with other verbs it agrees with the subject.

**Ha escrito la carta.**

*He has written the letter.*

**Tengo la carta que ha escrito.**

*I have the letter which he has written.*

**Está }  
Queda }** escrita la carta.

*The letter is written.*

**Fué escrita la carta.**

*The letter was written.*

2. **Tener** may be used, with transitive verbs only, as an auxiliary when attention is directed to the state of the direct object rather than to the process indicated by the verb. The participle then agrees with the direct object.

**Lo que más dañaba a la división eran unas piezas que los carlistas tenían situadas en un cerrillo.**

*What most harmed the division was a couple of guns which the Carlists had located on a knoll.*

**¿Cómo decirle que la tengo engañada?**

*How tell her that I keep her deceived?*

a. **Llevar** is sometimes used like **tener** as an auxiliary verb.

**Llevo escrita la carta.**

*I have got the letter written.*

3. **Ser** cannot be the auxiliary with an intransitive verb.

**Han ido.**

*They are gone.*

**Ha muerto.**

*He is dead.*

4. Some past participles have an active meaning; but they are usually applicable only to human beings.

**Un hombre muy leído.**

*A well-read man.*

**Es cansado.**

*He is tiresome.*

agradecido, *grateful*

atrevido, *bold*

callado, *silent*

divertido, *merry*

parecido, *similar, like*

porfiado, *obstinate*

sentido, *sensitive*

sufrido, *patient*

and many others.

5. The past participle may be used absolutely; in which case it usually stands first in the clause. English commonly requires in the corresponding construction that the present participle of an auxiliary precede the past participle.

Dicho esto, salió.

*Having said this, he went out.*

A mí, muerta la señora Condesa,  
nada me puede interesar de  
aquella casa.

*As for me, now that the countess  
is dead, nothing in that house  
can interest me.*

6. The means whereby the action of a past participle is carried out is usually introduced by *de*.

La tierra está cubierta de nieve.

*The earth is covered with snow.*

Fué cargado de hierros.

*He was loaded with irons.*

7. The prepositions *antes de*, *después de*, *luego de*, and *para* may govern an absolute participial construction, in which the noun is often in reality the subject of a passive verb.

Después de cerradas las puertas,  
empezó la conferencia.

*After the doors were closed the  
lecture began.*

Luego de vuelto le ví.

*After he returned I saw him.*

Las ideas no eran para reveladas  
a su sobrina.

*The ideas were not (such as) to be  
revealed to his niece.*

### EXERCISE 38

1. His opinion was listened to with profound respect. 2. The lady was agreeably surprised by the visit. 3. I complain and I am told that I ought not to complain. 4. Behind my back I hear myself called. 5. The lands have been sold at auction two months ago. 6. There were seen on both sides two long narrow counters. 7. On a table in the center were placed the works recently published and the reviews. 8. The letter for you was sent to Madrid. 9. The letter lay inclosed in a little secret drawer. 10. Everything has been sold very dear. 11. Not a bill is paid without my consent. 12. People say that it is the fashion. 13. The doors are closed at six o'clock. 14. This house for rent. 15. It may be said that I haven't a single moment of rest. 16. Segovia was founded



by the Phœnicians. 17. The walls were adorned with religious engravings. 18. The trees are now covered with leaves. 19. The French king was made a<sup>1</sup> prisoner by the Spaniards. 20. A sharp dispute had the community divided. 21. As he passed the bank he thought of<sup>2</sup> the money which he had deposited there. 22. The days are getting shorter. 23. It is raining. 24. I am getting tired of my residence in this place. 25. We have been working all day. 26. It is snowing at present. 27. She was<sup>3</sup> talking to Sancho when she entered the room. 28. I prefer to earn wages<sup>4</sup> by sewing. 29. You ought to be ashamed to work like a peon when you are the richest man in the village. 30. As the teacher was sick, we had no lessons to-day. 31. By traveling one learns many things. 32. After the performance was finished<sup>5</sup> we left the theater. 33. She is an amusing actress, very similar to her father. 34. They would rob me of<sup>1</sup> the treasure after it was discovered. 35. He has the gold coins hidden in his garden. 36. Why did you come in when I was busy? 37. Having reached his village, he found that his parents were dead. 38. He earned this money by working all summer. 39. As he had no friends in the city, he did not remain there long. 40. Because he was a bold man by nature, he did not hesitate. 41. The sick man was taken to the hospital and his life was saved. 42. The question having been read,<sup>5</sup> the assembly discussed it for more than an hour.

<sup>1</sup> Omit.

<sup>2</sup> en.

<sup>3</sup> Use *venir*.

<sup>4</sup> Say *a wage*.

<sup>5</sup> Absolute past participle.

## CHAPTER XVII

### INFINITIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE MOODS

**277. Infinitive Mood.** See Lesson XIX, Part I, for discussion of this mood before reading the following additions.

1. Infinitives completing the sense of impersonal verbs or of predicate nouns and adjectives stand without a connecting preposition.

**Importa saber.**

*It is important to know.*

**Es fácil equivocarse.**

*It is easy to be mistaken.*

**Es lástima perder el tiempo.**

*It is a pity to waste time.*

a. If the dependent verb has a subject expressed by a noun, or by a pronoun other than the indirect object pronoun, it is better to replace the infinitive by a clause having the verb in the subjunctive mood.

**Tiempo es de partir.**

*It is time to leave.*

**Tiempo es de que tú te vayas.**

*It is time for you to leave.*

**Me es imposible salir.**

*It is impossible for me to go out.*

**Es imposible que salgan los niños.**

*It is impossible for the children to go out.*

2. An infinitive connected with an adjective by the preposition **de** often has a passive force. Such verbs are usually reflexive.

**Esta fruta es buena de comer.**

*This fruit is good to eat.*

**Es digno de notarse.**

*It is worth noting.*

3. Infinitives often stand alone after relative and interrogative pronouns in cases where some auxiliary like **poder** or **deber** can be introduced.

**No tengo a quien dirigirme.**

*I have nobody to whom to apply.*

**No sé qué decir.**

*I do not know what to say.*

4. With the indefinite pronouns **algo**, **nada**, **mucho**, **poco**, and nouns denoting something indefinite, infinitives may stand after the connective **que**.

**Nada tengo que decir.**

*I have nothing to say.*

**Deja mucho que desear.**

*It leaves much to be desired.*

**El mancebo esperaba cantidades que anotar.**

*The clerk was waiting for figures to take down.*

5. Infinitives are sometimes used as imperatives, frequently introduced by **a**, and often in exclamations which repeat a previous statement.

¡**Ea! despejar, que voy a echar la llave.**

*Come! Clear out, I am going to lock up.*

¡**Pues a dormir, caballeros!**

*Well, sirs, to bed!*

¡**Pagarme Vd. a mí!**

*You pay me!*

**278. Subjunctive Mood.** The subjunctive mood conveys an idea of indefiniteness. Hence, in addition to the uses of the dependent subjunctive already given, Lessons XX and XXI, there are the following. The verbs of dependent clauses take the subjunctive,

1. When they depend on questions, or on any construction, implying restriction or a negative:

¿**Quién asegura que sean ciertas estas noticias?**

*Who vouches for it that this news is true?*

**Yo no tenía persona que me aconsejara.**

*I had nobody to advise me.*

**No creo que ningún griego haya estado tan contento como yo lo estaba.**

*I do not believe any Greek has been as satisfied as I was.*

2. After impersonal expressions unless these state a certainty:

**Es posible que sea ella mi madrastra.**

*It is possible that she may become my stepmother.*

**Mejor es que no juguemos a los naipes.**

*It is better for us not to play cards.*

¿**Qué importa que yo esté mejor o peor?**

*What does it matter whether I am better or worse?*

But, Es cierto que ninguna obra de semejante antigüedad se ha conservado tan bien. *It is certain that no work of such antiquity has been preserved so well.*

3. In indefinite relative clauses and those with an indefinite antecedent :

Haré lo que Vd. me mande. *I will do whatever you command me.*

¿ Hay quien pueda salvarla ? *Is there anybody who can save her ?*

Quiero un muchacho que lleve esta carta al correo. *I want a boy to take this letter to the post-office.*

4. In clauses presenting alternatives :

Ya me quites la vida, ya me la dejes, morirás ahorcado. *Whether you take my life or grant it to me, you will die on the gallows.*

Tuviésemos o no dinero, fuese de día o de noche, ardiese la tierra bajo el sol del verano, o estuviese cubierta de una vara de nieve. *Whether we had money or not, whether it was day or night, whether the earth was burning beneath the summer sun or whether it was covered by a yard of snow.*

5. In any clause which implies indefiniteness, concession, or the like, and is introduced by an adverb of doubt, a conjunction, or a conjunctive phrase ; after the same conjunction may appear the indicative if the clause denotes certainty :

Voy a referir cosas que acaso Vd. ya sepa. *I am going to relate things which perhaps you already know.*

Con una condición me callo, y es que no te vayas de mi lado. *On one condition I will be silent, and that is that you do not leave me.*

No hay desgracia en el mundo, por grande que sea, que no pueda ser mayor. *There is no misfortune in the world, however great it may be, which cannot be greater.*

Busqué un sitio donde pudiera dormir. *I looked for a place where I might sleep.*

6. After superlatives or negatives if the writer wishes to make the statement more modest or less sweeping:

**No hay la menor ofensa en que yo la acompañe.** *There is not the slightest offense in my accompanying you.*

**Nada indicaba que tuviese tan grande animosidad contra mí.** *Nothing indicated that he had such great animosity toward me.*

**Ésta será la última carta que yo escriba a Vd.** *This is the last letter that I shall write you.*

7. In both principal and subordinate clauses of many expressions denoting indifference, are found the present, the imperfect, and the future tenses of the subjunctive:

**Sea como sea.** *Be it as it may.*

**Fuera como fuese, las circunstancias le favoreciesen.** *However it was, circumstances would favor him.*

**Quienquiera denota persona indeterminada, alguno, sea el que fuere.** *Quienquiera denotes an indefinite person, any one, whoever it may be.*

**Valga lo que valiere.** *Take it for what it may be worth.*

**Venga lo que viniere.** *Come what may.*

**279. Unreal Conditions** expressed by the imperfect subjunctive may have the imperfect subjunctive in the conclusion as well as in the condition, especially if the condition is placed first with the omission of *si*. The second clause must then be connected by *y* or *que*.

**Si te hubieras ido no hubieras presenciado esta victoria.** *If you had gone you would not have witnessed this victory.*

**Pidiera ella mi protección y (or que) yo se la dispensara.** *Should she ask for my protection, I would give it to her.*

*a.* The imperfect subjunctive may appear in the conclusion of a condition which is not expressed.

**¿Quién creyera que en esta forma estaba oculto un dios?** *Who would believe (if anybody saw me) that in this form was hidden a god?*

**Vierais entonces un cuadro sublime.** *You would then have seen (if you had been there) a sublime picture.*

*b.* The simple tenses are often used instead of the compound tenses as in the last preceding example.

**280.** The **Imperfect Subjunctive** of the *-ra* form, being derived from the Latin pluperfect, was formerly used as a pluperfect indicative and occasionally appears in poetry or in imitations of the older form.

Pasaran ya tres semanas desde  
nuestra llegada.

*Three weeks had passed since our  
arrival.*

El arte mágica que su padre le  
enseñara.

*The magic art which his father  
had taught him.*

**281.** The **Future Subjunctive**, also called the hypothetical subjunctive, is used in clauses implying a supposition. It is now found only in legal style or antiquated phrases.

Cuando un comerciante encargare  
a su mancebo la recepción de  
mercaderías y éste las recibiere  
sin reparo sobre su cantidad o  
calidad, surtiré su recepción los  
mismos efectos que si la hubiere  
hecho el principal.

*When a merchant intrusts to his  
clerk the reception of merchan-  
dise and the latter receives it  
without examination as to its  
quantity or quality, its accept-  
ance shall entail the same con-  
sequences as if the proprietor  
had done it.*

Al que leyere.

*To him who may read (found in  
the preface of books).*

Si alguno llamare a la puerta, le  
abrirás.

*If anybody should knock at the  
door, you will open to him.*

*a.* The present indicative after *si*, or the present subjunctive after a conjunctive phrase implying uncertainty, now replaces the hypothetical subjunctive.

Si alguno llama a la puerta, le abrirás, or En caso que alguno llame a la puerta le abrirás.

**282.** Wishes may be expressed,

1. By the simple independent subjunctive :

¡ Dios me lo perdone !

*God pardon me for it.*

2. By the subjunctive dependent on *ojalá* or *plega a Dios* with or without a connecting *que* :

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| ¡ Ojalá disfrutemos otros muchos años ! | <i>May we enjoy many other years !</i>        |
| ¡ Plega a Dios que sea recompensado !   | <i>May it please God that he be rewarded.</i> |

a. *Ojalá* may even stand alone when referring to a previous verb.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| Ví todo, hasta la posibilidad de que él se defendiera, me desarmara y me matase. ¡ Ojalá ! | <i>I saw everything, even the possibility that he might defend himself, disarm me, and kill me. I wish he might.</i> |
|--|--|

3. By the imperfect subjunctive when contrary to reality or considered impossible of attainment :

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| ¡ Fuese ya mañana y estuviésemos en la batalla ! | <i>Would that it were the morrow and that we were in the battle.</i> |
|--|--|

Such wishes may be introduced by *ojalá*, *pluguiera a Dios*, *así*, *quién*, *si*.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a. ¡ Ojalá no hubiera ido !                                      | <i>O that I had not gone !</i>   |
| ¡ Ojalá fuesen todos los pueblos como éste !                     | <i>O that all towns were like this !</i>                                     |
| b. ¡ Pluguiera a Dios que aun viviese !                          | <i>Would to God that he were still alive !</i>                               |
| ¡ Pluguiese a Dios que así fuera !                               | <i>Would to God that it were so !</i>  |
| c. ¡ Así esta pícara fatiga me permitiese a mí bromear también ! | <i>I wish this confounded weariness would permit me also to make jests !</i> |

d. *Quién* implies the first person singular :

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| ¡ Quién supiera escribir !                   | <i>I wish I knew how to write !</i>                                    |
| ¡ Quién pudiera volar !                      | <i>I wish I could fly !</i>  |
| ¡ Quién fuera señora para llevar tal traje ! | <i>I wish I were a lady to wear such a gown !</i>                      |
| e. ¡ Si bastara querer !                     | <i>If only wishing were enough !</i>                                   |
| ¡ Si viera Vd. qué viejo y feo está !        | <i>I wish you could (or You ought to) see how old and ugly he is !</i> |

## EXERCISE 39

*(Before attempting this exercise the student should review Lessons XIX, XX, and XXI, of Part I.)*

1. He found little or nothing to admire.
2. It is time to go.
3. It is time that John should come.
4. It would be good for you to take him out to get<sup>1</sup> a little air.
5. My father demands of me that I should stay here with him at least two months.
6. She wished a good situation for her daughter which would get her out of financial difficulties.<sup>2</sup>
7. My father and his friends are delighted that I am not completely ignorant of country affairs.
8. It is strange that there should be no time to write to you.
9. I have told him not to speak to me again.
10. Get another to play the piano.
11. It is not good for man to be alone.
12. If you had listened to me, this would not have happened.
13. Even if it were so, why had he not come?
14. It is possible that mamma will not allow us to talk to each other alone.
15. As there is nobody here who will do me that service, I will introduce myself.
16. It is necessary for me to have a Spaniard accompany me.
17. As soon as it is night I will go and get you.
18. I thank you greatly that you have had the kindness to pick it up.
19. Do you believe that he will come?
20. I was afraid that Sancho would not come the second night.
21. It does not matter to me that she does not know me.
22. It is not evident that the jewel is yours.
23. I remember as if it were a thing of yesterday.
24. *Ojalá* comes from the Arabic, "if God wills," by<sup>3</sup> which is denoted a keen desire that a thing should happen.
25. O that I may see him alive!
26. I wish I might live a thousand years.
27. May he come soon.
28. I wish this tooth would stop aching.
29. No boat has come in, that I know of.<sup>4</sup>
30. Although it was late, he decided to enter the theater.
31. The table was set for all those who might come.
32. I want a boy to go to New York.
33. Do you know anybody

<sup>1</sup> tomar.<sup>2</sup> financial difficulties = apuros.<sup>3</sup> con.<sup>4</sup> Omit.



who speaks Spanish? 34. Whether he comes or not, he will pay for<sup>1</sup> the ticket. 35. If Carlos himself had come to ask me for the money, I should have refused it. 36. It is to be supposed that he had nothing to do. 37. At your age, illnesses, however severe they may be, are easily cured. 38. Alas! gracious goodness, I wish I were that! 39. The girls trembled, although it was impossible that Doña Blanca had heard them. 40. He dreamed of Europe where he would see theaters and civilized people. 41. However strong he may be, it is possible that he lose. 42. Would I find anybody who would help me? 43. There is no church in the city which we have not visited. 44. Whether he goes to Europe or stays at home, it is the same to me. 45. However that may be, I do not hesitate in saying that I believe him. 46. It is the least that he can do. 47. Francisco, learning that his father was asleep, in order that the latter might not hear him and wake up, went on tiptoe to his room. 48. Perhaps the young man might have come earlier by asking permission of his master to leave on<sup>2</sup> the morning train, but he did not wish to do so.

<sup>1</sup> Omit.

<sup>2</sup> con.

## CHAPTER XVIII

### IDIOMATIC USES OF VERBS

**283. Andar — ir — pasearse.** Andar denotes mechanical motion, as *to walk, go, move*; ir, *to go*; pasearse, *to take walks or drives for pleasure.*

La máquina no anda.

*The machine does not go.*

Anduvo cinco leguas.

*He walked five leagues.*

La tierra anda.

*The earth moves.*

Voy a pie, a caballo, en coche, en tranvía, en ferrocarril.

*I go on foot, on horseback, in a carriage, in the street car, on the railway.*

Me paseo

Doy un paseo

Doy una vuelta

*I take a walk.*

Se pasea en coche todas las tardes.

*He drives every afternoon.*

**284. Caber** is from the root of the English word *capable*.

No cabe duda.

*There is no doubt.*

Si cabe.

*If it is possible.*

**Caber en**, *to hold, to be contained*, takes for its subject the name of the thing contained.

Los vestidos no caben en el baúl.

*The trunk will not hold the clothes.*

No cabe el piano por la ventana.

*The piano will not go through the window.*

¿Cabe Vd.?

*Can you get in? Is there room for you?*

**285. Caer**, *to fall*.

*caer bien, to be becoming*

El traje cae bien a la muchacha.

*The suit is very becoming to the girl.*

	<i>caer a, to open on</i>
La ventana cae a la calle.	<i>The window opens on the street.</i>
	<i>caer en, to catch on, to comprehend</i>
No cae en ello.	<i>He does not comprehend it.</i>
¡Ya caigo!	<i>Now I catch on.</i>

**286. Conocer** — *saber, to know*. **Conocer** refers to persons and things; *saber*, to ideas.

Conozco al Sr. Díaz.	<i>I know Mr. Díaz.</i>
¿ Conoce Vd. la música ?	<i>Do you recognize the music ?</i>
¿ Sabe Vd. esta lección ?	<i>Do you know this lesson ?</i>
¿ Sabe Vd. quién es ?	<i>Do you know who it is ?</i>

*a. Conocer* also means *to make one's acquaintance*. *Le conocí en Sevilla, I made his acquaintance in Seville*. Hence *un conocido, an acquaintance*.

*b. Saber a* means *to taste of*.

La sopa sabe a petróleo.	<i>The soup tastes of kerosene.</i>
--------------------------	-------------------------------------

**287: Dar, to give**, appears idiomatically in over 200 expressions.

	<i>dar la hora, to strike the hour</i>
Van a dar las ocho.	<i>It is going to strike eight.</i>
	<i>dar los buenos días, to wish one good morning</i>
	<i>dar un paso, to take a step</i>
	<i>dar cuerda a un reloj, to wind up a clock</i>
	<i>dar a, to open on, to lead to</i>
Esta puerta da al patio.	<i>This door opens on the court.</i>
	<i>dar con, to happen on, to find</i>
¿ Has dado con ella ?	<i>Have you found her ?</i>

On the other hand, English *give* in the sense of *to make a present* is *regalar*; *to grant favors, conceder*; *to deliver or hand, entregar*.

Mi padre me regaló un reloj de oro.	<i>My father gave me a gold watch.</i>
Me concedió el permiso de visitar el castillo.	<i>He gave me permission to visit the castle.</i>
Le entregué el telegrama.	<i>I gave him the telegram.</i>

288. Echar, *to throw or toss.*

Écheme Vd. ese lápiz.

*Toss me that pencil.*

echar el café, *to pour the coffee*

echar una carta al buzón (or al correo), *to mail a letter*

echar llave a la puerta, *to lock the door*

echar (de) menos, *to miss*

echar de ver, *to notice*

echar a perder, *to spoil*

Una alfombra riquísima echada a perder. *A magnificent rug spoiled.*

echarse a, *to begin*

El señor se echó a reír.

*The gentleman began to laugh.*

289. Faltar, *to be lacking* — sobrar, *to be superfluous, to be enough and more, to be left.*

Sobran palabras y falta sentido.

*Too many words and a lack of sense.*

No faltaba más (a frequent expression, often used with present signification).

*That caps the climax.*

a. Note the use of the imperfect subjunctive in the following :

Poco faltaba para que cayera.

*He nearly fell.*

Por poco, adverbio con que se da a entender que apenas faltó nada para que sucediera una cosa.

*Por poco, an adverb, by which one is given to understand that something almost happened.*

290. Hacer, *to do or make.*

hacer caso de, *to pay attention to, to mind*

No hagas caso de ése.

*Never mind that fellow.*

hacer daño, *to hurt, to be injurious*

Hace daño a los ojos leer en una sala oscura.

*It hurts the eyes to read in a dark room.*

hacer falta, *to need* (with indirect object of person concerned)

A Juan le hace falta un sombrero.

*John needs a hat.*

Me hace falta un paraguas.

*I need an umbrella.*

Hace falta tinta.

*There is no ink. (Ink is needed.)*

*hacer el papel, to play the part*

*hacer preguntas, to ask questions*

*hacer lo posible, to do one's best*

**Hizo lo posible para ganar el premio.** *He did his best to win the prize.*

For **hacer** with infinitives, see section 104, c.

**Hace construir una casa.** *He is having a house built.*

*hacer por (+ infinitive), try*

**Haga Vd. por venir.** *Try to come.*

a. **Hacerse to become.** The past participle, **hecho**, often as an adjective; **as, ropa hecha, ready-made clothing.**

**Encontró a su hermanita hecha una soberbia moza.** *He found his little sister grown into a fine-looking young lady.*

**Estaba allí con la boca hecha un agua.** *He stood there with his mouth watering.*

b. **Hace impersonal, see section 58.**

**Hace frío.** *It is cold (of the weather).*

**Hace un año.** *A year ago.*

**291. Poder, to be able, can, may,** denotes physical ability. English sometimes uses *can* in the sense of mental ability, which in Spanish is **saber**.

**Sé nadar, pero no puedo nadar hoy, estando malo.** *I can swim (that is, I know how to swim), but I cannot swim today because I am sick.*

**Poder** also implies permission, *may*.

¿ **Se puede entrar?** *May one come in?*

*poder más, to be more powerful*

**Veremos quién puede más.** *We will see who can (do) most, or is most powerful.*

*no poder más, can do no more*

**No puedo más.** *I can't (do any) more, I am played out.*

*a más no poder, to the utmost of one's ability*

**Riéndose a más no poder.** *Laughing to split his sides.*

*no poder menos de, cannot help*

**El padre no pudo menos de llorar.** *The father could not help crying.*

292. Poner, *to put, place* — meter, *to put into*.

Pone la espada sobre la mesa.	<i>He places the sword on the table.</i>
Metió el dinero en el bolsillo.	<i>He put the money in his pocket.</i>
El sol se pone.	<i>The sun sets.</i>
Una puesta de sol.	<i>A sunset.</i>
La gallina pone huevos.	<i>The hen lays eggs.</i>
	ponerse de pie, <i>to stand up</i>
	ponerse pálido, <i>to turn pale</i>
	ponerse a, <i>to start, to begin</i>
Se puso a trabajar.	<i>He began to work.</i>
	meterse en, <i>to meddle</i>
Se mete en todo.	<i>He meddles in everything; i.e. a jack-of-all-trades.</i>

293. Prestar, *to lend*.

pedir prestado } <i>to borrow</i>	un préstamo, <i>a loan</i>
tomar prestado }	
Me pidió prestado mi paraguas.	<i>He borrowed my umbrella.</i>
Tomé prestado este libro a Carlos.	<i>I borrowed this book of Charles.</i>
Buscó un préstamo sobre su sortija de brillantes.	<i>He sought a loan on his diamond ring.</i>

294. Servir, *to serve*.

¿ Para qué sirve eso ?	<i>What is that good for ?</i>
No sirve para nada.	<i>It is good for nothing.</i>
El me sirvió de guía.	<i>He served me as a guide.</i>
	servir (+ infinitive), <i>please</i>
Sírvase Vd. decirme.	<i>Please tell me.</i>
Le suplicamos a Vd. se sirva asegurar este envío.	<i>We beg you kindly to insure this shipment.</i>
	servirse de, <i>to use</i>
¿ Por qué no se sirve Vd. del guía ?	<i>Why don't you use the guide ?</i>

295. Ser de denotes source or origin, as well as the idea of property expressed by English *belong*.

Es de Sevilla.	<i>He is from Seville.</i>
La finca es de mi tío.	<i>The estate is my uncle's or belongs to my uncle.</i>

*Ser de* also means *to become of*.

¿ Qué ha sido de ellos ?	<i>What has become of them ?</i>
¿ Qué va a ser de mis hijas ?	<i>What is going to become of my daughters ?</i>

*a. Become* with more specific meaning, denoting a change of state, *get*, is expressed by *hacerse*, *llegar a ser*, *venir a ser*.

<b>Se ha hecho abogado.</b>	<i>He has become a lawyer.</i>
<b>Llegó (or Vino) a ser general.</b>	<i>He became a general.</i>

With adjectives, *ponerse* and *volverse* are frequent.

<b>La señora se puso pálida.</b>	<i>The lady turned pale.</i>
<b>Se volvió loco.</b>	<i>He became crazy.</i>

Other ways of expressing *become* are

(1) The progressive form of the verb; as **Va siendo tarde** or **haciéndose tarde**, *It is getting late*. See section 258.

(2) The inceptive verbs in *-ecer* (see sect. 242, note, *a*, 10, p. 212): **oscurecer**, *to get dark*; **enflaquecer**, *to become thin*, i.e. **ponerse flaco**.

**296.** *Tener* appears in idioms referring to the body or mind, which are usually expressed in English by the verb *to be*.

¿ Qué tiene Vd. ?	<i>What is the matter ?</i>
<b>Tengo dolor de cabeza, or Me duele la cabeza.</b>	<i>I have a headache.</i>

Referring to the body,

<i>tener to be</i>	{	calor, m. <i>warm</i>
		frío, m. <i>cold</i>
		hambre, f. <i>hungry</i>
		sed, f. <i>thirsty</i>
		sueño, m. <i>sleepy</i>

Referring to the mind,

<i>tener to be</i>	{	gana or ganas, f. <i>eager, have a desire</i>
		miedo, m. <i>afraid</i>
		prisa, f. <i>in a hurry</i>
		vergüenza, f. <i>ashamed</i>
		razón, f. <i>right</i>

**no tener razón**, *to be wrong*

**tener inconveniente**, m. *to have an objection*

NOTE. As the words used with *tener* are nouns, *very* is rendered by *mucho*.

**Tengo mucho calor y mucha sed.** *I am very hot and very thirsty.*

For **tener** referring to age, see section 53, *b*.

¿ Cuántos años tiene el chico ?      *How old is the boy ? He is eleven*  
 Tiene once años.                      *years old.*

For **tener que**, *must*, with an infinitive, see section 107, 1.

Tenemos que despedirnos.              *We must take leave.*

**297. Valer, to be worth.**

¿ Cuánto vale ?                      *How much is it worth ?*  
 Más vale saber que haber.          *Better wisdom than property.*  
 Más vale que yo no venga.          *I had better not come.*  
 No hay pero que valga.              *There is no objection that counts.*

*valerse de, to avail one's self of, to use*

Se vale de su fuerza.                  *He uses his strength.*

#### EXERCISE 40

(*The student is expected to find the expressions in the preceding pages, not in the vocabulary.*) 1. He wished him good morning. 2. The clock is going to strike seven. 3. It has just struck nine. 4. My room looks out on a court. 5. Charles busied himself in winding the many clocks. 6. My mother gave me some Spanish books. 7. He took a step backward. 8. Your new suit is very becoming to you. 9. Let's go for a walk. I prefer to drive. 10. My watch does not go well; it is slow.<sup>1</sup> 11. Yours is fast, it seems to me. 12. The steamer travels very fast to-day. 13. It hurts me to sit in a draft. 14. He has become a lawyer. 15. After his absence of nine years, he found his sister grown into a handsome young lady of seventeen. 16. They did their best to win the game, but they were played out. 17. Better late than never. 18. It is worth little. 19. This room does not hold three hundred persons. 20. He cannot play the piano to-day because he has hurt his finger. 21. I cannot play because I never learned. 22. Can you speak Spanish well? 23. May one come in? 24. I do not know him, nor do I know who he is. 25. Please pour the coffee. 26. Where do I mail

<sup>1</sup> *to be slow, atrasar (a verb); to be fast, adelantar.*



this letter? 27. We missed you at the performance. 28. Who played the leading part? 29. These photographic plates are spoiled. 30. I have spoiled another plate in the developer. 31. Please post these letters for Chicago for me. 32. Why don't you use the dictionary? 33. What is the machine good for? 34. It is used to develop photographic plates. 35. Peter has borrowed my pencil. 36. He came to borrow my gun. 37. He obtained a loan on the estate. 38. One letter is lacking in the word, and another is superfluous. 39. Of my fortnight in Madrid five days are left.<sup>1</sup> 40. Do you know your lesson? I know it by heart. 41. It lacked a little of the time when<sup>2</sup> the afternoon train would leave. 42. This faithful old servant helped his master<sup>3</sup> to walk when he did not know how and later when he could not. 43. The lady has had flowers brought from her garden. 44. Have you hurt yourself? 45. He could not help following his steps. 46. He was much ashamed and turned red. 47. What will become of my children? 48. My friend, Don Genaro's son, has become a doctor. 49. If you get sick, send for him. 50. That man will never become president. 51. Never meddle in other people's business. 52. I am getting hoarse from<sup>4</sup> so much shouting. 53. If you do not need it, we will keep it till Thursday. 54. If I need money, he gets it for me.<sup>8</sup> 55. We have done our best to learn how to write Spanish well.

<sup>1</sup> Use *sobrar*: supply me.

<sup>2</sup> *para que*; omit *of the time*.

<sup>3</sup> Indirect object.

<sup>4</sup> *con*.

## APPENDIX I

### LIST OF VERBS WITH PECULIARITIES OF CONJUGATION

Verbs whose sole peculiarity consists in an orthographic change such as is indicated in section 242 *a*, inceptive verbs, etc., are not included in this list.

- abnegar**, renounce: 244, 1; 242, *a*, 2  
**abolir**, abolish: 251, 4  
**abrir**, open: *p. p. irr.*, 249  
**absolver**, absolve: *p. p. irr.*, 245, 1  
**abstenerse**, abstain: 250 *cf. tener*  
**abstraer**, abstract: 250 *cf. traer*  
**acertar**, hit the mark: 244  
**aclocarse**, stretch out, brood: 244, 2; 242, *a*, 1  
**acordar**, resolve, remind, tune;  
*acordarse*, remember: 244, 2  
**acostar**, lay down: 244, 2  
**acrecentar**, increase: 244, 1  
**adestrar**, guide: 244, 1  
**adherir**, adhere: 246, 1  
**adormir**, make drowsy: 246, 2  
**adquirir**, acquire: 246, 3  
**aducir**, adduce: 250 *cf. -ducir*  
**advertir**, observe, advise: 246, 1  
**agorar**, divine, prognosticate: 245, 2, *b*  
**aguerir**, inure to warfare: 251, 4  
**alebrarse**, squat, cower: 244, 1  
**alentar**, breathe, encourage: 244, 1  
**aliquebrar**, break the wings: 244, 1  
**almorzar**, breakfast: 244, 2; 242, *a*, 3  
**alongar**, lengthen: 244, 2; 242, *a*, 2  
**amoblar**, furnish: 244, 2  
**amoliar**, whet: 244, 2  
**amover**, remove, dismiss: 244, 4  
**andar**, go, walk: 250
- antedecir**, foretell: 250 *cf. decir*  
**anteponer**, put before, prefer: 250  
*cf. poner*  
**antever**, foresee: 250 *cf. ver*  
**apacentar**, graze: 244, 1  
**apercollar**, collar, snatch: 244, 2  
**aplaçar**, please: 251, 1  
**apostar**, bet, post: 244, 2; **apostar**,  
 post troops, *reg.*  
**apretar**, squeeze, press: 244, 1  
**aprobar**, approve: 244, 2  
**argüir**, argue: 248, 2  
**arrecirse**, become benumbed: 251, 4  
**arrendar**, rent, hire: 244, 1  
**arrepentirse**, repent: 246, 1  
**ascender**, ascend: 244, 3  
**asentar**, seat, set down: 244, 1  
**asentir**, assent, acquiesce: 246, 1  
**aserrar**, saw: 244, 1  
**asir**, seize, grasp: 250  
**asolar**, level to ground, raze: 244, 2  
**asoldar**, hire: 244, 2  
**asonar**, assonate, be in assonance:  
 244, 2  
**atender**, attend, mind: 244, 3  
**atenerse**, abide, hold: 250 *cf. tener*  
**atentar**, try: 244, 1; **atentar**, attempt  
 a crime, *reg.*  
**aterirse**, become rigid with cold:  
 251, 4  
**aterrar**, fell: 244, 1; **aterrar**, terrify,  
*reg.*

- atestar**, cram, stuff: 244, 1; **atestar**, attest, *reg.*  
**atraer**, attract: 250 *cf.* **traer**  
**atravesar**, cross: 244, 1  
**atribuir**, attribute: 248  
**atronar**, make a thundering din, stun: 244, 2  
**avanzar**, advance: 242, *a*, 4  
**avenir**, reconcile: 250 *cf.* **venir**  
**aventar**, fan, winnow: 244, 1  
**avergonzar**, shame: 245, 2, *b*  
**bendecir**, bless: 250 *cf.* **decir**  
**bienquerer**, esteem, wish well: 250 *cf.* **querer**  
**bruñir**, burnish: 242, *c*  
**bullir**, boil: 242, *c*  
**caber**, be contained: 250  
**caer**, fall: 250  
**calentar**, warm, heat: 244, 1  
**cegar**, blind: 244, 1  
**ceñir**, gird: 242, *c*  
**cerner**, sift: 244, 3  
**cerrar**, close: 244, 1  
**cimentar**, found, establish: 244, 1  
**circuir**, encircle: 248  
**clocar**, cluck: 244, 2  
**cocer**, boil, bake: 244, 4; 242, *a*, 10, note  
**colar**, strain, filter: 244, 2  
**colegir**, collect: 247; 242, *a*, 6  
**colgar**, hang up: 244, 2; 242, *a*, 2  
**comedirse**, behave: 247  
**comenzar**, commence: 244, 1; 242, *a*, 4  
**competir**, compete: 247  
**complacer**, please, content: 251, 1  
**componer**, compose: 250 *cf.* **poner**  
**comprobar**, verify, confirm: 244, 2  
**concebir**, conceive: 247  
**concernir**, concern: 245, 3, *b*  
**concertar**, concert, regulate: 244, 1  
**concluir**, conclude: 248  
**concordar**, accord, agree: 244, 2  
**condescender**, condescend: 244, 3  
**condolerse**, condole: 244, 4  
**conducir**, conduct: 250 *cf.* **-ducir**  
**conferir**, confer: 246, 1  
**confesar**, confess: 244, 1  
**confluir**, join: 248  
**conmover**, move, affect: 244, 4  
**conseguir**, obtain, attain: 247, 2  
**consentir**, consent: 246, 1  
**consolar**, console: 244, 2  
**consonar**, be in consonance, rime: 244, 2  
**constituir**, constitute: 248  
**construir**, construct: 248  
**contar**, count, tell: 244, 2  
**contender**, contend: 244, 3  
**contener**, contain: 250 *cf.* **tener**  
**contorcerse**, be distorted, writhe: 244, 4; 242, *a*, 9  
**contradecir**, contradict: 250 *cf.* **decir**  
**contraer**, contract: 250 *cf.* **traer**  
**contrahacer**, counterfeit: 250 *cf.* **hacer**  
**contraponer**, oppose, compare: 250 *cf.* **poner**  
**contravenir**, contravene: 250 *cf.* **venir**  
**contribuir**, contribute: 248  
**controvertir**, controvert: 246, 1  
**convenir**, agree, fit: 250 *cf.* **venir**  
**convertir**, convert: 246, 1  
**corregir**, correct: 247; 242, *a*, 6  
**corroer**, corrode: 251, 2, *a*  
**costar**, cost: 244, 2  
**creer**, believe: 242, *b*  
**cubrir**, cover: 249  
**dar**, give: 250  
**decaer**, decay: 250 *cf.* **caer**  
**decir**, say: 250

- deducir**, deduce : 250 *cf.* -**ducir**  
**defender**, defend : 244, 3  
**deferir**, defer : 246, 1  
**degollar**, behead, cut the throat :  
 245, 2, *b*  
**demoler**, demolish : 244, 4  
**demostrar**, demonstrate : 244, 2  
**dentar**, tooth, indent ; teeth : 244, 1  
**deponer**, depose, depone : 250 *cf.*  
*poner*  
**derretir**, melt : 247  
**derrocar**, pull down, demolish : 244,  
 2 ; 242, *a*, 1  
**derruir**, cast down, destroy : 248  
**des** : *for verbs compounded with this*  
*prefix, see the simple verbs*  
**descender**, descend : 244, 3  
**desleír**, dilute : 247, 4  
**desolar**, make desolate : 244, 2  
**desollar**, flay : 244, 2  
**desosar**, remove bones : 245, 2, *c*  
**desovar**, spawn : 245, 2, *c*  
**despertar**, awaken : 244, 1  
**desterrar**, exile : 244, 1  
**destituir**, deprive, remove from  
 office : 248  
**destruir**, destroy : 248  
**detener**, detain : 250 *cf.* tener  
**detraer**, detract : 250 *cf.* traer  
**devolver**, give back : 245, 4, *a*  
**diferir**, defer, delay, differ : 246, 1  
**digerir**, digest : 246, 1  
**diluir**, dilute : 248  
**discernir**, discern : 245, 3, *a*  
**discordar**, disagree, be discordant :  
 244, 2  
**disentir**, dissent : 246, 1  
**disminuir**, diminish : 248  
**disolver**, dissolve : 245, 4, *a*  
**disonar**, be in dissonance : 244, 2  
**disponer**, dispose : 250 *cf.* poner  
**distender**, distend : 244, 3  
**distraer**, distract : 250 *cf.* traer  
**distribuir**, distribute : 248  
**divertir**, divert : 246, 1  
**dolar**, plane, smooth (wood, etc.) :  
 244, 2  
**doler**, pain, grieve : 244, 4  
**dormir**, sleep : 246, 2  
**educir**, educate, bring out : 250 *cf.* -**ducir**  
**elegir**, elect : 247 ; 242, *a*, 6  
**embair**, impose, deceive : 251, 4  
**embestir**, invest, attack : 247  
**emparentar**, be related by marriage :  
 244, 1  
**empedernir**, harden, make inveter-  
 ate : 251, 4  
**empedrar**, pave : 244, 1  
**empeller**, urge, push : 242, *c*  
**empezar**, begin : 244, 1 ; 242, *a*, 4  
**emporcar**, sully, befoul : 244, 2 ; 242,  
*a*, 1  
**encender**, light, kindle : 244, 3  
**en** : *for verbs compounded with this*  
*prefix, see the simple verbs*  
**encontrar**, meet, find : 244, 2  
**engreír**, elate, puff up : 247, 4  
**engrosar**, fatten, strengthen : 244, 2  
**enhestar**, erect, set upright : 244, 1  
**enmendar**, amend, correct : 244, 1  
**ensangrentar**, cover with blood :  
 244, 1  
**entender**, hear, understand : 244, 3  
**enterrar**, inter : 244, 1  
**entortar**, make crooked ; deprive of  
 one eye : 244, 2  
**entre** : *for verbs compounded with*  
*this prefix, see the simple verbs*  
**envolver**, involve, wrap up, compli-  
 cate : 245, 4, *a*  
**equivaler**, equal, be equivalent : 250  
*cf.* valer

- erguir**, erect : 247, 3  
**errar**, err, wander : 245, 1  
**escarmentar**, give warning example,  
 learn by experience : 244, 1  
**escocer**, smart : 244, 4; 242, *a*, 10, note  
**escribir**, write : *p.p. irr.*, 249  
**esforzar**, strengthen; **esforzarse**, at-  
 tempt : 245, 2; 242, *a*, 4  
**estar**, be : 250  
**estatuir**, establish : 248  
**estregar**, rub, scour, grind : 244, 1;  
 242, *a*, 2  
**estreñir**, bind, restrain : 247, 1; 242, *c*  
**excluir**, exclude : 248  
**expedir**, expedite, despatch : 247, 1  
**exponer**, expose : 250 *cf. poner*  
**extender**, extend : 244, 3  
**extraer**, extract : 250 *cf. traer*  
**ferrar**, put on iron points, etc.: 244, 1  
**fluir**, flow : 248  
**follar**, blow with bellows : 244, 2  
**forzar**, force : 244, 2; 242, *a*, 4  
**fregar**, rub, cleanse : 244, 1; 242, *a*, 2  
**freír**, fry : 247, 4  
**garantir**, guarantee : 251, 4  
**gemir**, groan, moan : 247, 1  
**gobernar**, govern : 244, 1  
**gruir**, cry like cranes : 248  
**gruñir**, grunt : 242, *c*  
**haber**, have : 250  
**hacendar**, transfer property : 244, 1  
**hacer**, do, make : 250  
**heder**, have a stench, stink : 244, 3  
**helar**, freeze : 244, 1  
**henchir**, stuff, cram : 247, 1  
**hender**, cleave, split : 244, 3  
**herbar**, dress skins : 244, 1  
**herir**, wound : 246, 1  
**herrar**, shoe (horses), brand (cattle):  
 244, 1  
**hervir**, boil, bubble : 246, 1  
**holgar**, rest, cease working : 244, 2;  
 242, *a*, 2  
**hollar**, trample on, tread on : 244, 2  
**huir**, flee : 248  
**imbuir**, imbue : 248  
**impedir**, impede : 247, 1  
**imponer**, impose : 250 *cf. poner*  
**imprimir**, print : *p.p. irr.*, 249  
**improbar**, disapprove, censure :  
 244, 2  
**incensar**, perfume, incense : 244, 1  
**incluir**, include : 248  
**indisponer**, indispose, disincline :  
 250 *cf. poner*  
**inducir**, induce : 250 *cf. -ducir*  
**inferir**, infer : 246, 1  
**infernar**, torment : 244, 1  
**influir**, influence : 248  
**ingerir**, graft, insert : 246, 1  
**inquirir**, inquire : 246, 3  
**instituir**, institute : 248  
**instruir**, instruct : 248  
**interdecir**, interdict : 250 *cf. decir*  
**interponer**, interpose : 250 *cf. poner*  
**intervenir**, intervene : 250 *cf. venir*  
**introducir**, introduce : 250 *cf. -ducir*  
**invernar**, winter : 244, 1  
**invertir**, invert, spend, invest :  
 246, 1  
**investir**, invest, gird : 247, 1  
**ir**, go : 250  
**jugar**, play : 245, 2, *a*  
**leer**, read : 242, *b*  
**llover**, rain : 244, 4  
**maldecir**, curse : 250 *cf. decir*  
**malherir**, wound seriously : 246, 1  
**malquerer**, dislike, abhor : 250 *cf.*  
*querer*  
**malsonar**, make cacophony : 244, 2  
**maltraer**, maltreat : 250 *cf. traer*  
**manifestar**, manifest : 244, 1

- manir**, mellow, mature meat : 251, 4  
**mantener**, maintain : 250 *cf.* **tener**  
**mecer**, rock, lull, mix : 242, *a*, 10, note  
**medir**, measure : 247, 1  
**melar**, boil to honey, deposit honey  
     (of bees) : 244, 1  
**mentar**, mention : 244, 1  
**mentir**, lie : 246, 1  
**merendar**, lunch : 244, 1  
**moblar**, furnish : 244, 2  
**moler**, grind : 244, 4  
**morder**, bite : 244, 4  
**morir**, die : 246, 2  
**mostrar**, show : 244, 2  
**mover**, move : 244, 4  
**negar**, deny : 244, 1 ; 242, *a*, 2  
**nevar**, snow : 244, 1  
**obstruir**, obstruct : 248  
**obtener**, obtain : 250 *cf.* **tener**  
**oír**, hear : 250  
**oler**, smell : 245, 4, *b*  
**oponer**, oppose : 250 *cf.* **poner**  
**oprimir**, oppress : 249  
**pedir**, ask : 247, 1  
**pensar**, think, mean, believe : 244, 1  
**perder**, lose, spoil, destroy : 244, 3  
**perseguir**, pursue, persecute : 247, 2  
**pervertir**, pervert : 246, 1  
**placer**, please : 251, 1  
**plañir**, lament, bewail : 242, *c*  
**plegar**, fold : 244, 1 ; 242, *a*, 2  
**poblar**, found, people, fill : 244, 2  
**poder**, be able, can : 250  
**poner**, put : 250  
**poseer**, possess : 242, *b*  
**posponer**, place after, postpone :  
     250 *cf.* **poner**  
**predecir**, predict : 250 *cf.* **decir**  
**predisponer**, predispose : 250 *cf.* **poner**  
**preferir**, prefer : 246, 1  
**prender**, arrest, catch : 249  
**preponer**, put before, prefer : 250  
     *cf.* **poner**  
**presentir**, forebode, foresee : 246, 1  
**presuponer**, presuppose : 250 *cf.*  
     **poner**  
**prevalerse**, prevail : 250 *cf.* **valer**  
**prevenir**, forestall, prevent : 250 *cf.*  
     **venir**  
**prever**, foresee : 250 *cf.* **ver**  
**probar**, prove, try, taste : 244, 2  
**producir**, produce : 250 *cf.* **-ducir**  
**proferir**, utter, pronounce : 246, 1  
**promover**, promote : 244, 4  
**proponer**, propose : 250 *cf.* **poner**  
**proseguir**, pursue, prosecute : 247, 2  
**proveer**, provide : 242, *b* ; 249  
**provenir**, proceed : 250 *cf.* **venir**  
**quebrar**, break : 244, 1  
**querer**, wish, like : 250  
**raer**, scrape, grate, erase : 251, 2  
**rarefacar**, rarify : 250 *cf.* **hacer**  
**re** : *for verbs compounded with this*  
     *prefix, see the simple verbs*  
**recordar**, remind : 244, 2  
**referir**, relate, refer : 246, 1  
**regar**, water : 244, 1 ; 242, *a*, 2  
**regimentar**, form into regiments :  
     244, 1  
**regir**, rule, direct : 247, 1 ; 242, *a*, 6  
**regoldar**, belch, eruct : 244, 2 ; 245,  
     2, *b*  
**refr**, laugh : 247, 4  
**remendar**, repair, patch : 244, 1  
**rendir**, subdue, render ; **rendirse**,  
     surrender : 247, 1  
**renovar**, renovate, renew : 244, 2  
**refrir**, quarrel, scold : 247, 1 ; 242, *c*  
**repetir**, repeat, recite : 247, 1  
**requerir**, court, make love : 244, 1  
**requerir**, investigate, require, re-  
     quest : 246, 1

- resolver**, resolve: *p. p. irr.*, 245,  
 4, *a*  
**resollar**, respire: 244, 2  
**reventar**, burst: 244, 1  
**rodar**, roll: 244, 2  
**roer**, gnaw: 251, 3  
**rogar**, entreat, ask: 244, 2; 242, *a*, 2  
**saber**, know: 250  
**salir**, go out, come out: 250  
**salpimentar**, season with pepper  
 and salt: 244, 1  
**sarmentar**, gather prunings of vine:  
 244, 1  
**satisfacer**, satisfy: 250 *cf. hacer*  
**segar**, reap: 244, 1; 242, *a*, 2  
**seguir**, follow; 247, 2  
**sembrar**, sow: 244, 1  
**sementar**, sow: 244, 1  
**sentar**, seat, set, suit: 244, 1  
**sentir**, feel, regret: 246, 1  
**ser**, to be: 250  
**serrar**, saw: 244, 1  
**servir**, serve: 247, 1  
**sobre**: *for verbs compounded with this  
 prefix, see the simple verbs*  
**sofreír**, fry slightly: 247, 4  
**solar**, floor, pave, sole: 244, 2  
**soldar**, solder, mend: 244, 2  
**soler**, be wont, be accustomed:  
 244, 4  
**soltar**, untie, loosen: 244, 2  
**solver**, loosen: *p. p. irr.*, 245, 4, *a*  
**sonar**, sound: 244, 2  
**sonreír**, smile: 247, 4  
**sonrodarse**, stick in the mud: 244, 2  
**soñar**, dream: 244, 2  
**sosegar**, appease, rest: 244, 1; 242,  
*a*, 2  
**sostener**, sustain: 250 *cf. tener*  
**soterrar**, put underground, bury:  
 244, 1  
**sub**: *for verbs compounded with this  
 prefix, see the simple verbs*  
**sugerir**, suggest: 246, 1  
**superponer**, superimpose: 250 *cf.*  
**poner**  
**supervénir**, supervene: 250 *cf. venir*  
**suponer**, suppose: 250 *cf. poner*  
**suprimir**, suppress: 249  
**sustituir**, substitute: 248  
**sustraer**, subtract: 250 *cf. traer*  
**tañer**, ring, peal, touch: 242, *c*  
**temblar**, tremble: 244, 1  
**tender**, stretch: 244, 3  
**tener**, have, hold: 250  
**tentar**, feel, try: 244, 1  
**teñir**, tinge, dye, stain: 247, 1; 242, *c*  
**torcer**, twist, bend: 244, 4; 242, *a*, 9  
**tostar**, toast: 244, 2  
**traducir**, translate: 250 *cf. -ducir*  
**traer**, bring: 250  
**trans or tras**: *for verbs compounded  
 with this prefix, see the simple verbs*  
**travesar**, cross: 244, 1  
**trocar**, exchange, barter: 244, 2;  
 242, *a*, 1  
**tronar**, thunder: 244, 2  
**tropezar**, stumble: 244, 1; 242, *a*, 4  
**valer**, be worth: 250  
**venir**, come: 250  
**ventar**, blow: 244, 1  
**ver**, see: 250  
**verter**, pour, shed: 244, 3  
**vestir**, dress, clothe: 247, 1  
**volar**, fly, rise, blow up: 244, 2  
**volcar**, overturn: 244, 2; 242, *a*, 1  
**volver**, return, come back: 245, 4  
**yacer**, lie: 250, 1  
**yuxtaponer**, put in juxtaposition:  
 250 *cf. poner*  
**za (m) bullirse**, dive: 242, *c*  
**zaherir**, reproach, censure: 246, 1

## APPENDIX II

*1. Verbs followed directly by a dependent infinitive without a connecting preposition are —*

<b>aconsejar</b> , advise, counsel	<b>notificar</b> , notify
<b>acostumbrarse</b> , be accustomed	<b>ocurrir(se)</b> , occur (to one)
<b>afirmar</b> , affirm, declare	<b>odiar</b> , hate
<b>asegurar</b> , assure, claim	<b>oír</b> , hear
<b>aseverar</b> , assert	<b>osar</b> , dare
<b>celebrar</b> , be glad	<b>parecer</b> , seem
<b>confesar</b> , confess	<b>pensar</b> , intend
<b>convenir</b> , suit	<b>permitir</b> , permit
<b>creer</b> , think, believe	<b>poder</b> , be able
<b>deber</b> , should, ought	<b>preferir</b> , prefer
<b>declarar</b> , declare	<b>presumir</b> , presume
<b>dejar</b> , let, allow, permit	<b>pretender</b> , claim, try
<b>desear</b> , desire, wish	<b>procurar</b> , try
<b>determinar</b> , determine	<b>prohibir</b> , prohibit
<b>escuchar</b> , listen to	<b>prometer</b> , promise
<b>esperar</b> , hope	<b>proponer</b> , propose, purpose
<b>figurarse</b> , imagine	<b>querer</b> , wish
<b> fingir</b> , pretend	<b>recomendar</b> , recommend
<b>gustar</b> , like, please	<b>reconocer</b> , acknowledge, confess
<b>hacer</b> , make	<b>recordar</b> , remember
<b>imaginarse</b> , imagine	<b>saber</b> , know how, be able
<b>impedir</b> , prevent, hinder	<b>sentir</b> , feel, hear, regret, be sorry
<b>intentar</b> , try, attempt	<b>servirse</b> , please, be so kind as
<b> jurar</b> , swear	<b>significar</b> , mean, signify
<b>lograr</b> , succeed in	<b>soler</b> , be wont
<b>mandar</b> , order	<b>sostener</b> , maintain ; affirm
<b>más vale</b> , it is better	<b>sugerir</b> , suggest
<b>merecer</b> , deserve	<b>temer</b> , fear
<b>mirar</b> , look at, watch	<b>tocar</b> , be one's turn
<b>necesitar</b> , need, want	<b>valer más</b> , be better
<b>negar</b> , deny	<b>ver</b> , see



2. *Verbs that require a before a dependent infinitive are —*

<b>abandonar(se)</b> , give (one's self) up to	<b>dar</b> , give
<b>acceder</b> , accede, agree	<b>decidir(se)</b> , decide, determine
<b>acercarse</b> , draw near, approach	<b>dedicar(se)</b> , dedicate (one's self)
<b>acertar</b> , happen	<b>desafiar</b> , challenge
<b>acomodarse</b> , conform one's self	<b>descender</b> , descend
<b>acudir</b> , hasten	<b>deshacerse</b> , try hard ; kill one's self
<b>adherir(se)</b> , stick to	in
<b>aficionarse</b> , become addicted	<b>destinar</b> , destine
<b>ajustarse</b> , agree, combine	<b>detenerse</b> , stop, tarry
<b>alcanzar</b> , reach, attain, succeed	<b>determinar(se)</b> , determine
<b>andarse</b> , undertake, busy one's self	<b>disponer(se)</b> , prepare, get ready
with	<b>distraerse</b> , amuse one's self
<b>animar</b> , encourage	<b>divertirse</b> , amuse one's self
<b>aplicarse</b> , apply one's self	<b>echar(se)</b> , exercise ; begin
<b>aprender</b> , learn	<b>empezar</b> , begin
<b>apresurar(se)</b> , hasten, hurry	<b>enseñar</b> , teach
<b>arriesgarse</b> , risk one's self	<b>entrar</b> , start
<b>aspirar</b> , aspire	<b>entretener(se)</b> , entertain (one's self)
<b>atreverse</b> , dare	<b>enviar</b> , send
<b>autorizar</b> , authorize	<b>esforzar(se)</b> , attempt, endeavor
<b>aventajar</b> , excel, surpass	<b>excitar</b> , excite
<b>aventurarse</b> , venture	<b>exhortar</b> , exhort
<b>ayudar</b> , aid, help	<b>exponer(se)</b> , expose (one's self)
<b>circunscribir(se)</b> , confine (one's self)	<b>faltar</b> , fail
<b>comenzar</b> , commence, begin	<b>forzar</b> , force
<b>comprometer(se)</b> , engage, agree	<b>ganar</b> , excel, surpass ; win, gain (by)
<b>condenar</b> , condemn	<b>habituarse</b> , accustom (one's self)
<b>condescender</b> , condescend	<b>humillar(se)</b> , humiliate (one's self)
<b>conducir</b> , lead, conduct	<b>igualar</b> , equal
<b>conformarse</b> , conform, agree	<b>impeler</b> , impel
<b>consagrar(se)</b> , devote (one's self)	<b>incitar</b> , incite
<b>conspirar</b> , conspire	<b>inclinarse</b> , incline, induce
<b>continuar</b> , continue	<b>inducir</b> , induce
<b>contrariar</b> , oppose	<b>inspirar</b> , inspire
<b>contribuir</b> , contribute	<b>invitar</b> , invite
<b>convidar</b> , invite	<b>ir</b> , go
<b>convocar</b> , convoke	<b>jugar</b> , play (at)
<b>cooperar</b> , cooperate	<b>limitar(se)</b> , limit (one's self)
<b>correr</b> , run	<b>llegar</b> , come, succeed

<b>mandar</b> , send	<b>rehusar(se)</b> , refuse
<b>matarse</b> , kill one's self	<b>renunciar</b> , renounce
<b>meterse</b> , undertake	<b>resignarse</b> , resign, submit
<b>mover(se)</b> , impel (one's self)	<b>resistirse</b> , struggle, resist
<b>negarse</b> , decline, refuse	<b>resolver(se)</b> , resolve, decide
<b>obligar(se)</b> , oblige (one's self)	<b>romper</b> , break out in
<b>ofrecer(se)</b> , offer, present (one's self)	<b>sacar</b> , draw out, extract, invite
<b>oponerse</b> , oppose, be adverse	<b>salir</b> , go ( <i>or</i> come) out
<b>pararse</b> , stop	<b>sentarse</b> , be seated, sit down
<b>pasar</b> , proceed, pass	<b>soltar</b> , start
<b>persuadir(se)</b> , persuade (one's self)	<b>someter(se)</b> , submit (one's self)
<b>poner(se)</b> , put one's self, begin	<b>temer</b> , fear
<b>preparar(se)</b> , prepare, make ready	<b>tender</b> , tend
<b>presentarse</b> , present one's self	<b>tirar</b> , tend, be inclined
<b>probar</b> , try	<b>tornar</b> , return; . . . again
<b>proceder</b> , proceed	<b>urgir</b> , urge
<b>provocar</b> , provoke	<b>vencer(se)</b> , outdo, excel, surpass
<b>quedar(se)</b> , remain	<b>venir(se)</b> , come, happen
<b>reducir(se)</b> , reduce one's self, bring (one's self) down	<b>volar</b> , fly
<b>referirse</b> , refer	<b>volver</b> , return; . . . again

*3. Verbs that require con before a dependent infinitive are—*

<b>amenazar</b> , threaten	<b>contentarse</b> , content one's self
<b>bastar</b> , be sufficient, be enough	<b>divertirse</b> , amuse one's self
<b>contar</b> , count on	<b>soñar</b> , dream

*4. Verbs that require de before a dependent infinitive are—*

<b>absolver(se)</b> , absolve (one's self)	<b>aprovecharse</b> , profit
<b>aburrirse</b> , be vexed, wearied	<b>arrepentirse</b> , repent
<b>acabar</b> , finish, end	<b>arriesgarse</b> , risk one's self
<b>acordarse</b> , remember	<b>asustarse</b> , be terrified
<b>acusar</b> , accuse	<b>avergonzarse</b> , be ashamed
<b>admirarse</b> , wonder	<b>cansar(se)</b> , tire, grow weary
<b>afligirse</b> , lament, repine	<b>cesar</b> , cease
<b>agraviarse</b> , be grieved, piqued	<b>concertar</b> , agree, covenant
<b>ahogarse</b> , be suffocated	<b>concluir</b> , conclude
<b>alegrarse</b> , rejoice, be glad	<b>confesarse</b> , confess
<b>apercibirse</b> , perceive	<b>contentarse</b> , be satisfied

<b>cuidar(se)</b> , take care not to, keep from	<b>guardarse</b> , avoid, guard against
<b>culpar</b> , blame	<b>haber</b> , have
<b>dar</b> , give	<b>hablar</b> , speak, mention
<b>deber</b> , owe, ought	<b>hartarse</b> , satiate one's self, be satisfied
<b>dejar</b> , leave off, cease, fail	<b>impacientarse</b> , be impatient
<b>desacostumbrarse</b> , lose the custom	<b>incomodarse</b> , be annoyed
<b>desanimar(se)</b> , discourage, be discouraged	<b>indignarse</b> , be indignant
<b>descansar</b> , tire, weary	<b>jactarse</b> , boast
<b>descuidar</b> , neglect	<b>jurar</b> , swear
<b>desdeñar(se)</b> , disdain, be disdainful	<b>justificar(se)</b> , justify (one's self)
<b>desesperar(se)</b> , despair	<b>ofenderse</b> , be offended
<b>desistir</b> , desist	<b>olvidar(se)</b> , forget
<b>detenerse</b> , stop, tarry	<b>persuadir(se)</b> , persuade
<b>dignarse</b> , deign	<b>pesar</b> , be sorry
<b>disculpar(se)</b> , excuse	<b>picarse</b> , be vexed
<b>disgustar(se)</b> , disgust, be displeased	<b>preclarse</b> , boast
<b>dispensar</b> , excuse	<b>privar(se)</b> , deprive, be deprived
<b>distraerse</b> , distract (one's self)	<b>quejarse</b> , complain
<b>disuadir</b> , dissuade	<b>reírse</b> , laugh
<b>dudar</b> , doubt, hesitate	<b>reventar</b> , burst
<b>echar(se)</b> , come to	<b>sentirse</b> , feel
<b>encargarse</b> , take upon one's self	<b>ser</b> , be
<b>enorgullecerse</b> , take pride	<b>sonreírse</b> , smile
<b>entristecerse</b> , become sad	<b>sospechar</b> , suspect
<b>excusar(se)</b> , excuse (one's self)	<b>sufrir</b> , suffer
<b>faltar</b> , fail	<b>temblar</b> , tremble
<b>fastidiar(se)</b> , weary, be weary	<b>terminar</b> , finish
<b>fatigar(se)</b> , tire, be tired	<b>tratar</b> , try, endeavor
<b>felicitar(se)</b> , congratulate (one's self)	<b>valerse</b> , avail one's self of
<b>gozar(se)</b> , enjoy	<b>venir</b> , come, have just
	<b>vivir</b> , live

5. *Verbs that require en before a dependent infinitive are—*

<b>acertar</b> , succeed (in)	<b>apresurarse</b> , hasten
<b>acordar</b> , agree	<b>aventajar</b> , excel, surpass
<b>adelantar(se)</b> , advance in	<b>balancear</b> , hesitate, waver
<b>adiestrar(se)</b> , train (one's self)	<b>cansar(se)</b> , tire, grow weary
<b>andar</b> , undertake	<b>complacerse</b> , take pleasure

<b>condescender</b> , condescend	<b>gozar(se)</b> , take pleasure
<b>confiar</b> , confide, trust in, hope	<b>incidar</b> , fall into (as an error)
<b>conformarse</b> , agree	<b>insistir</b> , insist
<b>consentir</b> , consent	<b>instruir(se)</b> , instruct (one's self)
<b>consistir</b> , consist	<b>matarse</b> , kill one's self
<b>consumirse</b> , be consumed	<b>meditar</b> , meditate
<b>continuar</b> , continue	<b>mezclarse</b> , meddle with
<b>convenir(se)</b> , agree	<b>moderarse</b> , moderate one's self
<b>cooperar</b> , cooperate	<b>molestarse</b> , put one's self out
<b>cuidarse</b> , take pains	<b>obstinarse</b> , persist in
<b>dar</b> , come to	<b>ocupar(se)</b> , busy (one's self)
<b>deleitarse</b> , delight	<b>parar</b> , stop
<b>deshacerse</b> , try hard to; kill one's self in	<b>particularizarse</b> , specialize
<b>detenerse</b> , stop	<b>pensar</b> , think
<b>determinarse</b> , determine	<b>perder</b> , lose
<b>distraerse</b> , amuse one's self	<b>perseverar</b> , persevere
<b>divertirse</b> , amuse one's self	<b>persistir</b> , persist
<b>ejercitar(se)</b> , exercise (one's self)	<b>prorrumpir</b> , burst forth, break out
<b>empeñarse</b> , try, insist	<b>quedar</b> , agree
<b>emplear(se)</b> , employ (one's self)	<b>recrear(se)</b> , divert (one's self)
<b>engañarse</b> , be mistaken	<b>romper</b> , break out (into)
<b>entenderse</b> , agree	<b>sobresalir</b> , excel
<b>entretener(se)</b> , amuse (one's self)	<b>tardar</b> , delay
<b>equivocarse</b> , be mistaken	<b>terminar</b> , end (by)
<b>esforzar(se)</b> , attempt, endeavor	<b>titubear</b> , hesitate
<b>esmerarse</b> , to take great pains	<b>trabajar</b> , work
<b>fijarse</b> , pay attention	<b>vacilar</b> , hesitate
<b>ganar</b> , excel, surpass, bear	<b>vencer(se)</b> , outdo, surpass, excel
<b>gastar</b> , spend	<b>vengarse</b> , avenge one's self (by)
	<b>venir</b> , arrive

6. *Verbs having POR before a dependent infinitive are —*

<b>acabar</b> , end by	<b>matarse</b> , try hard ( <i>see next section</i> )
<b>afanarse</b> , toil	<b>morirse</b> , be dying to
<b>apurarse</b> , exert one's self	<b>quedar</b> , remain to be . . .
<b>dejar</b> , leave to be . . .	<b>pugnar</b> , strive, struggle
<b>estar</b> , yet to be . . . ( <i>see next section</i> )	<b>rabiarse</b> , be crazy to
<b>hacer</b> , try	<b>reventar</b> , be bursting to
<b>incomodarse</b> , put one's self out	<b>trabajar</b> , work

7. *Some verbs that vary in idiom or meaning according to the construction before a dependent infinitive are—*

**acabar de**, finish; have just . . .

**acabar por**, end with; . . . finally

**No acaba de llover.** It does not stop raining.

**El señor acaba de salir.** The gentleman has just gone out.

**Habían acabado por tomarse mucho cariño.** They had finally become very fond of each other.

**acertar a**, happen; succeed

**acertar en**, hit it right

**Aquel día acertó a ser domingo.**

That day happened to be Sunday.

**Acerté en suponerlo.** I was correct in supposing so.

**acostumbrar** (*direct infinitive*), be in the habit of

**acostumbrarse a**, get the habit of

**No acostumbro mentir.** I am not in the habit of lying.

**Acostúmbrate a guardar silencio.**

Acquire the habit of being silent.

**dar a**, give to

**dar de**, serve with food, etc.

**dar en**, insist on

**Me dió a entender.** He gave me to understand.

**El obispo da de almorzar a doce pobres.** The bishop serves breakfast to twelve poor men.

**Dí de comer a mi caballo.** I fed my horse.

**El burro dió en rebuznar.** The ass insisted on braying.

**deber** (*dir. infin.*), ought, should

**deber de**, must (*supposition*)

**Debemos estudiar.** We should study.

**Debe de hacer frío.** It must be cold.

**dejar** (*dir. infin.*), allow, permit

**dejar de**, fail, neglect; stop

**Déjale correr.** Let him run.

**Dejó de cumplir con su promesa.**

He failed to keep his promise.

**Manuel dejó de silbar.** Manuel stopped whistling.

**echar(se) a**, begin, start

**echar a perder**, spoil

**echar de ver**, notice

**El vapor echa a andar lentamente.**

The steamer begins to move slowly.

**La carne se echa a perder.** The meat is spoiling.

¿**No echas de ver las sombras?**

Don't you observe the shadows?

**estar para**, be about to

**estar por**, yet to be . . . ; be inclined to

**Está para morir.** He is at the point of death.

**La sala está por barrer.** The room is yet to be swept.

**Estoy por romperle la cabeza.** I am inclined to break his head.

**matarse a**, kill one's self by

**matarse por**, try hard

**Se mata a trabajar.** He is killing himself with work.

**Juan se mataba por ganar el premio.** John tried hard to win the prize.

**pensar** (*dir. infin.*), intend

**pensar en**, think of

**Piensa ofrecerles una comida.** He intends to offer them a dinner.

**La reina pensaba en elegir un ministro.** The queen was thinking of choosing a minister.

**venir a**, come to

**venir de**, come, to have just . . .

**venir en**, grant (used in legal style and decrees)

**Venga Vd. a verme.** Come and see me.

**Vino a ser rey.** He became king.

**Vengo de cumplir un voto.** I have just fulfilled a vow.

**Vengo en decretar lo siguiente.** I decree the following.



## SPANISH-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

- a** to, at, on, from, *sign of the personal accusative*
- abajo** below, down
- abandonar** to abandon, leave
- abierto** *p.p.* of *abrir*; open
- abonar** to credit
- abrigar** to shelter, protect
- abrigo** *m.* shelter, wrap, overcoat
- abril** *m.* April
- abrir** to open
- abuelo** -a *m. and f.* grandfather, grandmother; *m. pl.* grandparents
- acá** hither, here
- acabar** to end, finish; **acabar de** to have just
- aceptar** to accept
- acerca de** about
- ácido** -a sour
- acompañar** to accompany, go with, sympathize with
- aconsejar** to advise
- acostar** to lay down, put to bed; *refl.* to lie down, go to bed
- acusación** *f.* accusation
- acusar** to acknowledge
- adelante** forward; **en adelante** henceforth
- además (de)** besides
- adiós** good-by
- adjunto** inclosed, herewith
- admitir** to admit
- adquirir** to purchase; acquire
- aduana** *f.* custom-house
- aeroplano**, *m.* aeroplane
- afecto** *m.* affection
- afirmar** to affirm
- afligirse** to worry
- af.<sup>mo</sup>** = **afectísimo** most affectionate
- agosto** *m.* August
- agradecer** to thank, be grateful for
- agua** *f.* water
- aguardar** to wait for, await
- águila** *f.* eagle
- ahí** there
- ahora** now
- aire** *m.* air; **aire libre** open air
- ajeno** -a another's, other people's
- al** to the
- albañil** *m.* mason
- aldea** *f.* village
- aldeano** *m.* villager
- alegrarse** to be happy
- alegre** happy, joyous, merry
- alegría** *f.* joy
- alejarse** to withdraw, go away
- alemán** -ana German
- Alemania** *f.* Germany
- alfombra** *f.* carpet
- algo** something, anything, somewhat
- alguien** some one, somebody
- algún** *cf.* alguno
- alguno** -a some, any; *pl.* some, certain, a few; **no . . . alguno** not . . . any
- alhaja** *f.* jewel
- aliento** *m.* encouragement
- alimento** *m.* food
- alma** *f.* soul



- almacén** *m.* store, warehouse  
**almohada** *f.* pillow  
**almoneda** *f.* auction  
**almorzar** to breakfast  
**almuerzo** *m.* breakfast  
**alquilar** to rent, hire  
**alrededor de** around  
**alto** -a high, tall, loud  
**altura** *f.* height  
**alumbrar** to illuminate, light  
**allá** there, thither  
**allí** there  
**amanecer** to dawn  
**amar** to love  
**amargo** -a bitter  
**amarillo** -a yellow  
**ambos** -as both  
**América** *f.* America  
**americano** -a American  
**amigo** -a *m. and f.* friend  
**amiguito** -a *m. and f.* little friend  
**amistad** *f.* friendship  
**ancho** -a broad, wide; (*noun*) breadth, width  
**anchura** *f.* breadth, width  
**andar** to go, walk, run (*as a watch*); travel  
**animal** *m.* animal  
**anoche** last night  
**anocheecer** to become night, get dark  
**anteayer** the day before yesterday, two days ago  
**anterior** previous  
**antes** before, beforehand; **antes de** before  
**anticipar** to anticipate  
**anunciar** to advertise  
**año** *m.* year; **tener . . . años** to be . . . years old; **Año Nuevo** New Year  
**apetito** *m.* appetite  
**aplastado** -a flat  
**apoderarse** to seize  
**apreciable** estimable, kind  
**aprender (a)** to learn (to)  
**aquel** -ella *adj.* that, the former  
**aquél, aquélla, aquéllo**, that one, that, the one, the former  
**aquí** here  
**árabe** Arab  
**árbol** *m.* tree  
**aritmética** *f.* arithmetic  
**armonía** *f.* harmony  
**aroma** *f.* perfume, aroma  
**arpa** *f.* harp  
**arreglar** to arrange, regulate, see to  
**arriba** above, up  
**arroyo** *m.* stream  
**artículo** *m.* article  
**ascensor** *m.* elevator, lift  
**asegurar** to insure  
**asemejar** to resemble  
**asesinar** to murder  
**así** as, so, thus; **así como** as well as  
**asiento** *m.* seat  
**asistir** to be present  
**asno** -a *m. and f.* ass, donkey  
**áspero** -a rough  
**asunto** *m.* matter, affair, business  
**atacar** to attack  
**atención** *f.* attention  
**at.<sup>to</sup>** = **atento** attentive, kind  
**aun** still, yet; *accented after verb* **aún**  
**aunque** although, even if  
**ausente** absent  
**aventura** *f.* adventure  
**avería** *f.* damage  
**ayer** yesterday; **antes de ayer** day before yesterday  
**ayudar** to help  
**azúcar** *m.* sugar  
**azul** blue

- bailar** to dance  
**bajar** to go down; take down; get out  
**bajo** -a low  
**balcón** *m.* balcony  
**banca** *f.* banking  
**banco** *m.* bank  
**bando** *m.* band, side  
**barato** -a cheap  
**barco** *m.* boat, ship; *barco de vela* sailing ship  
**bastante** enough, sufficient; sufficiently, quite, rather  
**batalla** *f.* battle  
**baúl** *m.* trunk  
**beber** to drink  
**bebida** *f.* drink  
**bestia** *f.* animal  
**biblioteca** *f.* library  
**bien** well, comfortable  
**billete** *m.* bill, bank note, ticket  
**blanco** -a white  
**blando** -a soft  
**bobo** *m.* fool, booby  
**boca** *f.* mouth  
**bolsillo** *m.* pocket  
**bondad** *f.* goodness, kindness  
**bonito** -a pretty  
**bordado** *m.* embroidery  
**bordar** to embroider  
**bosque** *m.* woods  
**brazo** *m.* arm  
**bueno** -a good, well  
**buey** *m.* ox  
**buscar** to seek, look for  
**buzón** *m.* letter-box  
  
**cabalgar** to ride  
**caballero** *m.* gentleman, sir  
**caballo** *m.* horse  
**caber** to be contained  
  
**cabeza** *f.* head  
**cabo** *m.* end; *llevar a cabo* to carry out  
**cada** *adj.* each, every; *cada uno* (-a) each, each one  
**caer** to fall; *refl.* to fall down  
**café** *m.* coffee  
**caja** *f.* box  
**calentar** to warm, heat  
**calidad** *f.* quality  
**caliente** hot, warm  
**calor** *m.* heat, warmth; **tener calor** to be warm (*as a person*); **hacer calor** to be warm (*as the weather*)  
**callarse** to hush, be silent  
**calle** *f.* street  
**cama** *f.* bed  
**camarero** *m.* waiter  
**camarote** *m.* stateroom  
**cambiar** to change; to exchange  
**cambio** *m.* change; exchange  
**camello** *m.* camel  
**caminar** to journey, walk  
**camino** *m.* road, way  
**campana** *f.* bell; mantelpiece  
**campanilla** *f.* small bell  
**campesino** -a *m. and f.* countryman, countrywoman  
**campo** *m.* field, country; *casa de campo* country house  
**cansado** -a tired; (*with ser*) tiresome  
**cansar** to tire, fatigue  
**cantante** *m. and f.* singer  
**cantar** to sing  
**cañón** *m.* opening of chimney, flue  
**capital** *m.* capital (*money*); *f.* capital (*city*)  
**capitán** *m.* captain  
**cara** *f.* face  
**caramba** good gracious  
**carbón** *m.* coal  
**cardinal** *m.* cardinal

- cargar** to load, charge; to debit  
**cariño** *m.* affection  
**Carlos** *m.* Charles  
**carne** *f.* flesh, meat; **carne de vaca** beef  
**carnero** *m.* sheep, mutton  
**caro** -a dear, expensive  
**carta** *f.* letter  
**cartero** *m.* postman, letter-carrier  
**casa** *f.* house; **en casa** at home; **a casa** home; **en casa de** see section 33, a  
**casar** to marry; **casarse con** to marry, be married to  
**casi** almost  
**caso** *m.* case; **en caso que** in case  
**castellano** -a Castilian; **el castellano** Spanish  
**catálogo** *m.* catalogue  
**catedral** *f.* cathedral  
**causa** *f.* cause; **a causa de** on account of  
**ceguedad** *f.* blindness  
**celebrar** to be glad  
**célebre** celebrated  
**cena** *f.* supper  
**cenar** to have supper, sup  
**centavo** *m.* centavo, cent  
**centenar** *m.* a hundred  
**centésimo** -a hundredth  
**central** central  
**centro** *m.* center  
**cerca** near  
**cerdo** *m.* pig, pork  
**cerrado** -a closed, shut  
**cerrar** (*ie*) to shut, close  
**certificar** to register  
**ciego** -a blind  
**cielo** *m.* heaven, sky  
**ciento, cien**, one hundred 6  
**cierto** -a certain, a certain  
**citar** to mention  
**ciudad** *f.* city  
**claro** -a bright, light, clear  
**clase** *f.* class, kind, sort  
**clima** *m.* climate  
**cobijar** to shelter  
**cobrar** to cash, receive money  
**cobre** *m.* copper  
**cocina** *f.* kitchen, cooking  
**coche** *m.* carriage  
**cochero** *m.* driver, coachman  
**coger** to catch, gather  
**colegio** *m.* school  
**colgar** to hang  
**colocación** *f.* place, job  
**Colón** *m.* Columbus  
**color** *m.* color  
**comenzar** to commence  
**comer** to eat, dine  
**comerciante** *m.* merchant  
**comercio** *m.* commerce  
**comida** *f.* dinner, meal  
**comisión** *f.* commission  
**comisionista** *m.* commission merchant  
**como** as, like; while; **como que** when  
**cómo** how  
**cómodo** -a comfortable  
**compañero** -a *m. and f.* companion  
**compañía** *f.* company  
**completo** -a complete  
**componer** to compose, make up, mend  
**comprador** *m.* buyer  
**comprar** to buy  
**comprender** to understand  
**compuesto** *p.p. of componer*  
**común** common; **por lo común** commonly  
**con** with, toward; **para con** toward;  
**con tal que** provided that

- concurrir** to attend  
**conde** *m.* count  
**conducir** to conduct, lead, guide  
**confesar** to confess  
**confiar** to confide  
**confuso** -*a* confused, embarrassed  
**conmigo** with me  
**conocer** to know, be acquainted with  
**conocido** *m.* acquaintance  
**conozco** *pres. indic. 1st sing. of conocer*  
**conque** so then, *see section 214, 9*  
**conquista** *f.* conquest  
**conquistador** *m.* conqueror  
**conquistar** to conquer  
**consentir (en)** to consent (to)  
**considerar** to consider  
**consigo** with himself, herself, *etc.*  
**consiguiente** *m.* consequence; *por consiguiente* consequently  
**consistir** to consist  
**constar (de)** to consist (of)  
**consultar** to consult  
**consumidor** *m.* consumer  
**contado**: *al contado* for cash  
**contar (ue)** to count, tell, relate;  
**contar con** count on  
**contener** to contain  
**contento** -*a* satisfied  
**contestación** *f.* answer  
**contestar** to answer  
**contigo** with you, with thee  
**continuar** to continue  
**contra** against  
**contrario** -*a* contrary  
**convertir** to convert  
**convidar** to invite  
**copiar** to copy  
**copla** *f.* couplet, verse, stanza  
**copo** *m.* flake  
**cordillera** *f.* mountain range  
**corregir** to correct  
**correo** *m.* mail, post-office  
**correr** to run  
**corriente** present (*month*), instant, current  
**cortado** -*a* cut, broken  
**cortar** to cut  
**corte** *f.* court, capital, Madrid  
**cortés** polite, courteous  
**corto** -*a* short  
**cosa** *f.* thing, affair; matter  
**coser** to sew  
**costa** *f.* coast  
**costar** to cost  
**crecer** to grow  
**creer** to believe, think; *pres. part. creyendo*  
**criada** *f.* maid servant  
**criado** *m.* servant  
**Cristóbal** *m.* Christopher  
**c.º** = corriente  
**cuadro** *m.* picture  
**cual** which; *el (la) cual* who, which, whom  
**cuál** *interrog. adj. and pron.* which, what  
**cualquier(a)** any  
**cuando** when; *cuándo* when, *interrog.*  
**cuanto** -*a* how much, as much, all the, all that; *cuantos, cuantas, pl.* how many, as many, all the, all that; *cuanto antes* as soon as possible; *en cuanto* as soon as  
**cuánto** -*a* *interrog. and exclam.* how much; *pl.* how many; *cuánto tiempo* how long; *cuántos años tienes* how old are you  
**cuarto** *m.* room  
**Cuba** *f.* Cuba  
**cubano** -*a* Cuban  
**cubrir** to cover; *p. p. cubierto*  
**cuchara** *f.* spoon

- cuchillo** *m.* knife  
**cuenta** *f.* account, bill  
**cuerda** *f.* rope  
**cuero** *m.* leather  
**cuerpo** *m.* body  
**cuesta** : á **cuestas** on one's back  
**cuestión** *f.* question  
**cuidar** to take care of  
**cumpleaños** *m.* birthday (*anniversary*)  
**cumplimiento** *m.* fulfillment  
**cumplir** to fulfill, complete  
**cuñado -a** *m. and f.* brother-in-law, sister-in-law  
**cuyo -a** whose, of which
- cheque** *m.* check  
**chico** *m.* boy; *adj.* small  
**chimenea** *f.* fireplace  
**chispa** *f.* spark  
**chisporrotear** to burn and throw out sparks
- D. = don Mr.**  
**daño** *m.* harm; **hacer daño** to hurt  
**dar** to give, face, hit, strike (*of a clock*); **dar vuelta** turn  
**de** of, from, since  
**debajo de** under; beneath  
**deber** to be (*morally*) obliged to, ought, owe, should  
**decir** to say, tell  
**dedo** *m.* finger  
**dejar** to leave, allow, let  
**del** of the, from the; **del cual** of whom  
**delante** in front, before  
**demás** other, rest  
**demasiado -a** *adj.* too much, too many; *adv.* too, too much  
**dentro** inside, within  
**dependiente** *m.* clerk
- derecho -a** right, straight  
**desagradable** disagreeable  
**descansar** to rest  
**descanso** *m.* rest  
**descubrir** to discover  
**descuento** *m.* discount  
**desde** from, since; **desde . . . hasta** from . . . to; **desde que** since  
**desear** to desire, wish  
**desembarcar** to disembark, land  
**desembolso** *m.* expenditure  
**deseo** *m.* desire  
**desgracia** *f.* misfortune  
**desgraciado -a** unfortunate  
**desmentir** to belie  
**desnudar** to undress  
**despacio** slowly  
**despacho** *m.* office; **despacho de billetes** ticket office  
**despedirse** *refl.* to take leave  
**despertar** (*ie*) to awake, wake up; *refl.* to awake  
**después** afterward; **después de** *prep.* after; **después que** *conj.* after  
**detallado** itemized  
**detener** to stop  
**determinar** to determine  
**detrás** behind  
**deuda** *f.* debt  
**devolver** to return, give back  
**día** *m.* day; **de día** by day; **ocho días** a week; **quince días** a fortnight  
**diario -a** daily; a day  
**dice** *pres. indic. 3d sing. of decir* to say  
**diciembre** *m.* December  
**dicho -a** said, the said  
**dichoso -a** happy  
**diente** *m.* tooth  
**difícil** difficult  
**difunto -a** deceased  
**diga** *pres. subj. of decir*

- digo** *pres. indic. 1st sing. of decir*  
**dijeron** *pret. indic. 3d pl. of decir*  
**dinero** *m.* money  
**Dios** *m.* God  
**dirección** *f.* address  
**directo** **-a** direct, through  
**dirigir** to direct; *refl.* address, turn, direct one's self  
**discípulo** **-a** *m. and f.* pupil, scholar  
**discusión** *f.* discussion  
**disgusto** *m.* trial, displeasure  
**disimular** to excuse, pardon  
**dispensar** to excuse  
**dispuesto** ready, disposed  
**distancia** *f.* distance  
**distinto** **-a** different  
**divertir** *refl.* to amuse one's self, have a good time  
**dividir** to divide  
**Dn. = don**  
**Dña. = doña**  
**docena** *f.* dozen  
**doler** to ache  
**dolor** *m.* pain, ache, grief; **dolor de cabeza** headache  
**domingo** *m.* Sunday  
**don, doña, m. and f.** Mr., Mrs., Miss;  
**don Quijote** Don Quixote  
**donde** where, in which; **en donde** where, in which  
**dónde** *interrog.* where  
**dormir** to sleep; *refl.* to fall asleep  
**dos** two; **los (las)** **dos** both  
**dosel** *m.* canopy  
**duda** *f.* doubt  
**dudar** to doubt  
**dueño** *m.* master  
**dulce** sweet  
**duque** *m.* duke  
**duro** **-a** hard, severe  
**duro** *m.* dollar
- e** and  
**echar** to throw, cast, pour (*as water*); *refl.* to throw one's self down, lie down; **echar en el correo** to mail  
**edición** *f.* edition  
**edificio** *m.* building  
**educación** *f.* education  
**efectos** *m.* effects, goods  
**ejemplar** *m.* copy  
**ejercicio** *m.* exercise  
**ejército** *m.* army  
**el (la, lo, los, las)** the, that, the one, those; **el que** who, whom, he, who, etc.  
**él** he, him, it  
**eléctrico** **-a** electric  
**elefante** **-a** *m. and f.* elephant  
**elegante** elegant  
**elevado** **-a** high  
**ella** she, her, it  
**ello** it  
**ellos, ellas**, they, them  
**emperador** *m.* emperor  
**empezar** to begin  
**emplear** to employ, use  
**emprender** to undertake  
**en** in, into, on  
**encantar** to delight  
**encargar** to order; **encargarse de** to take charge of  
**encender** to light, kindle  
**encina** *f.* (evergreen) oak tree  
**encontrar** to meet, find; **encontrarse con** to meet  
**encuentro** *m.* encounter  
**enemigo** **-a** *m. and f.* enemy; *adj.* hostile  
**enero** *m.* January  
**enfermedad** *f.* illness, sickness  
**enfermo** **-a** ill, sick  
**enorme** huge

- Enrique** *m.* Henry  
**enseñar** to teach, show  
**ensuciar** to get dirty  
**entender** to understand; *refl.* to agree  
**entero** -a entire, whole, firm  
**entonces** then  
**entrada** *f.* entrance  
**entrar** to enter, go into; **hacer entrar** to show in, admit  
**entre** between, among  
**entregar** to deliver, hand over  
**enviar** to send  
**envidiar** to envy  
**equipaje** *m.* baggage, luggage  
**eran** *imperf. indic. 3d pl. of ser*  
**es** *pres. indic. 3d sing. of ser*  
**escalera** *f.* stairs  
**escoger** to select, choose  
**escribir** to write  
**escrito** *p. p. of escribir*  
**escuchar** to listen  
**escuela** *f.* school  
**ese (esa, eso, esos, esas)** that (those); *ése etc.* that one *etc.*; *eso* that which you say  
**espalda** *f.* back  
**España** *f.* Spain  
**español** -ola Spanish  
**Español** -ola *m. and f.* Spaniard, Spanish woman  
**especulación** *f.* speculation  
**espejo** *m.* mirror  
**esperanza** *f.* hope  
**esperar** to hope, wait (for), expect  
**espíritu** *m.* spirit, mind  
**esposo** -a *m. and f.* husband, wife  
**esquina** *f.* corner  
**estación** *f.* station, season  
**estado** *m.* state  
**Estados Unidos** *m. pl.* United States  
**estar** to be  
**estatua** *f.* statue  
**este (esta, esto, estos, estas)** *adj.* this (these), the latter; *éste etc.* *pronoun*  
**este** *m.* east  
**estimación** *f.* esteem  
**estimada** favor (*letter*)  
**estimar** to value  
**estómago** *m.* stomach  
**estrechar** to press  
**estrecho** -a narrow  
**estudiar** to study  
**exacto** -a exact  
**exclamar** to exclaim  
**excusar** to make excuses  
**éxito** *m.* outcome, result, issue, success  
**expirar** to expire  
**explicar** to explain  
**explique Vd.** explain (*pres. subj. of explicar*)  
**extranjero** -a *m. and f.* stranger, foreigner  
**extrañar** to surprise  
**extremo** *m.* end  
**fábrica** *f.* factory  
**fabricar** to make, manufacture  
**fácil** easy  
**facilidad** *f.* ease, facility  
**factura** *f.* invoice  
**facturar** to check (*baggage*)  
**faltar** to lack  
**familia** *f.* family  
**favor** *m.* favor; **hacer el favor** to do the favor  
**febrero** *m.* February  
**fecha** *f.* date  
**felicitar** congratulate  
**feliz** happy

**feo** -a ugly, homely  
**ferrocarril** *m.* railway  
**fiel** faithful  
**fiesta** *f.* feast, festival, festivity  
**figura** *f.* figure, form  
**figurar** to figure; *refl.* to fancy, imagine  
**fijar** to fix; **fijarse** *en* to notice, observe  
**fijo** fixed  
**flor** *f.* flower  
**Flor** *f.* Flora  
**fonda** *f.* inn, restaurant  
**formar** to form  
**fortaleza** *m.* fortress  
**fortuna** *f.* fortune  
**francés** -esa French  
**Francia** *f.* France  
**franco** -a frank  
**franqueo** *m.* postage  
**franqueza** *f.* frankness  
**frase** *f.* sentence  
**frente** *f.* front, forehead; **frente a** opposite  
**fresco** -a fresh, cool; **al fresco** in the open air  
**frío** -a *adj.* cold  
**frío** *m.* cold; **tengo frío** I am cold; **hace frío** it is cold  
**frontera** *f.* frontier, border  
**fruta** *f.* fruit  
**fruto** *m.* fruit, crops  
**fuego** *m.* fire  
**fuentes** *f.* fountain, spring  
**fuera** *impf. subj. 3d sing. of ir* to go  
**fuera de** apart from, outside of  
**fuerte** strong, mighty, powerful  
**fumar** to smoke (*as tobacco*)  
**funda** *f.* cover, case  
**fundar** to found, build

**gallina** *f.* hen  
**ganar** to earn, make (*money*), gain, win; **ganar a** to surpass  
**garganta** *f.* throat  
**gas** *m.* gas  
**gastar** to spend, waste  
**gasto** *m.* expense  
**gatito** -a *m. and f.* kitten  
**gato** -a *m. and f.* cat  
**general** *m.* general  
**género** *m.* goods  
**geografía** *f.* geography  
**girar** to draw (*drafts*)  
**giro** *m.* turn, revolution; **draft**, order; **dar giro** to set in movement  
**gitano** *m.* gypsy, tramp  
**gracias** thanks, I thank you; **dar gracias anticipadas** to thank in advance  
**gramática** *f.* grammar  
**gran** *cf. grande*  
**grande** great, big, large, grand  
**gritar** to shout  
**grito** *m.* shout  
**guante** *m.* glove  
**guardar** to keep, protect  
**guardia** *f.* guard; *m.* policeman  
**guarismo** *m.* numeral, cipher, figure  
**guerra** *f.* war  
**guerrero** *m.* warrior  
**gustar** to taste, please; **me gusta** I like  
**gusto** *m.* taste, pleasure  
  
**ha** *pres. indic. 3d sing. of haber*  
**haber** to have, be; **hay** there is, there are; **haber de** to have to  
**habitación** *f.* room  
**habitar** to live in, inhabit  
**hablador** -ora talkative  
**hablar** to speak, talk



<b>hacer</b> to make, do; <b>hacer falta</b> to be needed; <b>hace frío</b> it is cold; <b>hace una hora y media</b> an hour and a half ago; <b>cuánto tiempo hace</b> how long is it	<b>idioma</b> <i>m.</i> language
<b>hacia</b> toward(s)	<b>igual</b> equal
<b>hacha</b> <i>f.</i> ax	<b>imperio</b> <i>m.</i> empire
<b>hallar</b> to find; <i>refl.</i> to be	<b>importancia</b> <i>f.</i> importance
<b>hambre</b> <i>f.</i> hunger; <b>tener hambre</b> to be hungry	<b>importante</b> important
<b>hasta</b> to, up to, until, as far as, even	<b>importar</b> to be of importance, concern, amount to; <b>no importa</b> no matter
<b>hay</b> there is, there are ( <i>cf.</i> haber)	<b>importe</b> <i>m.</i> amount, value
<b>hecho</b> <i>p.p.</i> of <b>hacer</b>	<b>imposible</b> impossible
<b>herencia</b> <i>f.</i> inheritance	<b>inca</b> <i>m.</i> Inca
<b>hermano</b> -a <i>m. and f.</i> brother, sister	<b>incendio</b> <i>m.</i> fire, conflagration
<b>hermoso</b> -a beautiful, handsome, fine	<b>inclinarse</b> to incline
<b>hierba</b> <i>f.</i> grass	<b>incluso</b> included
<b>hierro</b> <i>m.</i> iron	<b>inconveniente</b> : <b>no tener inconveniente</b> to have no objection
<b>hija</b> <i>f.</i> daughter	<b>indemnizar</b> to indemnify
<b>hijito</b> -a <i>m. and f.</i> little son, little daughter	<b>indicar</b> to point out, show
<b>hijo</b> -a <i>m. and f.</i> son, daughter; <i>m. pl.</i> sons, children	<b>indio</b> -a Indian, Hindu
<b>historia</b> <i>f.</i> history	<b>informes</b> <i>m. pl.</i> information
<b>hogar</b> <i>m.</i> hearth, home	<b>ingeniero</b> <i>m.</i> engineer
<b>hoja</b> <i>f.</i> leaf	<b>Inglaterra</b> <i>f.</i> England
<b>hola</b> hello	<b>inglés</b> -esa English
<b>hombre</b> <i>m.</i> man	<b>Inglés</b> -esa <i>m. and f.</i> Englishman, Englishwoman
<b>hora</b> <i>f.</i> hour; <b>qué hora es</b> what time is it; <b>a qué hora</b> when	<b>instante</b> <i>m.</i> instant; <b>al instante</b> instantly
<b>horno</b> <i>m.</i> oven	<b>instruir</b> to instruct
<b>hoy</b> to-day	<b>instrumento</b> <i>m.</i> instrument
<b>hubo</b> there was, there were ( <i>cf.</i> haber)	<b>inteligente</b> intelligent
<b>huele</b> <i>pres. indic. 3d sing. of oler</i> to smell	<b>intención</b> <i>f.</i> intention
<b>huevo</b> <i>m.</i> egg	<b>intenso</b> -a intense
<b>humildad</b> <i>f.</i> humility	<b>interés</b> <i>m.</i> interest
<b>ida</b> going; <b>billete de ida y vuelta</b> excursion ticket	<b>interesante</b> interesting
	<b>interesar</b> to interest
	<b>interior</b> interior, internal
	<b>invierno</b> <i>m.</i> winter
	<b>ir</b> to go, go on, continue; <i>refl.</i> to go off, go away
	<b>italiano</b> -a Italian
	<b>izquierdo</b> -a left

- jabón** *m.* soap  
**jamás** ever, never; no . . . **jamás**  
 never  
**jaqueta** *f.* jacket  
**jardín** *m.* garden  
**Jorge** *m.* George  
**José** *m.* Joseph  
**joven** young  
**joven** *m. and f.* (young) man, woman,  
 youth  
**Juan** *m.* John  
**Juana** *f.* Jane  
**Juanito** *m.* Johnny  
**jueves** *m.* Thursday  
**juez** *m.* judge  
**jugar** to play  
**junio** *m.* June  
**junto** -a together; **junto a** near  
**justamente** exactly  
  
**kilómetro** *m.* kilometer  
  
**la** *f.* the, that, the one, she, her, it;  
*pl.* the, those, they  
**la** *pers. prn.* her, it; *pl.* them  
**labio** *m.* lip  
**ladera** *f.* side, flank  
**lado** *m.* side  
**lágrima** *f.* tear  
**lámpara** *f.* lamp  
**lana** *f.* wool  
**lápiz** *m.* pencil  
**largo** -a long; *n.* length  
**lástima** *f.* pity  
**lavar** to wash  
**le** him, it, you; to him (her, it, you)  
**lección** *f.* lesson  
**leche** *f.* milk  
**leer** to read  
**lejos** far  
**lengua** *f.* tongue, language  
  
**lento** -a slow  
**les** to them, to you  
**letra** *f.* draft; letter of credit  
**levantar** to raise; *refl.* to rise, get  
 up  
**ley** *f.* law  
**libertad** *f.* liberty  
**libra** *f.* pound  
**libre** free  
**librero** *m.* bookseller  
**libro** *m.* book  
**limón** *m.* lemon  
**lindo** -a pretty  
**listo** -a ready  
**lo** the, it, him, you, so; **lo que** that,  
 which, what; **lo cual** which  
**lodo** *m.* mud  
**lomo** *m.* back  
**Londres** London  
**longitud** *f.* length  
**los** the, them, you; **los que** those  
 who (whom); **los suyos** his own  
**lucha** *f.* struggle  
**luego** directly, soon, next; **luego que**  
 as soon as  
**lugar** *m.* place  
**lugareño** -a *m. and f.* villager  
**luna** *f.* moon  
**lunes** *m.* Monday  
**luz** *f.* light  
  
**llamar** to call, knock, ring; *refl.* to  
 be named  
**llano** -a level  
**llave** *f.* key  
**llegada** *f.* arrival  
**llegar** to arrive  
**llevar** to bear, carry, take, wear;  
**llevar a cabo** to carry out  
**llorar** to weep, cry  
**llover** to rain

- maceta** *f.* flower-pot  
**madera** *f.* wood  
**madre** *f.* mother  
**maduro** -a ripe  
**mal** badly, poorly; *noun m.* evil, harm; *adj. cf.* malo  
**maleta** *f.* handbag, valise  
**malo** -a bad, ill, sick  
**mamá** *f.* mamma, mother  
**mandar** to command, order, send  
**manera** *f.* manner, way  
**mano** *f.* hand  
**mantenimiento** *m.* support  
**mantequilla** *f.* butter  
**manzana** *f.* apple  
**mañana** *f.* morning, to-morrow; mañana por la mañana to-morrow morning; pasado mañana day after to-morrow  
**mar** *m. or f.* sea  
**marchar** to march, go; *refl.* to go away  
**marearse** to get seasick  
**María** *f.* Mary  
**marido** *m.* husband  
**martes** *m.* Tuesday  
**marzo** *m.* March  
**mas** but  
**más** more, most, plus; no . . . más que only  
**matar** to kill  
**mayo** *m.* May  
**mayor** greater, greatest; elder, older, oldest; *por mayor* wholesale  
**me** me, to me  
**medicina** *f.* medicine  
**médico** *m.* physician, doctor (of medicine)  
**medio** -a half, a half, middle; *por medio de* by means of  
**medir** to measure  
**mejicano** -a Mexican  
**Méjico** *m.* Mexico  
**mejilla** *f.* cheek  
**mejor** better, best  
**memoria** *f.* memory  
**mencionar** to mention  
**menor** smaller, smallest; younger, youngest; *por menor* retail  
**menos** less, least; **a menos que** unless  
**menudo**: **a menudo** often  
**mercader** *m.* tradesman  
**mercadería** *f.* merchandise  
**merino** -a merino  
**mes** *m.* month  
**mesa** *f.* table, desk  
**metal** *m.* metal  
**metro** *m.* meter  
**mi** my  
**mí** me  
**miedo** *m.* fear; **tener miedo de** to be afraid of  
**mientras** while  
**miércoles** *m.* Wednesday  
**mil** (one) thousand; *noun m.* thousand  
**militar** *m.* soldier, officer  
**milla** *f.* mile  
**millón** *m.* million  
**mina** *f.* mine  
**mineral** *m.* mineral, ore  
**minuto** *m.* minute  
**mío** -a my, mine  
**mirar** to look  
**mismo** -a self, himself *etc.*; same, very; **mismo que** same as  
**mitad** *f.* half  
**moda** *f.* fashion; **de moda** fashionable  
**módico** -a moderate  
**modo** *m.* way, mode, manner  
**modulación** *f.* modulation  
**molestar** to annoy, trouble, disturb

- molestia** *f.* trouble  
**momento** *m.* moment  
**moneda** *f.* coin  
**montaña** *f.* mountain  
**monte** *m.* mountain, woodland  
**morir** (*ue*) to die; *refl.* to die, be dying  
**motivo** *m.* reason  
**mover** to move, actuate  
**movimiento** *m.* movement  
**mozo** -*a m. and f.* youth, lad, lass;  
     waiter, waitress  
**muchacho** -*a m. and f.* boy, girl  
**muchísimo** -*a (fr. mucho)* very much  
**mucho** -*a* much, a great deal, very  
**mueble** *m.* article (piece) of furniture;  
     *pl.* furniture  
**muerte** *f.* death  
**mujer** *f.* woman, wife  
**mula** *f.* mule  
**mundo** *m.* world; *todo el mundo* every-  
     body  
**muy** very  
  
**nacer** to be born  
**nacionalidad** *f.* nationality  
**nada** nothing, anything, any respect;  
     *no . . . nada* nothing  
**nadar** to swim  
**nadie** no one, nobody, any one, any-  
     body; *no . . . nadie* nobody, not  
     anybody  
**naranja** *f.* orange  
**nariz** *f.* nose  
**nave** *f.* ship; *nave (of church)*  
**Navidad** *f.* Christmas Day  
**navío** *m.* vessel  
**necesidad** *f.* necessity  
**necesitar** to need, want  
**negar** to deny  
**negocio** *m.* business, affair  
**negro** -*a* black  
  
**nevar** to snow  
**ni** nor, or; *ni . . . ni* neither . . .  
     nor; *ni . . . tampoco* not . . . either,  
     nor . . . either  
**nieto** -*a m. and f.* grandson, grand-  
     daughter  
**nieve** *f.* snow  
**ninguno** -*a* no, none; *no . . . ninguno*  
     not any  
**nifio** -*a m. and f.* child, (small) boy,  
     girl  
**no** not, no  
**noche** *f.* night; *esta noche* to-night;  
     *de noche* by night  
**Nochebuena** *f.* Christmas Eve  
**nombramiento** *m.* appointment  
**nombrar** to appoint  
**nombre** *m.* name  
**norte** *m.* north  
**norte-americano** -*a* North American  
**nos** us; to us, to ourselves  
**nosotros** -*as* we, us  
**noticias** *f. pl.* news  
**novedad** *f.* novelty; occurrence  
**noviembre** *m.* November  
**nuestro** -*a* our, ours  
**nuevo** -*a* new  
**número** *m.* number; *gran número*  
     a large number, many  
**nunca** never, ever; *no . . . nunca*  
     never, not ever  
  
**o** or  
**objeto** *m.* object  
**obligar** to oblige, compel  
**obra** *f.* work  
**obscurer** to get dark  
**obscuridad** *f.* darkness  
**oscuro** -*a* dark  
**octubre** *m.* October  
**ocultar** to hide

- oculto** -a hidden  
**ocupación** *f.* occupation  
**ocupado** -a busy, occupied  
**ocupar** to occupy  
**odiar** to hate  
**oeste** *m.* west  
**ofrecer** to offer  
**oído** *m.* hearing, ear  
**oiga** *pres. subj.* of *oír*  
**oír** to hear  
**ojo** *m.* eye  
**oler** to smell; **oler a** to smell of  
**olfato** *m.* sense of smell  
**olor** *m.* odor  
**olvidar** to forget  
**onza** *f.* ounce  
**ópera** *f.* opera  
**operación** *f.* operation  
**opinar** to opine, be of the opinion  
**opinión** *f.* opinion  
**óptimo** -a best, excellent  
**opuesto** -a opposite, opposed  
**orador** *m.* orator  
**orar** to pray  
**orden** *f.* order  
**ordinal** ordinal  
**órgano** *m.* organ  
**oriental** Oriental  
**origen** *m.* origin  
**original** original  
**oro** *m.* gold  
**os** you  
**osar** to dare  
**oscuro** dark  
**otoño** *m.* autumn  
**otro** -a other, another  
**oveja** *f.* sheep  
**oye** (*cf.* *oír*) hear  
  
**Pablo** *m.* Paul  
**paciencia** *f.* patience  
  
**padre** *m.* father, priest; *pl.* fathers, parents  
**pagar** to pay  
**pagaré** *m.* promissory note  
**página** *f.* page  
**pago** *m.* payment  
**pagué** *pret. indic. 1st sing. of pagar*  
**país** *m.* country, region, land  
**pájaro** *m.* bird  
**palabra** *f.* word  
**palabrota** (*fr.* *palabra*) *f.* coarse expression, harsh word  
**palacio** *m.* palace  
**palma** *f.* palm tree  
**pan** *m.* bread  
**panadero** *m.* baker  
**pantalones** *m.* trousers  
**pañó** *m.* cloth  
**pañuelo** handkerchief  
**papá** *m.* papa, father  
**papel** *m.* paper; **papel secante** blotting paper  
**paquete** *m.* package  
**para** for, to, in order to; **para que** in order that, that  
**paraguas** *m.* umbrella  
**pararse** to stop  
**parecer** to seem; *refl.* resemble; **qué le parece** what is your opinion  
**parecido** -a similar  
**pared** *f.* wall  
**pariente** -a *m. and f.* relative, relation  
**parque** *m.* park  
**parte** *f.* part, direction; **por todas partes** everywhere; **la mayor parte** most  
**participar** to inform  
**partida** *f.* lot; game  
**partir** to depart, leave  
**pasado** -a past, last; **pasado mañana** day after to-morrow

- pasar** to pass, pass through, pass over, spend (*time*)  
**paso** *m.* step; dar un paso take a step  
**pasto** *m.* forage, food  
**patinar** to skate  
**paz** *f.* peace  
**P. D.** = **posdata** postscript  
**pecho** *m.* breast, chest  
**pedido** *m.* order (*of goods*)  
**pedir** to ask for; pedir a to ask of Pedro *m.* Peter  
**pegar** to stick  
**pelear** to fight  
**peligro** *m.* peril, danger  
**peligroso** -a dangerous  
**pelota** *f.* ball  
**pensar** to think, intend, mean (*followed directly by an infinitive*); pensar en to think of, recall; pensar de to think of, form an opinion of  
**peor** worse, worst  
**pequeño** -a little, small, slight  
**percibir** to perceive  
**perder** to lose; perder a to ruin  
**pérdida** *f.* loss  
**perfumería** *f.* perfumery  
**periódico** *m.* newspaper, periodical  
**perjuicio** *m.* injury  
**permitir** to permit  
**pero** but  
**perro** *m.* dog  
**persona** *f.* person, anybody  
**personaje** *m.* personage  
**pertenecer** to belong  
**pesar** to weigh  
**pescado** *m.* fish  
**peseta** *f.* peseta (*nearly twenty cents*)  
**peso** *m.* weight; dollar  
**piano** *m.* piano  
**pie** *m.* foot; de pie standing  
**pedra** *f.* stone  
**piel** *f.* skin, hide  
**pierna** *f.* leg  
**piso** *m.* story, floor  
**pizarra** *f.* slate, blackboard  
**placer** *m.* pleasure  
**plano** -a level  
**planta** *f.* plant  
**plata** *f.* silver  
**plato** *m.* plate  
**pluma** *f.* pen, feather; pluma tintero fountain pen  
**pobre** poor  
**poco** -a little; un poco a little; pocos -as few; poco ha a short while ago; a poco in a short time  
**podér** (*ue*) to be able, can, may  
**polo** *m.* pole  
**poner** to put, place, set (*a table*), lay (*eggs*); *refl.* to put on (*clothing*), become, begin  
**por** for, through, by, along, on account of, per; por all over there; por la mañana in the morning; por eso therefore; por qué why  
**porque** because  
**por qué** why  
**portador** *m.* bearer  
**poseer** to possess, own  
**posible** possible  
**postal** postal  
**p.p.<sup>do</sup>** = **próximo pasado**  
**practicar** to practice  
**precio** *m.* price  
**preciso** -a necessary  
**preferir** to prefer  
**pregunta** *f.* question  
**preguntar** (*a*) to ask (*question*)  
**presencia** *f.* presence  
**presentar** to present, introduce  
**presente** present  
**presidente** *m.* president

- préstamo** *m.* loan  
**prestar** to lend  
**primavera** *f.* spring  
**primer(0)** -a first  
**primo** -a *m. and f.* cousin  
**príncipe** *m.* prince  
**principiar** to begin  
**prisa** *f.* hurry; **tener prisa** to be in a hurry; **de prisa** quickly, fast  
**probar** to prove, test; try on (*garments*)  
**producir** to produce  
**profesor** *m.* professor, teacher  
**prohibir** to forbid, prohibit  
**prometer** to promise  
**pronto** soon, quickly  
**propina** *f.* tip, gratuity  
**propio** -a own  
**proteger** to protect  
**próximo** -a next; **próximo pasado** last month, **ultimo**  
**público** -a public; *noun m.* audience  
**pueblo** *m.* people, town  
**puerta** *f.* door, gate  
**puerto** *m.* port, harbor  
**pues** since, well, why; so, then  
**pujar** to bid  
**punto** *m.* point, element
- que, el (la, las, los, las) que**, who, which, that; **lo que** that which, what  
**que conj.** that, for, than, as; **tener que** to have to, must  
**qué interrog. and exclam.** what, what a  
**quedar** to remain; *refl.* to remain, stay; **quedarse con** to keep  
**quemar** to burn  
**querer** to wish, want, like, try; **querer a** to love, like; **querer decir** to mean, signify
- querido** -a dear  
**quien** who, whom, he who, him who  
**quién** *interrog.* who, whom  
**quitar** take from, take off  
**quizás** perhaps
- ramo** *m.* branch  
**ranchito** *m.* ranch  
**raro** -a strange, odd, queer  
**rato** *m.* while; **ratito** little while  
**rayo** *m.* ray, beam  
**razón** *f.* reason, right; **tener razón** to be right  
**rebajar** to allow a discount  
**rebuznar** to bray  
**recapitular** to recapitulate  
**recibir** to receive  
**recibo** *m.* receipt  
**recobrar** to recover  
**recordar** to recall, remind  
**redondo** -a round; **mesa redonda** table d'hôte  
**reducir** to reduce  
**referir** to relate, utter  
**regalar** to give, present  
**regalo** *m.* present, gift  
**regar (ie)** to water, irrigate  
**regatear** to bargain  
**registrar** to search, examine  
**regresar** to return  
**regreso** *m.* return  
**reír** to laugh; **reírse (de)** to laugh (at)  
**reloj** *m.* watch, clock  
**remesa** *f.* remittance  
**remitir** to remit  
**repetir** to repeat  
**reposar** to rest  
**representar** to represent  
**república** *f.* republic  
**repuso** rejoined  
**respetuoso** -a respectful

**responder** to respond, answer; **responder de** to answer for, be responsible for

**resultar** to result

**retrato** *m.* portrait, picture

**rey** *m.* king; *pl.* monarchs

**rezar** to pray

**rico** -a rich

**riegan** water, irrigate (*from regar*)

**rincón** *m.* corner

**río** *m.* river

**riqueza** *f.* riches, wealth

**rodar** to roll

**rodilla** *f.* knee; **de rodillas** on one's knees

**Rodolfo** *m.* Rudolph

**rogar** to ask, entreat

**rojo** -a red

**ropa** *f.* clothing, clothes

**ruido** *m.* noise

**S. S. Q. B. S. M. (P.) = seguro(-a)**

**servidor (-ora) que besa sus manos (pies)**

**sábado** *m.* Saturday

**saber** to know, know how, learn, be able; **saber á** to taste of

**sabor** *m.* flavor

**sacar** to take out, get

**sala** *f.* room; **sala de clase** classroom; **sala de espera** waiting-room

**salga** *pres. subj. of salir*

**salida** *f.* going out, departure; **salida del sol** sunrise

**salir** to come out, go out, issue, leave

**saltar** to jump

**salud** *f.* health; **bien de salud** in good health

**saludar** to greet

**saludo** *m.* greeting

**sano** -a healthful, well

**santo** -a holy, saint

**sastre** *m.* tailor

**satisfacer** to satisfy, please

**se** himself, herself, one's self, yourself, themselves, yourselves; (= *le, les*) to him, to her, to it, to them, to you

**secar** to dry; *refl.* to wipe one's self

**sed** *f.* thirst; **tener sed** to be thirsty

**seguida**: **en seguida** next, immediately

**seguir** to follow, succeed, keep on  
**según** *prep.* according to; *conj.* according as, as

**segundo** *m.* second

**seguridad** *f.* security, safety

**seguro** -a secure, sure, firm; *noun m.* insurance

**selva** *f.* forest

**sello** *m.* stamp

**semana** *f.* week; **la semana que viene** next week

**semejante** such a

**sentado** seated, sitting

**sentar** to set, seat; fit, suit; *refl.* to sit down, be seated

**sentido** *m.* sense

**sentimiento** *m.* feeling, grief, sorrow

**sentir** to feel, perceive; be sorry, regret

**señor** *m.* sir, gentleman, Mr.

**Señor** *m.* Lord

**señora** *f.* madam, lady, wife, Mrs.

**señorita** *f.* young lady, miss

**sepa** *pres. subj. of saber*

**separar** to take

**se(p)tiembre** *m.* September

**ser** to be

**serie** *f.* series

**servicial** obliging

**servicio** *m.* service



- servidor -ora** *m. and f.* servant; **servidor de Vd.** at your service  
**servir** (*i*) to serve; **servirse de** to make use of; **servirse Vd.** please, be kind enough; **para qué sirve** what is it used for  
**severo -a** strict, severe  
**Sevilla** *f.* Seville  
**si** if; whether (*in indirect questions*); why, indeed (*in exclamations*)  
**sí** yes  
**sí** himself, herself, itself, yourself, one's self, themselves, yourselves  
**siempre** always, ever, still  
 **siga** *pres. subj. of seguir*  
**siglo** *m.* century  
**significar** to signify, mean  
**siguiente** following  
**silbar** to whistle  
**silencio** *m.* silence  
**silla** *f.* chair, saddle  
**sin** without  
**singular** *m.* singular  
**sino** but, except; no . . . **sino** only  
**sistema** *m.* system  
**sitiar** to besiege  
**sitio** *m.* place  
**sobrado -a** great  
**sobre** on, above; **sobre todo** above all, especially  
**sobre** *m.* envelope  
**sobrino -a** *m. and f.* nephew, niece  
**sol** *m.* sun  
**soldado** *m.* soldier  
**solo -a** alone, solitary  
**sólo** *adv.* only, merely  
**sombrero** *m.* hat  
**son** they are (*from ser*)  
**sonar** to sound, ring  
**sonido** *m.* sound  
**sonreír** to smile  
**sordo -a** deaf  
**Sr., SOR., = señor**  
**Sra., SORÁ., = señora**  
**Srta. = señorita**  
**su** his, her, its, their, your, one's; **su . . . de Vd.** your  
**suave** smooth  
**subir** to go up, take up; get in  
**substancia** *f.* substance  
**suced** to happen, follow (*in order*)  
**suelo** *m.* floor, ground  
**sueño** *m.* sleep; **tener sueño** to be sleepy; **en sueños** in dreams  
**sufrir** to suffer  
**suma** *f.* sum, amount  
**suministrar** to supply  
**superficie** *f.* surface  
**superior** upper  
**suplicar** to beg, entreat  
**surtido** *m.* stock, assortment  
**sustituir** to substitute, take one's place  
**sur** *m.* south  
**suyo -a** your, yours  
**tabaco** *m.* tobacco  
**tacto** *m.* touch  
**tal** such, such a; **un tal** a certain; **con tal que** provided that; **tal vez** perhaps; **qué tal** how, what kind of  
**también** also, too  
**tampoco** as little, neither, nor . . . either  
**tanto -a** as much, so much; **tantos -as** as many, so many; **tanto . . . como** as (so) much . . . as  
**tanto** *adv.* so much, so  
**tardar** to delay; **no tardará en venir** it will not be long before he comes

- tarde** late  
**tarde** *f.* evening, afternoon  
**tarjeta** *f.* card; **tarjeta de visita** visiting card  
**taza** *f.* cup  
**te** you, thee  
**té** *m.* tea  
**teatro** *m.* theater  
**techo** *m.* ceiling  
**tela** *f.* cloth, fabric  
**temer** to fear  
**temprano** early  
**tenderse** to be spread  
**tenedor** *m.* fork  
**tener** to have, hold; **tener que** to have to  
**tercio** -a third  
**terminar** to finish, end  
**Terranova** Newfoundland  
**terreno** *m.* land  
**tesoro** *m.* treasure  
**ti** you, thee  
**tía** *f.* aunt  
**tiempo** *m.* time; weather; **cuánto tiempo hace** how long is it  
**tienda** *f.* shop, store  
**tienen** *pres. indic. 3d pl. of tener*  
**tierno** -a tender  
**tierra** *f.* earth, land  
**tinta** *f.* ink  
**tío** -a *m. and f.* uncle, aunt  
**tirar** to throw; (*of colors*) shade  
**tiza** *f.* chalk  
**toalla** *f.* towel  
**tocar** to touch, ring, play (*a musical instrument*); knock (*on a door*); be one's turn  
**todavía** still, yet  
**todo**-a all, every; *n.* all, everything; **todo el día** all day; **todas las noches** every night  
**tomar** to take  
**tomo** *m.* volume  
**tonto** -a *m. and f.* goose, fool  
**torre** *f.* tower  
**trabajar** to work  
**trabajo** *m.* work  
**traer** to bring  
**traiga** *pres. subj. of traer*  
**traje** *m.* suit, costume  
**transportar** to transport  
**tranvía** *m.* tramway, street car  
**tratar** to treat, have dealings (with)  
**trato** *m.* bargain  
**tren** *m.* train  
**trineo** *m.* sleigh  
**triste** sad, gloomy, dismal  
**tronco** *m.* trunk of a tree  
**tu** thy, your  
**tú** thou, you  
**tuyo** -a thine, yours; **el tuyo** *etc.* thine, yours  
  
**u** or  
**último** -a last  
**universidad** *f.* university  
**uno** -a one; **unos** -as some, any, about; **á la una** at one o'clock  
**usted** (*pl. ustedes*) you  
**útil** useful  
  
**V. (usted)** you; **VV. (ustedes)** you *pl.*  
**vaca** *f.* cow  
**valer** to be worth; **más vale** it is better  
**valor** *m.* valor, courage; value, values, securities  
**valle** *m.* valley  
**van** (*cf. ir*) they are going  
**vapor** *m.* steam; steamer  
**vara** *f.* yard

- variar** to vary, change  
**vario** -a various, different  
**vaso** *m.* glass  
**vaya** *pres. subj. of ir*  
**Vd. (usted) you; Vds. (ustedes)**  
     you *pl.*  
**vecino** -a *m. and f.* neighbor  
**vedar** to forbid  
**vela** *f.* candle; sail  
**velar** to watch  
**velocidad** *f.* speed  
**vencedor** *m.* victor  
**vencer** to conquer; win; fall due  
**vendedor** *m.* seller  
**vender** to sell  
**venga** *pres. subj. of venir*  
**venir** to come, happen  
**venta** *f.* sale  
**ventana** *f.* window  
**ver** to see  
**verano** *m.* summer  
**verdad** *f.* truth; ¿no es verdad? isn't  
     it so?  
**verdadero** -a true, real  
**verde** green  
**verdura** *f.* verdure  
**verificarse** to take place  
**vestido** *m.* garment, clothes, suit  
**vestir** (*i*) to dress, clothe; *refl.* to  
     dress one's self  
**vez** *f.* time; otra vez again; una vez  
     once  
**viajar** to travel  
**viaje** *m.* journey, travel, trip  
**viajero** *m.* traveler  
**vida** *f.* life, living  
**viejo** -a old  
**viene** (*cf. venir*) he comes  
**viento** *m.* wind  
**viernes** *m.* Friday  
**visible** visible, to be seen  
**visita** *f.* visit  
**visitar** to visit  
**vista** *f.* sight, view  
**visto** -a *p. p. of ver* to see  
**vistoso** -a showy  
**viudo** -a *m. and f.* widower, widow  
**vivir** to live  
**volar** to fly  
**voluntad** *f.* will  
**volver** to turn, return, come back;  
     **volver a** again, *see section 107, 5;*  
     *refl.* to turn around  
**vos** you  
**vosotros** -as you, ye  
**voy** *pres. indic. 1st sing. of ir* I go  
**voz** *f.* voice  
**vuelta** *f.* turn, return; a vuelta de  
     correo by return mail; estar de  
     vuelta to be back, have returned;  
     dar vuelta to turn  
**vuestro** -a your, yours  
**y** and  
**ya** already, now, *see section 209, c;*  
     ya no no longer, no more  
**yo** I  
**zapato** *m.* shoe  
**zas** smash

## ENGLISH-SPANISH VOCABULARY

NOTE. Radical-changing verbs are indicated thus: sentir (*ie*)

- a, an, un, una**  
**about** (*approximately*) cerca de; (*of*) de; (*with regard to*) respecto á  
**above** *adv.* arriba; *prep.* sobre, encima de  
**absence** ausencia *f.*  
**absent** ausente  
**accent** acento *m.*; *vb.* acentuar  
**accept** aceptar  
**accompany** acompañar  
**according to** según  
**account** cuenta *f.*; **on account a** cuenta; **on account of a causa de**  
**ache** doler (*ue*)  
**acknowledge** reconocer; **acknowledge the receipt (of)** acusar recibo (de)  
**acquaintance** (*person*) conocido; (*knowledge*) conocimiento *m.*; **make acquaintance** conocer  
**act** hecho *m.*; *vb.* hacer  
**actress** actriz *f.*  
**address** dirección *f.*; *vb.* saludar  
**admire** admirar  
**adorn** adornar  
**advance** adelantar  
**advertise** anunciar  
**advice** consejo *m.*; **give advice** aconsejar  
**advise** aconsejar (*a*)  
**affair** asunto *m.*
- affectionate** carinoso -a; **very (most)** affectionate afectísimo -a, af.<sup>mo</sup> -a  
**afoot** á pie  
**afraid**: **be afraid (of)** tener miedo (de)  
**after** *prep.* después de; *conj.* después que  
**afternoon** tarde *f.*  
**again** otra vez, de nuevo, volver a  
**age** edad *f.*  
**ago**: **a long time ago** hace mucho tiempo; **mucho tiempo ha**; *see section 64, a.*  
**agree (to)** convenir (en); (*get along together*) entenderse  
**agreeable** agradable  
**ahead** delante; **straight ahead** derecho por adelante  
**air** aire *m.*; **open air** aire libre, al fresco  
**Alfred** Alfredo *m.*  
**alive** vivo -a  
**all** todo -a; **all day** todo el día  
**allow** dejar, permitir; (*a discount*) conceder  
**almost** casi  
**alone** solo  
**along** á lo largo de  
**aloud** alto; en voz alta  
**already** ya  
**also** también

- although** aunque  
**aluminum** aluminio *m.*  
**always** siempre  
**A. M.** de la mañana  
**America** América *f.*; **North America** la América del Norte  
**American** *adj.* americano -a, norteamericano -a  
**among** entre  
**amount** importar; *ascender (ie)* (a); *importe m.*  
**amphitheatre** anfiteatro *m.*  
**amusing** divertido -a  
**and** *y, (before i- or hi-) e*  
**angry** enojado -a, irritado -a, enfadado -a; *be angry* enojarse, irritarse, enfadarse  
**animal** animal *m.*  
**Anna** Ana *f.*  
**anniversary** aniversario *m.*  
**another** otro -a  
**answer** responder; *(to a letter)* contestar (a); *(noun)* contestación *f.*  
**antiquity** antigüedad *f.*  
**any (one)** alguno -a; *(after negatives or expressions suggesting negation)* ninguno -a, alguno -a *after noun*; *in any way (after neg. etc.)* en nada  
**anybody** alguien; *(after neg. etc.)* nadie; *anybody who see sec. 166, 3*  
**anything** algo, alguna cosa; *(after neg. etc.)* nada  
**appear** aparecer, *(seem)* parecer  
**applaud** aplaudir  
**apple** manzana *f.*; **apple tree** manzano *m.*; **apple orchard** manzanar *m.*  
**appoint** nombrar  
**appraise** apreciar  
**approach** acercarse (a)  
**April** abril *m.*  
**Arabic** árabe  
**arch** arco *m.*  
**argue** argüir  
**arise** levantarse  
**arithmetic** aritmética *f.*  
**arm** brazo *m.*  
**army** ejército *m.*  
**around** alrededor de  
**arrival** llegada *f.*  
**arrive (at, in)** llegar (a)  
**art** arte *f.*  
**article** artículo *m.*  
**as** como; *as... as* tan... como; *as soon as* luego que, tan pronto como  
**ascertain** averiguar  
**ashamed: to be ashamed** tener vergüenza  
**ashore** a (en) tierra  
**Asia** Asia *f.*  
**ask (question)** preguntar; *(beg, request)* pedir (*i*), rogar (*ue*); *ask of* pedir a; *ask for* pedir  
**assembly** asamblea *f.*  
**at a, (= in)** en  
**attack** acometer  
**attend** concurrir (a); asistir (a)  
**attention** atención *f.*  
**auction** subasta *f.*  
**audience** los oyentes; asistencia *f.*  
**August** agosto *m.*  
**aunt** tía *f.*  
**autumn** otoño *m.*  
**avoid** evitar  
**await** esperar  
**awake** despertarse (*ie*)  
**away (with expression of distance)** a *before noun*; *as adverb with verbs, see the verbs*  
**bachelor** solterón *m.*  
**back (of person)** espalda *f.*; *(of animal)* lomo *m.*

- bad** malo -a; bad cold fuerte resfriado; it's too bad es lástima  
**badly** mal  
**bag** saco *m.*; traveling bag maleta *f.*  
**baker** panadero *m.*  
**ball** pelota *f.*; play ball jugar a la pelota  
**bank** banco *m.*  
**bark** ladrar (*of dogs*)  
**basis** tipo *m.*  
**bathe** bañarse  
**be** (*permanently or inherently*) ser; (*position or temporarily*) estar; be cold tener frío (*of a person or animal*); estar frío (*of an inanimate object*); hacer frío (*of the weather*)  
**bear one's self** portarse  
**beard** barba *f.*  
**beautiful** bello -a, (*handsome*) hermoso -a  
**beauty** hermosura *f.*  
**because** porque  
**become** ser; hacerse, ponerse  
**bed** cama *f.*; go to bed acostarse (*ue*)  
**bedroom** habitación *f.*  
**beef** carne de vaca *f.*  
**before** (*position*) ante, delante de; (*time*) antes de; *adv.* (*formerly, beforehand*) antes; *conj.* antes que  
**beg** (*request*) pedir (*i*), rogar (*ue*)  
**begin** empezar (*ie*); principiar  
**believe** creer  
**bell** campana *f.*; campanilla *f.*; bell tower campanario *m.*  
**belong** ser de, pertenecer  
**beloved** amado -a; querido -a  
**below** abajo  
**besiege** sitiar  
**best** mejor  
**bet** *see section 233, 2, c.*  
**betrotthed** novio -a *m. and f.*  
**better** mejor  
**between** entre  
**Bible** Biblia *f.*  
**bill** (*account*) cuenta *f.*; (*bank-note*) billete *m.*; bill of fare lista de comidas *f.*  
**bird** pájaro *m.*; ave *f.*  
**birthday** día de cumpleaños, cumpleaños *m.*  
**bite** morder (*ue*)  
**bitter** amargo -a  
**black** negro -a  
**blackboard** pizarra *f.*  
**blind** ciego -a  
**blow** (*cornet*) tocar; the wind blows hace (hay) viento  
**blue** azul  
**board** pensión *f.*  
**boarding-house** casa de huéspedes *f.*  
**boat** barco *m.*  
**bold** atrevido -a  
**Bolivian** boliviano -a  
**book** libro *m.*  
**bookkeeping** teneduría de libros *f.*  
**bookstore** librería *f.*  
**born**: be born nacer  
**borrow** pedir (tomar) prestado -a  
**bosom** seno *m.*  
**both** los dos, ambos; both . . . and así . . . como  
**box** caja *f.*  
**boy** muchacho *m.*; (*young boy*) niño *m.*  
**brand** marca *f.*  
**brave** valiente  
**Brazilian** brasileño -a  
**bread** pan *m.*  
**breakfast** almuerzo *m.*; take (have) breakfast almorzar (*ue*)  
**breathe** respirar  
**bridge** puente *m.*

- brief** breve  
**bright** claro -a; (*of colors*) vivo -a  
**bring** traer; bring down bajar; bring up subir  
**broad** ancho -a  
**broken** roto -a  
**brook** arroyo *m.*  
**brother** hermano *m.*; brother-in-law cuñado *m.*  
**brown** moreno -a  
**brush** cepillo *m.*; *vb.* acepillar  
**build** construir  
**building** edificio *m.*; caserón *m.*  
**burn** quemar; *intr.* arder; burn up (*or down*) quemarse  
**burnish** bruñir  
**bushel** *use English word, w. accent*  
**business** negocio *m.* (*usually plural*)  
**busy** ocupado -a  
**but** pero, mas; (*after negative*) sino  
**butter** mantequilla *f.*  
**button** botón *m.*  
**buy** comprar  
**buyer** comprador *m.*  
**by** (*with passive verbs*) por, de; (*near*) junto á, cerca de, al lado de; by day de día; by my watch en mi reloj  
  
**calculation** cálculo *m.*  
**call** llamar  
**camel** camello *m.*  
**can** poder (*ue*); (*know how*) saber  
**candidate** candidato *m.*  
**candle** vela *f.*  
**cap** gorra *f.*  
**capital** capital *m.*, (*city*) *f.*; (*letter*) mayúscula *f.*  
**captain** capitán *m.*  
**car**: street car tranvía *m.*  
**card** tarjeta *f.*  
  
**care** cuidado *m.*  
**Carlist** carlista *m.*  
**carriage** coche *m.*  
**carry off** llevar, llevarse; arrastrar  
**cart** carro *m.*  
**case** caso *m.*; in case en caso que; (*pillow*) funda *f.*  
**cash** al contado  
**cash-drawer** caja de caudales *f.*  
**Castilian** castellano -a  
**cat** gato -a *m. and f.*  
**catalogue** catálogo *m.*  
**catch** coger; (*take*) tomar; catch cold coger un resfriado  
**cathedral** catedral *f.*  
**cattle** ganado *m.*  
**cause** causa *f.*; motivo *m.*  
**ceiling** techo *m.*  
**celebrate** celebrar  
**celebrated** célebre  
**celebration** fiesta *f.*  
**cent** centavo *m.*  
**center** centro *m.*  
**central** central  
**century** siglo *m.*  
**certain**: a certain cierto -a; un tal  
**chair** silla *f.*  
**change** cambiar; (*ideas*) variar de  
**charge** cobrar, llevar  
**Charles** Carlos *m.*  
**charming** encantador -ora  
**cheap** barato -a  
**child** niño -a *m. and f.*; children niños *m. pl.*; (*sons and daughters*) hijos *m. pl.*  
**childhood** niñez *f.*  
**choose** escoger  
**Christmas** Navidad *f.*; Christmas Eve Nochebuena *f.*  
**Christopher** Cristóbal  
**church** iglesia *f.*

- circular** circular  
**citizen** ciudadano *m.*  
**city** ciudad *f.*  
**civilized** civilizado -a  
**class** clase *f.*  
**clean** limpiar; *adj.* limpio -a  
**climb** subir  
**clock** reloj (de pared, de mesa); at six o'clock a las seis; what time is it qué hora es  
**close** cerrar (*ie*)  
**closed** cerrado -a  
**closet** alacena *f.*  
**cloth** tela *f.*; paño *m.*  
**clothes** ropa *f.*; vestidos *m.*  
**Co.** see company  
**coach** coche *m.*  
**coat** levita *f.*; (*boy's coat*) chaqueta *f.*; (*overcoat*) gabán; (*evening or dress coat*) frac *m.*  
**coffee** café *m.*  
**coin** moneda *f.*  
**cold** *adj.* frío -a; *noun* frío *m.*; (*illness*) resfriado *m.*; be cold tener frío; (*of the weather*) hacer frío  
**collar** cuello *m.*  
**collection** colección *f.*  
**colony** colonia *f.*  
**color** color *m.*  
**Columbus** Colón  
**comb** peine *m.*; *vb.* peinar  
**come** venir; comes viene; come in entrar; come out salir; come up subir; come back volver; come down bajar  
**comfortable** cómodo -a  
**command** mandar; mando *m.*  
**community** comunidad *f.*  
**company** compañía *f.*; Co. c.ía  
**comparable** comparable  
**complain** quejarse (de)
- completely** completamente  
**composition** composición *f.*  
**conceal** ocultar  
**concert** concierto *m.*  
**conclude** concluir  
**condition** estado *m.*  
**confess** confesar  
**confident**: be confident confiar (en)  
**conquer** vencer; conquistar  
**consent** consentir (*ie*) (en); consentimiento *m.*  
**consequently** por consiguiente  
**consist** constar (de)  
**constantly** cada vez  
**consul** cónsul *m.*  
**consumer** consumidor *m.*  
**contain** contener (*compound of tener*)  
**content**, contented, contento -a, satisfecho -a  
**continent** continente *m.*  
**continue** continuar  
**copy** copia *f.*; (*of a book*) ejemplar *m.*  
**cork** corcho *m.*  
**corner** rincón *m.*; (*of street*) esquina *f.*  
**cornet** corneta *f.*  
**correct** corregir (*i*)  
**correctly** correctamente  
**Corunna** la Coruña  
**cost** costar (*ue*)  
**cotton** algodón *m.*  
**count** contar (*ue*); count on contar con  
**counter** mostrador *m.*  
**countess** condesa *f.*  
**country** país *m.*; (*native land*) patria *f.*; (*as distinguished from the city*) campo *m.*; country house casa de campo  
**countryman** campesino *m.*  
**court** (*yard*) patio *m.*  
**cousin** primo -a *m. and f.*



- cover** cubrir, *p. p.* cubierto  
**cow** vaca *f.*  
**criminal** criminal  
**cross** atravesar (*ie*); pasar  
**cry** gritar, dar voces; (*weep*) llorar  
**Cuba** Cuba *f.*  
**Cuban** *adj.* cubano -a  
**cuff** puño *m.*  
**cup** taza *f.*; (*wine cup*) copa *f.*  
**cure** curar, sanar  
**currency** moneda *f.*  
**custom-house** aduana *f.*  
**cut** cortar  
**cutlery** cuchillería *f.*
- daily** diario -a, todos los días, cada día  
**dance** bailar  
**danger** peligro *m.*  
**dangerous** peligroso -a  
**dare** atreverse (a)  
**dark** o(b)scuro -a  
**darkness** o(b)scuridad *f.*  
**date** fecha *f.*; *vb.* fechar  
**daughter** hija *f.*  
**dawn** amanecer  
**day** día *m.*; good day buenos días  
**dead** muerto -a  
**deaf** sordo -a  
**deal**: a great deal of mucho -a; *vb.* tratar  
**dear** (*beloved*) querido -a, caro -a; (*expensive*) caro -a, costoso -a; dear Sir muy Señor mío; dear Madam muy Señora mía  
**death** muerte *f.*  
**debt** deuda *f.*  
**debtor** deudor *m.*  
**December** diciembre *m.*  
**decide** determinar  
**dedicate** dedicar
- deed** hecho *m.*  
**deep** profundo -a, hondo -a  
**defend** defender (*ie*)  
**defense** defensa *f.*  
**delight**: be delighted pasmarse  
**deliver** entregar  
**demand** exigir  
**denominator** denominador *m.*  
**denote** denotar  
**dense** denso -a  
**depart** partir  
**departure** salida *f.*  
**deposit** depositar  
**desire** desear; deseo *m.*  
**despair** desesperarse  
**destroy** destruir  
**develop** (*photo.*) revelar  
**developer** revelador  
**diameter** diámetro *m.*  
**diamond** brillante *m.*  
**dictionary** diccionario *m.*  
**die** morir (*ue*), *p. p.* muerto  
**different** distinto -a  
**difficult** difícil  
**diligence** diligencia *f.*  
**dine** comer  
**dining-room** comedor *m.*  
**dinner** comida *f.*  
**dirty** sucio -a  
**discharge** despedir (*i*)  
**discount** descuento *m.*  
**discover** descubrir  
**discovery** descubrimiento *m.*  
**discuss** discutir; tratar  
**displease** dar un disgusto a  
**dispute** disputa *f.*  
**distinguish** distinguir  
**distribute** distribuir; (*mail*) repartir  
**divide** dividir  
**do** hacer

- dog** perro *m.*  
**dollar** (*in Spain*) duro *m.*, (*in America*) peso *m.*  
**domestic** (*of a country*) nacional  
**door** puerta *f.*  
**dose** dosis *f.*  
**doubt** duda *f.*; *vb.* dudar  
**down** abajo  
**dozen** docena *f.*  
**draft** (*air*) corriente *f.*; (*money*) giro *m.*  
**draw** sacar  
**drawer** cajón *m.*; **little drawer** cajoncita *f.*  
**drawing** dibujo *m.*  
**dream** soñar (*ue*) (*con*); sueño *m.*  
**dress** vestir (*i*); *intr.* vestirse (*i*)  
**drink** beber  
**driver** cochero *m.*  
**drop** (*let go of*) soltar (*ue*); (*let fall*) dejar caer  
**drown** ahogarse  
**dry** secar; (*wipe*) enjugar  
**during** durante  
**dust** polvo *m.*  
**duty** deber *m.*
- each** cada; **each other** el uno (al) otro  
**eagle** águila *f.*  
**ear** oreja *f.*; (*hearing*) oído *m.*  
**early** temprano -a; pronto -a  
**earn** ganar  
**earth** tierra *f.*  
**east** este *m.*  
**easy** fácil  
**eat** comer  
**education** instrucción *f.*  
**egg** huevo *m.*  
**either** . . . or o . . . o; **not** . . . **either** tampoco  
**elbow** codo *m.*
- electric** eléctrico -a  
**elevated** elevado -a  
**elevation** elevación *f.*  
**elevator** ascensor *m.*  
**else**: **something else** otra cosa  
**embrace** abrazar  
**emerald** esmeralda *f.*  
**emotion** emoción *f.*  
**emperor** emperador *m.*  
**employ** emplear  
**employee** empleado -a *m. and f.*  
**end** extremidad *f.*; *extremo m.*; *fin m.*  
**ending** terminación *f.*  
**enemy** enemigo -a *m. and f.*  
**England** Inglaterra *f.*  
**English** inglés -esa  
**engrave** grabar  
**engraving** estampa *f.*  
**enough** bastante, suficiente  
**enter** entrar (*en*)  
**envelope** sobre *m.*  
**equal** igual; *vb.* valer, equivaler (*a*)  
**establish** establecer  
**estate** finca *f.*  
**Europe** Europa *f.*  
**even** *adv.* aun; **even if** aunque  
**evening** tarde *f.*; **good evening** buenas noches  
**ever** (*always*) siempre; (*in a question*) jamás, alguna vez; (*with pronouns or adverbs*) *see section 197*; **not ever** no . . . nunca, no . . . jamás  
**every (one)** todo -a; cada (uno -a);  
**every night** todas las noches;  
**every time** cada vez  
**everybody** todos (*pl.*), todo el mundo *m.*  
**evident**: **be evident** consta (*impersonal*)  
**exchange** cambio *m.*; *vb.* cambiar

- exercise** ejercicio *m.*  
**expect** esperar  
**expensive** costoso -a; caro -a  
**express** expreso *m.*  
**extend** extender (*ie*)  
**extraordinary** extraordinario -a  
**extreme** extremado -a  
**eye** ojo *m.*  
  
**face** cara *f.*; *vb.* estar frente a  
**fact** *see* section 206, 2; hecho *m.*  
**factory** fábrica *f.*  
**fair** feria *f.*  
**faithful** fiel  
**fall** caer; **fall down** caerse; (*of prices*)  
sufrir una baja  
**false** falso -a  
**family** familia *f.*  
**far** lejos; **as far as** hasta  
**fashion** moda *f.*  
**fast** (*firm*) firme, seguro -a; (*swift*)  
veloz, ligero -a; **be fast** (*as a watch*)  
adelantar, estar adelantado  
**fast adv.** (*firmly*) fuertemente, firme-  
mente; (*rapidly*) aprisa, de prisa  
**fatal** fatal  
**father** padre *m.*; papá *m.*  
**fault** culpa *f.*  
**favor** favor *m.*; *vb.* favorecer; (*a*  
*letter*) grata, apreciable, estimada  
**fear** temer  
**feather** pluma *f.*  
**February** febrero *m.*  
**federal** federal  
**feel** sentir (*ie*); *intr.* sentirse  
**feeling** sentimiento *m.*  
**fellow** ése  
**Ferdinand** Fernando  
**fever** fiebre *f.*  
**few, a few, pocos** -as; unos (-as)  
cuantos (-as)
- finally** al fin  
**find** hallar; (*meet*) encontrar (*ue*)  
**fine** bueno -a  
**finger** dedo *m.*  
**finger-nail** uña (de dedo) *f.*  
**finish** acabar; concluir  
**fire** (*in the abstract*) fuego *m.*; (*burn-*  
*ing wood or coal*) lumbre *f.*; (*con-*  
*flagration*) incendio *m.*; (*to fire a*  
*gun*) disparar  
**firm** casa *f.*; (*firm name*) firma *f.*;  
*adj.* firme  
**first** primer(o) -a; (*in compound or*  
*dinals*) primo -a  
**fisherman** pescador *m.*  
**fist** puño *m.*  
**fit** sentar (*ie*), caer, estar  
**fix** fijar  
**flag** bandera *f.*  
**fleet** escuadra *f.*  
**floor** suelo *m.*; (*story*) piso *m.*  
**flower** flor *f.*  
**fly** volar (*ue*)  
**fog** neblina *f.*; niebla *f.*  
**foggy: it is foggy** hay neblina  
**folks** *see* section 98, c.  
**follow** seguir (*i*)  
**food** alimento *m.*  
**foolish** bobo -a; tonto -a  
**foolishness** tontería *f.*  
**foot** pie *m.*; **on foot** a pie  
**for** (*for the sake of, in exchange for*)  
por; (*destination*) para  
**forbid** prohibir  
**forehead** frente *f.*  
**foreign** extranjero -a; **foreign coun-**  
**try** el extranjero  
**forest** monte *m.*; bosque *m.*; selva *f.*  
**forget** olvidar (*often used as imper-*  
*sonal reflexive, see* section 269, 4)  
**fork** tenedor *m.*

- formidable** formidable  
**fortnight** quince días  
**found** fundar  
**fraction** quebrado *m.*  
**fragrant** oloroso -a, fragrante  
**France** Francia *f.*  
**Frances** Francisca *f.*  
**French** francés -esa  
**fresh** fresco -a  
**Friday** viernes *m.*  
**fried** frito -a  
**friend** amigo -a *m. and f.*  
**frighten** espantar, asustar; **be frightened** asustarse  
**from** de, desde; **from . . . to de . . .**  
 a, desde . . . hasta  
**front**: in front of delante de  
**fruit** fruta *f.*  
**fry** freír, *p. p.* frito  
**fur** piel *f.*  
**furniture** muebles *m. pl.*  
**further** más allá  
  
**game** partida *f.*  
**garden** jardín *m.*  
**garment** vestido *m.*  
**gasoline** gasolina *f.*  
**generally** generalmente  
**genius** genio *m.*  
**gentleman** señor *m.*; caballero *m.*  
**geography** geografía *f.*  
**George** Jorge *m.*  
**German** alemán -ana  
**get** (*obtain*) conseguir (*i*), obtener;  
 (*from*) sacar; (*go after*) buscar;  
 (*supply*) proporcionar, facilitar;  
 (*become*) hacerse, ponerse; **get up**  
 levantarse; **get in** subir a; **get out**  
 bajar; salir  
**gift** regalo *m.*  
**girl** muchacha *f.*; niña *f.*  
  
**give** dar  
**glad** alegre, contento -a; **I am glad**  
 (to) me alegre (de); tengo mucho  
 gusto (placer) (en); lo celebro  
 mucho  
**gladly** de buena gana  
**glance** mirada *f.*  
**glass** vaso *m.*  
**glove** guante *m.*  
**go** ir; (*of a machine*) andar; **go away**  
 marcharse, partir; **go out** salir; **go**  
 up subir; **go into** entrar (en); **go**  
 to bed acostarse (*we*); **go on** ocurrir  
**God** Dios *m.*  
**gold** oro *m.*  
**good** bueno -a; **be good for nothing**  
 no valer nada, no servir para nada  
**good-by** adiós; **good-by for a while**  
 hasta luego; **good-by until we see**  
 each other again hasta la vista;  
**say good-by** despedirse (*i*)  
**goodness** bondad *f.*; (lo) bueno *n.*  
**goods** géneros, mercancías, efectos  
 (*all may be used in the singular*)  
**Gothic** godo -a  
**govern** gobernar (*ie*)  
**governor** gobernador *m.*; (*Moorish*)  
 alcaide *m.*  
**grammar** gramática *f.*  
**granddaughter** nieta *f.*  
**grandfather** abuelo *m.*  
**grandmother** abuela *f.*  
**grandparents** abuelos *m. pl.*  
**grandson** nieto *m.*  
**grant** otorgar, conceder  
**great** gran(de); **a great deal** mucho-a  
**greatly** infinito  
**greatness** grandeza *f.*  
**Greece** Grecia *f.*  
**Greek** griego -a  
**green** verde

- greet** saludar  
**ground** suelo *m.*  
**grow** crecer; **grow dark** oscurecer  
**guide** guía *m.* (*person*), *f.* (*book or thing*)  
**gun** escopeta *f.*
- hair** pelo *m.*  
**half** mitad *f.*; *adj.* medio -a; **a half or half** a medio -a  
**hand** mano *f.*; *vb.* entregar; **come to hand** venir a (mis) manos  
**handful** puñado *m.*  
**handkerchief** pañuelo *m.*  
**handsome** hermoso -a; guapo -a  
**happen** acontecer, suceder  
**happy** feliz  
**harbor** puerto *m.*  
**hard** duro -a; (*difficult*) difícil; *adv.* diligentemente, mucho  
**harm** mal *m.*; (*damage*) daño *m.*  
**hasten** apresurarse  
**hat** sombrero *m.*  
**hate** odiar, aborrecer  
**Havana** la Habana  
**have** *aux.* haber; (*possess, hold*) tener; **have to** tener que, haber de  
**he** él; **he who** el que, quien  
**head** cabeza *f.*  
**health** salud *f.*; **be in good (better) health** estar bien (mejor) de salud  
**healthful** saludable  
**healthy** sano -a  
**heap** montón -a  
**hear** oír, sentir (*ie*)  
**heart** corazón *m.*; **by heart** de memoria  
**heat** calor *m.*  
**heaven** cielo *m.*  
**heir** heredero *m.*  
**help** ayudar; socorrer
- Henry Enrique** *m.*  
**here** aquí, acá  
**hereupon** en esto  
**hesitate** vacilar, dudar  
**hidden** oculto -a  
**hide** ocultar, esconder  
**high** alto -a; elevado -a  
**highway** carretera *f.*  
**him** él, le, lo  
**his** su, sus; suyo, *etc.*  
**historian** historiador *m.*  
**history** historia *f.*  
**hoarse** ronco -a; **get hoarse** enronquecer  
**holiday** fiesta *f.*  
**Hollander** holandés -esa  
**holy** santo -a  
**home** (*to one's home*) a casa; **at home** en casa  
**honor** honra *f.*  
**hope** esperar; esperanza *f.*  
**horrible** horrible  
**horse** caballo *m.*  
**horseback**: **on horseback** a caballo  
**hospital** hospital *m.*  
**hot** caliente  
**hotel** hotel *m.*; fonda *f.*  
**hour** hora *f.*  
**house** casa *f.*  
**how** cómo; **how much (many)** cuánto -a (-os, -as)  
**huckster** revendedor *m.*  
**humor** humor *m.*  
**hundred** ciento  
**hunger** hambre *f.*  
**hungry** hambriento -a; **be hungry** tener hambre  
**hunt** buscar  
**hurriedly** con prisa  
**hurry** prisa *f.*; **be in a hurry** tener prisa  
**husband** esposo *m.*; marido *m.*

- ice** hielo *m.*  
**idea** ocurrencia *f.*; idea *f.*  
**if** si  
**ignorant** ignorante  
**ill** enfermo -a, malo -a; *adv.* mal  
**illness** enfermedad *f.*  
**illuminate** alumbrar  
**imagine** imaginar; figurarse  
**immediately** en seguida  
**imperfect** imperfecto -a  
**importance** importancia *f.*  
**important** importante  
**impure** impuro -a  
**in** en; (*within*) dentro de; (*after a superlative*) de  
**incalculable** incalculable  
**incline** inclinar  
**inclined** inclinado -a  
**inclose** encerrar (*ie*)  
**independence** independencia *f.*  
**independent** independiente  
**India** la India  
**Indian** indio -a  
**indicative** indicativo *m.*  
**indispensable** indispensable  
**inexplicable** inexplicable  
**infantry** infantería *f.*  
**influence** influencia *f.*  
**inform** participar, avisar  
**inherit** heredar  
**ink** tinta *f.*  
**innkeeper** posadero *m.*; hostelero *m.*  
**inquire** preguntar (por)  
**instant** instante *m.*; (*of the present month*) del corriente, del presente  
**instead of** en lugar de; en vez de  
**instruction** instrucción *f.*  
**insult** insultar  
**insurance** seguros *m.*  
**insurrection** insurrección *f.*  
**intend** pensar (*ie*), tener la intención de  
**intended** destinado -a  
**interest** interés *m.*; *vb.* interesar  
**interesting** interesante  
**introduce** presentar  
**invention** invención *f.*  
**invest** invertir (*i*)  
**invite** convidar, invitar  
**iron** hierro *m.*  
**Isabella** Isabel *f.*  
**island** isla *f.*  
**it** él, ella, ello, lo, la  
**Italian** italiano -a  
**Jane** Juana *f.*  
**January** enero *m.*  
**jewel** alhaja *f.*  
**John** Juan *m.*  
**journey** viaje *m.*  
**judge** juez *m.*  
**July** julio *m.*  
**jump** saltar  
**June** junio *m.*  
**just** *adv.* justamente, exactamente;  
**to have just** acabar de  
**keen** vivo -a  
**keep** guardar  
**key** llave *f.*  
**kilo** kilo, kilogramo *m.*  
**kilometer** kilómetro *m.*  
**kind** clase *f.*; especie *f.*; *adj.* bondadoso -a; apreciable or atenta (carta); **be kind enough** tener la bondad (de); servirse (*i*)  
**kindness** bondad *f.*  
**king** rey *m.*  
**kingdom** reino *m.*  
**kiss** besar  
**kitchen** cocina *f.*

- knife** cuchillo *m.*; (*clasp-knife*) navaja *f.*; (*pen-knife*) cortaplumas *m.*  
**knock** llamar, tocar  
**know** (*be acquainted with*) conocer; (*be aware of, know how, be able*) saber; I know conozco *or* sé; let them know conozcan *or* sepan  
  
**lack** faltar  
**lady** señora *f.*  
**lamp** lámpara *f.*  
**land** terreno *m.*; *pl.* tierras *f.*  
**language** idioma *m.*; (*style of language*) lenguaje *m.*  
**large** gran(*de*). See section 46, 2.  
**last** último -a, postrer(o) -a; last week la semana pasada; *vb.* durar  
**late** tarde  
**Latin** latín *m.* (*the language*); *adj.* latino -a  
**laugh** reír; laugh at reírse *de*  
**laundress** lavandera *f.*  
**law** ley *f.*  
**lawyer** abogado *m.*  
**lazy** perezoso -a; haragán -ana  
**leader** jefe *m.*  
**leaf** hoja *f.*  
**leap year** año bisiesto *m.*  
**learn** aprender (*a*); (*news*) saber  
**least** menos; at least a (*por*) lo menos  
**leave** dejar, abandonar; (*depart*) partir; (*go out*) salir; take leave despedirse (*i*)  
**left** izquierdo -a; on the left a la izquierda  
**leg** pierna *f.*  
**lend** prestar  
**length** longitud *f.*; largo *m.*  
**less** menos  
**lesson** lección *f.*  
  
**let** (*leave*) dejar; (*permit*) permitir; (*rent*) alquilar, arrendar (*ie*); (*to express will*) present subj. with *que or without*  
**letter** carta *f.*; (*of alphabet*) letra *f.*  
**letter-carrier** cartero *m.*  
**level** nivel *m.*  
**liberal** liberal  
**liberty** libertad *f.*; take the liberty permitirse  
**library** biblioteca *f.*  
**lie** mentir (*ie*)  
**lie down** acostarse (*ue*)  
**lieutenant** teniente *m.*  
**life** vida *f.*  
**light** luz *f.*; *vb.* alumbrar, iluminar; (*kindle*) encender (*ie*)  
**lighten** relampaguear  
**like** querer (*a*), gustar (*de*); I like me gusta (*lit.* it pleases me); *adv.* como  
**likely** see section 266  
**line** línea *f.*; renglón *m.*  
**listen** escuchar; (*exclamation*) ¡oye!  
**little** poco -a; (*small*) pequeño -a; chico -a  
**live** vivir  
**living** vida *f.*  
**lock** cerrar a llave, echar llave a  
**locked** cerrado -a a llave  
**London** Londres *m.*  
**long** largo -a; a long time mucho tiempo; see tardar; as long as mientras, mientras que  
**look** (*at*) mirar; (*appear*) parecer; look for buscar; look like parecerse a  
**lose** perder (*ie*)  
**loud** alto -a  
**love** amar; querer (*a*)  
**lovely** precioso -a

- low** bajo -a  
**lower** inferior  
**luck** suerte *f.*  
**lucky** dichoso -a
- machine** máquina *f.*  
**madam** señora *f.*  
**magazine** revista *f.*  
**mail** correo *m.*; *vb.* echar al correo  
**male** varón *m.*; (*of animals*) macho  
**man** hombre *m.*; *his men* los suyos  
**mania** manía *f.*  
**manner** manera *f.*; modo *m.*  
**manufacture** fabricar  
**many** muchos -as  
**march** marchar  
**March** marzo *m.*  
**market** mercado *m.*  
**marry** casarse (*con*)  
**Mary** María *f.*  
**master** amo *m.*  
**match** fósforo *m.*; *vb.* caer bien  
*con*  
**matter** importar  
**may** poder; tener permiso (*de*)  
**May** mayo *m.*  
**meal** comida *f.*  
**mean** (*to intend*) pensar (*ie*); (*to signify*) significar, querer decir  
**measure** medir (*i*); medida *f.*  
**meat** carne *f.*  
**medicine** (*science of*) medicina *f.*; (*drug*) medicamento *m.*  
**Mediterranean** mediterráneo  
**meet** encontrar (*ue*); encontrarse  
*con*  
**mend** remendar (*ie*), componer; recomponer  
**merchandise** mercancías *f.*  
**merchant** comerciante *m.*  
**message** recado *m.*
- meter** metro *m.*  
**metric** métrico -a  
**Mexican** mejicano -a  
**Mexico** Méjico *m.*  
**middle** medio -a  
**mile** milla *f.*  
**military** militarío -a  
**milk** leche *f.*  
**million** millón *m.*  
**mind** espíritu *f.*  
**mine** mío; el mío *etc.*; (*minerals*) mina *f.*  
**minimum** mínimo *m.*  
**minute** minuto *m.*  
**mirror** espejo *m.*  
**miser** avariento *m.*  
**Miss** (la) señorita; (*before given names*) doña  
**mistake** error *m.*; falta *f.*; be mistaken, make a mistake, equivocarse  
**moderate** módico -a  
**moment** momento *m.*  
**Monday** lunes *m.*  
**money** dinero *m.*  
**month** mes *m.*  
**moon** luna *f.*  
**Moorish** moro -a  
**more** más  
**moreover** además  
**morning** mañana *f.*; to-morrow morning mañana por la mañana; good morning buenos días  
**most** más; (*very*) muy  
**mother** madre *f.*  
**mountain** montaña *f.*  
**mouth** boca *f.*  
**move** moverse (*ue*)  
**Mr.** (el) señor; (*before given names*) don  
**Mrs.** (la) señora; (*before given names*) doña



- much** mucho -a; **very much** muchísimo -a; **so (as) much as** tanto -a . . . como; **too much** demasiado
- mud** lodo *m.*; ( *mire, slime*) fango *m.*
- mule** mulo -a *m. and f. (the fem. form is generally used)*
- music** música *f.*
- must** tener que, haber de; (*moral obligation*) deber; (*conjecture*) deber de
- mustache** bigotes *m. pl.*
- mutton** carnero *m.*
- my** mi, mis; mío -a (-os, -as)
- nail** clavo *m.*; **finger nail** uña (de dedo) *f.*
- name** nombre *m.*; (*surname*) apellido *m.*; **my name** is me llamo
- napkin** servilleta *f.*
- narrow** estrecho -a
- nation** nación *f.*
- national** nacional
- native** natural *m. and f.*
- nature** naturaleza *f.*
- nave** nave *f.*
- near** cerca de, junto a
- nearly** casi
- necessary** necesario -a; **be necessary** ser necesario, ser preciso, ser menester
- neck** cuello *m.*; pescuezo *m.*
- necktie** corbata *f.*
- need** necesidad *f.*; *vb.* necesitar; hacer falta
- neglect** dejar de
- neighbor** vecino -a *m. and f.*
- nephew** sobrino *m.*
- never** nunca, jamás
- new** nuevo -a
- newcomer** recién venido -a
- news** noticia *f.*; noticias *f. pl.*; qué . . . de nuevo
- newspaper** periódico *m.*
- next** próximo -a, siguiente; **next month** el próximo mes, el mes que viene (entra); **the next page** la página siguiente
- niece** sobrina *f.*
- night** noche *f.*; **last night** anoche; **by night** de noche
- no** no
- no one, none, ningun(o) -a**
- nobody** nadie
- noise** ruido *m.*
- nominally** nominalmente
- nor** ni
- north** norte *m.*; *adj.* norte
- North American** norte-americano -a
- nose** nariz *f.*
- not** no; **not . . . either** ni . . . tampoco
- notary** escribano *m.*
- note** notar; **be noted** notarse
- nothing** nada
- November** noviembre *m.*
- now** ahora
- number** número *m.*; (*numeral*) guarrismo *m.*
- numeration** numeración *f.*
- nut** nuez *f.*
- oblige** obligar
- obliging** servicial
- obtain** obtener
- occupy** ocupar
- occur** ocurrir
- o'clock** *fem. def. art.*; **at six o'clock** a las seis; *see section 78*
- October** octubre *m.*
- of** de; (*with verb of separation*)
- offer** ofrecer; oferta *f.*
- office** despacho *m.*; (*position*) cargo

- often muchas veces; a menudo  
oil aceite *m.*  
old viejo -a, anciano -a; (*ancient*) antiguo -a; older (*of persons*) mayor; be years old tener años  
on en; (*on top of*) sobre, encima de; on time a tiempo  
once una vez; at once en seguida  
one un(o) -a; one or another uno (-a) u otro (-a), alguno (-a) que otro (-a); that one aquel *etc.*  
only único -a; *adv.* sólo; no . . . más que; no . . . sino  
open abrir, *p. p.* abierto; open air *see* air  
opinion opinión *f.*  
opportunity oportunidad *f.*  
opposite opuesto, contrario; *adv.* en frente; *prep.* frente a  
or o; u (*bef. o- or ho-*); not . . . or no . . . ni  
orange naranja *f.*  
orator orador *m.*  
order (*command*) orden *f.*; (*commercial*) pedido *m.*; *vb.* pedir (*i*), mandar; in order to para; in order that para que  
origin origen *m.*  
original original  
other (*another*), otro -a; (*the rest*) demás  
ought deber  
our nuestro -a  
ours nuestro; el nuestro *etc.*  
out fuera; (*outside*) afuera; go out salir  
outdoors afuera, fuera de casa  
over (*upon*) sobre; (*above*) encima de; (*to the other side of*) al otro lado de; over there por allí  
overcoat sobretodo *m.*; abrigo *m.*; gabán *m.*  
owe deber  
own propio -a; mismo -a  
owner dueño -a *m. and f.*  
ox buey *m.*  
pace paso *m.*  
pack envasar, empaquetar  
package paquete *m.*  
page página *f.*  
painting cuadro *m.*  
pale pálido -a  
Panama el Panamá  
paper papel *m.*; (*newspaper*) periódico *m.*  
pardon perdón *m.*; *vb.* perdonar  
parents padres *m. pl.*  
Paris París  
park parque *m.*  
parlor sala *f.*  
part parte *f.*; *vb.* separarse  
partner socio *m.*  
party tertulia *f.*; (*political*) partido *m.*  
pass pasar  
past *adj.* pasado -a; at half past one o'clock a la una y media  
past (lo) pasado *n.*  
patience: get out of patience desesperarse  
Paul Pablo *m.*  
pay pagar; (*pay a visit*) hacer  
payment pago *m.*  
peace paz *f.*  
pearl perla *f.*  
pen pluma *f.*  
pencil lápiz *m.*  
peninsula península *f.*  
penknife cortaplumas *m.*  
peon peón *m.*  
people pueblo *m.*; (*persons*) gente *f.*  
pepper pimienta *f.*  
per cent por ciento

- perfect** perfecto -a  
**performance** representación *f.*  
**perhaps** tal vez, quizás  
**permission** permiso *m.* (de)  
**permit** permitir  
**person** persona *f.*  
**personage** personaje *m.*  
**personal** personal  
**Peru** el Perú *m.*  
**Peter** Pedro *m.*  
**Philip** Felipe *m.*  
**Philippines** Filipinas *f. pl.*; in the  
 Philippines en Filipinas  
**philosophy** filosofía *f.*  
**Phœnicians** fenicios *m. pl.*  
**photographic** fotográfico -a  
**physician** médico *m.*  
**piano** piano *m.*  
**pick up** recoger  
**picture** cuadro *m.*; (*portrait*) re-  
 trato *m.*  
**piece** pedazo *m.*; (*of music, etc.*)  
 pieza *f.*; (*of furniture*) mueble *m.*;  
 (*coin*) moneda *f.*, pieza *f.*  
**pillar** pilar *m.*  
**pillow** almohada *f.*  
**pink** clavel *m.*  
**pity** piedad *f.*; misericordia *f.*; lásti-  
 ma *f.*; *It is a pity* es lástima  
**place** sitio *m.*; plaza *f.*; lugar *m.*;  
*vb.* colocar, poner  
**plain** vega *f.*  
**plan** proyecto *m.*  
**plate** plato *m.*; (*photographic*) placa *f.*  
**play** jugar (*ue*) (a); (*on a musical*  
*instrument*) tocar  
**please** gustar, agradar; (*be kind*  
*enough*) hágame Vd. el favor (de),  
 tenga Vd. la bondad (de)  
**pleasure** gusto *m.*; placer *m.*  
**plural** plural *m.*
- plus** más  
**P. M.** (*till dark*) de la tarde; (*after*  
*dark*) de la noche  
**pocket** bolsillo *m.*  
**poem** poesía *f.*  
**point** punto *m.*  
**pole** (*of the earth*) polo *m.*; north  
 pole polo norte  
**polite** cortés  
**political** político -a  
**politician** político *m.*  
**pond** estanque *m.*  
**poor** pobre  
**population** población *f.*  
**pork** carne de cerdo *m.*  
**portable** portátil  
**porter** portero *m.*  
**position** colocación *f.*; puesto *m.*  
**possess** poseer  
**possibility** posibilidad *f.*  
**possible** posible  
**post** (*letters*) echar al correo  
**postman** cartero *m.*  
**post-office** correo *m.*; casa (admi-  
 nistración) de correos *f.*  
**potato** patata *f.*; (*in most parts of*  
*Spanish America*) papa *f.*  
**pound** libra *f.*  
**pour** echar  
**practical** positivo -a  
**praise** alabar  
**pray** rezar; orar  
**prefer** preferir (*ie*)  
**presence** presencia *f.*  
**present** regalo *m.*; presente *m.*; *vb.*  
 presentar; present with regalar;  
 be present asistir (a); at present  
 al presente  
**president** presidente *m.*  
**press** prensa *f.*  
**pretty** bonito -a; lindo -a

- prevent** impedir (*i*)  
**price** precio *m.*  
**priest** cura *m.*  
**principal** principal  
**print** imprimir, *p.p.* impreso  
**prisoner** prisionero *m.*; cautivo *m.*  
**prize** premio *m.*  
**probability** probabilidad *f.*  
**probably** probablemente; *see section*  
 266  
**produce** producir  
**production** elaboración *f.*; producción *f.*  
**profound** profundo -a  
**project** proyecto *m.*  
**promise** prometer  
**propose** proponer  
**proprietor** dueño *m.*  
**protect** proteger  
**prove** probar (*ue*)  
**provided that** con tal que  
**province** provincia *f.*  
**public** público *m.*  
**publish** publicar; **be published** publicarse, salir a luz  
**punish** castigar  
**pupil** discípulo -a *m. and f.*  
**purchase** compra *f.*; *vb.* comprar, adquirir  
**pure** puro -a  
**purse** bolsa *f.*; bolsillo *m.*  
**push** empujar  
**put** poner; **put out** (*a fire or light*) apagar; **put in** meter; **put back** reponer; **put on** poner  
  
**quality** calidad *f.*  
**quarter** cuarto *m.*; **at a quarter past one o'clock** a la una y cuarto  
**question** pregunta *f.*; (*discussion*) cuestión *f.*  
  
**rag** trapo *m.*  
**rail** (*railway*) ferrocarril *m.*  
**rain** llover (*ue*); lluvia *f.*  
**raise** levantar  
**rank** orden *f.*  
**rare** raro -a  
**rascal** bribón *m.*  
**reach** alcanzar; (*touch*) tocar; (*extend*) tender (*ie*), extender (*ie*); (*arrive at*) llegar a  
**read** leer  
**ready** listo -a  
**realm** reino *m.*  
**reason** razón *f.*  
**recall** recordar (*ue*)  
**receipt** recibo *m.*  
**receive** recibir  
**recently** recientemente, recién  
**recognize** conocer  
**recommend** recomendar (*ie*)  
**red** rojo -a, colorado -a, encarnado -a  
**refrigerating** = to make ice  
**refuse** negarse (*ie*)  
**regard**: in regard to referente á  
**regards** recuerdos *m. pl.*  
**regiment** regimiento *m.*  
**register** certificar  
**regret** sentir (*ie*)  
**relate** contar (*ue*); referir (*ie*)  
**relative** pariente *m.*  
**religious** religioso -a  
**remain** quedar, quedarse; **restar**  
**remember** acordarse (*ue*) (de); recordarse (*ue*)  
**reminder** recuerdo *m.*  
**remit** remitir  
**rent** alquilar  
**repeat** repetir (*i*)  
**reply** contestar  
**republic** república *f.*  
**resemble** parecerse (*a*)

- reserve** reservar  
**reside** vivir, tener su casa  
**residence** residencia *f.*  
**respect** estimación *f.*; respeto *m.*  
**respectable** respetable, estimable  
**rest** descansar; (*support*) apoyar; descanso *m.*  
**restaurant** fonda *f.*  
**retinue** comitiva *f.*  
**return** volver (*ue*), regresar; (*give back*) devolver (*ue*); (*interest*) devengar; (*of mail, steamer, etc.*) vuelta *f.*  
**reveal** revelar  
**review** revista *f.*  
**ribbon** cinta *f.*  
**rich** rico -a  
**ride** ir en coche, tranvía, *etc.*; caminar; (*horse*) montar a caballo  
**right** justo -a; (*as compared to left*) derecho -a; on the right a la derecha; be right tener razón  
**ring** tocar (*person*); sonar (*ue*) (*thing*)  
**ring** sortija *f.*; anillo *m.*  
**ripe** maduro -a  
**rise** levantarse; (*of sun, moon, etc.*) salir; (*of prices*) alzar  
**rob** robar  
**roll** rodar (*ue*)  
**Roman** romano -a  
**Rome** Roma *f.*  
**roof** techado *m.*  
**room** cuarto *m.*; habitación *f.*; bedroom alcoba *f.*; bathroom cuarto de baño *m.*; classroom sala de clase *f.*; dining-room comedor *m.*; state-room camarote *m.*; (*space*) lugar *m.*, espacio *m.*  
**rose** rosa *f.*  
**run** correr; run away huir  
**Russian** ruso -a *m. and f.*  
**sad** triste  
**safe** seguro -a  
**said**: he said dijo  
**sailor** marinero *m.*  
**saint** san(to) -a *m. and f.*; saint's day día del santo *m.*, días *m. pl.*  
**salary** sueldo *m.*  
**sale** venta *f.*; be for sale venderse  
**salt** sal *f.*  
**same** mismo -a  
**satisfied** contento -a; be satisfied quedar contento  
**Saturday** sábado *m.*  
**save** salvar  
**say** decir  
**scandalous** scandaloso -a  
**scarcely** apenas  
**school** escuela *f.*; (*high*) colegio *m.*  
**scold** reñir (*i*)  
**scratch** lacerar  
**sea** mar *m.*  
**seam** costura *f.*; (*in metal*) junta *f.*  
**search** registrar  
**season** estación *f.*  
**seat** asiento *m.*; be seated estar sentado  
**second** segundo *m.*  
**secret** secreto *m.*  
**secure** seguro -a  
**see** ver  
**seed** semilla *f.*  
**seek** buscar  
**seem** parecer, figurarse  
**select** escoger  
**self** mismo -a  
**sell** vender  
**senator** senador *m.*

- send** enviar, mandar  
**sense** sentido *m.*  
**sentence** frase *f.*  
**September** se(p)tiembre *m.*  
**serious** serio -a; (*dangerous*) grave, peligroso -a  
**servant** criado -a *m. and f.*  
**serve** servir (*i*); **serve as** servir de  
**service** servicio *m.*; **at your service** para servir a Vd.  
**set** sentar (*ie*); (*of the sun, moon, etc.*) ponerse; (*set the table etc.*) poner  
**several** varios -as  
**severe** severo -a.  
**Seville** Sevilla *f.*  
**sew** coser  
**sexton** sacristán *m.*  
**shadow** sombra *f.*  
**shake** (*hands*) estrecharse  
**share** (*of stock*) acción *f.*  
**sharp** recio -a  
**shave** afeitarse, rasurar; *intr.* afeitarse, rasurarse  
**sheep** oveja *f.*; carnero *m.*  
**sheet** sábana *f.*  
**shine** lucir, brillar; **the sun shines** hace (hay) sol  
**shipment** envío *m.*  
**shirt** camisa *f.*  
**shoe** zapato *m.*  
**shoot** disparar  
**short** corto -a; **a short while (time)** ago poco tiempo ha  
**should** (*ought to*) deber  
**shout** gritar; grito *m.*  
**show** enseñar; (*point out*) indicar; mostrar; representación *f.*  
**shut** cerrar (*ie*); *adj.* cerrado -a  
**Sicily** Sicilia *f.*  
**sick** enfermo -a; **be sick** estar malo  
**side** lado *m.*  
**sign** firmar; (*advertising*) letrado *m.*  
**signal** señal *f.*  
**silk** seda *f.*  
**silky** sedoso -a  
**sill** alféizar *m.*  
**silver** plata *f.*  
**similar** parecido -a  
**since** *prep.* desde; *conj.* desde que  
**sing** cantar  
**sir** señor *m.*; caballero *m.*  
**sister** hermana *f.*  
**sit down** sentarse (*ie*); **be sitting** estar sentado  
**situated** situado -a  
**situation** colocación *f.*  
**skate** patinar  
**skillful** experto -a, hábil  
**slate** pizarra *f.*  
**sleep** sueño *m.*; dormir (*ue*); **go to sleep, fall asleep, dormirse**  
**sleepy**: **be sleepy** tener sueño  
**slow** lento -a, atrasado -a; **be slow** (*as a watch*) atrasar, estar atrasado -a  
**slowly** despacio  
**small** pequeño -a, chico -a  
**smell** oler; **smell of** oler a; **it smells** huele  
**smoke** humear, echar humo; **smoke tobacco** fumar tabaco  
**snow** nevar (*ie*); nieve *f.*  
**so** tan; **so much (many)** tanto -a, tantos -as; **so... as** tan... como; **he said so** lo dijo; **and so** y por eso, y así  
**soap** jabón *m.*  
**soldier** soldado *m.*  
**solid** sólido -a

- some** alguno -a ; *pl.* algunos -as, unos -as  
**somebody, some one, alguien** ; alguien -a  
**something** algo, alguna cosa ; **something else** otra cosa  
**son** hijo *m.*  
**song** canción *f.*  
**soon** pronto, presto, temprano ; **as soon as** luego que, tan pronto como, en cuanto  
**sorry** afligido -a, triste ; **be sorry** sentir (*ie*)  
**soul** alma *f.*  
**sound** sonido *m.*  
**soup** sopa *f.*  
**south** sur *m.*  
**South America** la América del Sur  
**Spain** España *f.*  
**Spaniard** español -ola *m. and f.*  
**Spanish** español -ola ; (*the Spanish language*) el castellano, el español  
**speak** hablar  
**special** especial  
**spectacles** quevedos *m.*  
**speech** discurso *m.*  
**spend** (*money*) gastar ; (*time*) pasar  
**spoon** cuchara *f.* ; **teaspoon** cucharita *f.*  
**spring** (*season*) primavera *f.*  
**squash** calabaza *f.*  
**stairs** escalera *f.* ; (*steps*) escalón *m.*  
**stamp** sello *m.*  
**stand up** ponerse de pie ; **be standing** estar de pie  
**state** estado *m.*  
**station** (*of railway*) estación *f.*  
**stay** quedar, quedarse ; **stay in bed** guardar cama  
**steal** robar  
**steamer** vapor *m.*  
**steel** acero *m.*  
**step** paso *m.*  
**stick** pegar  
**still** todavía ; aun (*or aún*)  
**stocking** media *m.*  
**stone** piedra *f.*  
**stop** (*movement*) detenerse, pararse ; (*leave off*) dejar (de) ; cesar (de)  
**story** cuento *m.* ; historia *f.*  
**straight** derecho -a  
**strange** extraño -a, particular  
**stranger** extranjero -a *m. and f.* ; (*unknown*) desconocido -a *m. and f.* ; (*from out of town*) forastero -a *m. and f.*  
**street** calle *f.*  
**street-car** tranvía *m.*  
**strength** fuerza *f.*  
**stripe** raya *f.*  
**strong** fuerte  
**study** estudio *m.* ; *vb.* estudiar  
**subscribe** suscribirse (*a*)  
**success** éxito *m.*  
**such, such a, tal**  
**suffer** sufrir  
**sugar** azúcar *m.*  
**suit** traje *m.* ; **it suits** conviene  
**suitable** a propósito (*para*)  
**summer** verano *m.*  
**sun** sol *m.*  
**Sunday** domingo *m.*  
**supper** cena *f.* ; **have supper** cenar  
**support** mantener  
**suppose** suponer ; *see section 266*  
**sure** seguro -a  
**surface** superficie *f.*  
**surprise** sorprender  
**surround** rodear  
**sweet** dulce ; **sweets** dulces *m. pl.*  
**swim** nadar  
**system** sistema *m.*

- table** mesa *f.*  
**tablet** tableta *f.*  
**tailor** sastre *m.*  
**take** tomar; (*carry, conduct*) llevar;  
**take off** quitar; **take out** sacar  
**talk** hablar  
**tall** alto -a  
**tank** tanque *m.*  
**taste** gusto *m.*; *vb.* gustar; *intr.* saber a  
**tea** té *m.*  
**teach** enseñar  
**teacher** profesor -a *m. and f.*; maestro *m.*  
**tear** lágrima *f.*  
**tear** romper, *p. p.* roto  
**teaspoon** cucharita *f.*  
**telegraphy** telegrafía *f.*  
**tell** decir, contar (*ue*)  
**term** (*word*) voz *f.*; **terms** condiciones *f. pl.*  
**than** que; de (*before numerals*); del que, de la que, *etc.* (*before dependent clauses*)  
**thank** dar (las) gracias (a), agradecer; **thank you** gracias  
**that** *rel.* que  
**that** *dem.* ese -a -o; aquel, aquella, aquello  
**that** *conj.* que; (*in order that*) para que  
**that one** aquél, aquélla  
**the** el, la, los, las, lo  
**theater** teatro *m.*  
**their** su, sus; el (la, los, las) . . . de ellos (ellas)  
**them** los, les, las; ellos, ellas  
**then** entonces  
**there** allí, allá; (*near person addressed*) ahí; over there por allá;  
**there is** (are) hay
- therefore** por consiguiente; por esto (eso)  
**they** ellos, ellas  
**thick** espeso -a  
**thief** ladrón -ona *m. and f.*  
**thing** cosa *f.*  
**think** pensar (*ie*); (*believe*) creer, opinar; **think of** pensar en; **think about** pensar de  
**thirst** sed *f.*  
**thirsty**: be thirsty tener sed  
**this** *dem.* este -a (-os, -as, -o); **this one** *prn.* éste, ésta, *etc.*  
**those who** los que *etc.*  
**thousand, one thousand**, mil  
**throat** garganta *f.*  
**through** por; **through ticket** billete directo *m.*  
**throw** echar, arrojar; (*throw a ball, stone, etc.*) tirar  
**Thursday** jueves *m.*  
**ticket** billete *m.*  
**till** *prep.* hasta; *conj.* hasta que  
**time** tiempo *m.*; hora *f.*; (*multiplication*) vez *f.*; **what time is it** qué hora es; **the first time** la primera vez; **on time** a tiempo; **have a good time** divertirse (*ie*); **be behind time** estar atrasado  
**time-table** itinerario *m.*  
**tin** estafío *m.*  
**tired** cansado -a  
**title** título *m.*  
**to** a, hasta; (*in order to*) para  
**tobacco** tabaco *m.*  
**to-day** hoy  
**together** junto -a  
**to-morrow** mañana; **day after to-morrow** pasado mañana; **to-morrow morning** mañana por la mañana  
**ton** tonelada *f.*



- to-night** esta noche  
**too** (*also*) también; **too** (*much*) demasiado -a; **it's too bad** es lástima  
**tooth** diente *m.*  
**toothache**: he has a toothache le duelen los dientes (*lit.* the teeth ache to him)  
**toward(s)** hacia  
**towel** toalla *f.*  
**tower** torre *f.*  
**town** pueblo *m.*; ciudad *f.*; población *f.*  
**trade** comercio *m.*; mercado *m.*  
**train** tren *m.*  
**traitor** traidor -ora *m. and f.*  
**tramp** gitano *m.*  
**translate** traducir  
**travel** viajar, caminar  
**traveling-bag** maleta *f.* }  
**treasure** tesoro *m.*  
**treat** tratar  
**tree** árbol *m.*  
**tremble** temblar (*ie*) (de); estremecer  
**trial** ensayo *m.*  
**trip** viaje *m.*  
**trousers** pantalones *m. pl.*  
**true** verdadero -a; (*faithful*) fiel; **it is true** es verdad, es cierto  
**trunk** baúl *m.*  
**trust** fiarse (en)  
**truth** verdad *f.*  
**try** (*test*) probar (*ue*); (*tempt*) tentar (*ie*); (*endeavor*) tratar (de), procurar, esforzarse (*ue*) (a)  
**Tuesday** martes *m.*  
**Tunis** Túnez  
**turn** (*turn around*) volverse (*ue*); (*become*) ponerse, hacerse; (*a corner*) dar vuelta a; **turn out well** salir bien  
**twice** dos veces  
**type** tipo *m.*  
**typewriter** máquina de escribir *f.*  
**ugly** feo -a  
**umbrella** paraguas *m.*  
**uncle** tío *m.*; **uncle(s) and aunt(s)** tíos *m. pl.*  
**understand** comprender; entender (*ie*)  
**unfortunate** desdichado -a, desgraciado -a  
**unhappy** infeliz  
**United States** Estados Unidos *m. pl.*  
**unity** unidad *f.*  
**unless** a menos que  
**unpermitted** no permitido  
**until** *prep.* hasta; *conj.* hasta que  
**up** arriba  
**us** nos, nosotros -as; **to us** nos  
**use** usar, emplear, servirse (*i*) de  
**useful** útil  
**usual** común  
**usually** por lo común; de costumbre  
**vacant** vacante  
**valise** maleta *f.*  
**vapor** vapor *m.*  
**various** vario -a  
**vary** variar (de)  
**vegetable** legumbre *f.*  
**verse** copla *f.*  
**very** muy; mucho  
**vest** chaleco *m.*  
**village** aldea *f.*  
**visit** visitar; visita *f.*  
**voice** voz *f.*  
**volume** tomo *m.*; volumen *m.*  
**vowel** vocal *m.*

- wages** jornada *f.*  
**wait (for)** esperar, aguardar  
**waiter** mozo *m.*; camarero *m.*  
**wake (up)** despertar (*ie*)  
**walk** andar; ir; paseo *m.*; take a walk dar un paseo, ir a paseo  
**wall** muro *m.*; (*inner wall of house*) pared *f.*; (*offortification*) muralla *f.*  
**want** (*lack*) carecer de; (*wish*) querer, desear  
**war** guerra *f.*  
**warm** caliente, cálido -a; I am warm tengo calor; it is warm hace calor; warm water agua caliente  
**warn** advertir (*ie*)  
**wash** lavar  
**wash-basin** jofaina *f.*; palangana *f.*  
**watch** reloj *m.*; *vb.* mirar  
**watchman** guardia *m.*  
**water** agua *f.*  
**wax** cera *f.*  
**way** camino *m.*; dirección *f.*; (*manner*) manera *f.*; modo *m.*; not . . . in any way no . . . en nada  
**we** nosotros -as  
**wealth** riqueza *f.*  
**wealthy** rico -a, opulento -a  
**weapon** arma *f.*  
**wear** llevar  
**weather** tiempo *m.*; be good weather hacer buen tiempo  
**wedding** boda *f.*  
**Wednesday** miércoles *m.*  
**week** semana *f.*; in a week en ocho días; in two weeks en quince días  
**weep** llorar  
**weigh** pesar  
**weight** peso *m.*  
**well** bueno -a; bien de salud *adv.* bien  
**west** oeste *m.*  
**wet** mojado -a; get wet mojarse  
**wharf** muelle *m.*  
**what** *prn. rel.* lo que; *interrog.* qué; (*which*) cuál; what is mine lo mío  
**whatever is** *neuter article with adj.*  
**wheel** rueda *f.*  
**when** cuando; *interrog.* cuándo  
**whenever** cuando, cuandoquiera que, siempre que  
**where** donde; *interrog.* dónde  
**whether** si; (*after dudar etc.*) que  
**which** que, el cual, el que; *interrog.* cuál  
**while** (*time*) tiempo; *conj.* mientras, mientras que  
**white** blanco -a  
**who** que, el cual, el que, quien; *interrog.* quién  
**whose** cuyo -a; *interrog.* de quién  
**wicked** malo -a  
**wide** ancho -a  
**widow** viuda *f.*  
**widower** viudo *m.*  
**width** anchura *f.*; ancho *m.*  
**wife** mujer *f.*; señora *f.*; esposa *f.*  
**will** (*be willing*) querer (*ie*); *otherwise will denotes future time*  
**win** ganar  
**wind** viento *m.*  
**window** ventana *f.*  
**windy**: it is windy hace (hay) viento  
**wine** vino *m.*  
**winter** invierno *m.*  
**wire** hilo *m.*  
**wish** querer (*ie*), desear  
**with** con  
**without** sin  
**woman** mujer *f.*; young woman joven *f.*  
**wood** madera *f.*; (*variety of wood*) palo *m.*; (*firewood*) leña *f.*

<b>wool</b> lana <i>f.</i>	<b>yard corral</b> <i>m.</i> ; patio <i>m.</i> ; ( <i>measure</i> ) vara <i>f.</i>
<b>word</b> palabra <i>f.</i>	<b>year</b> año <i>m.</i> ; leap year año bisiesto
<b>work</b> trabajo <i>m.</i> ; ( <i>literary or artistic production</i> ) obra <i>f.</i> ; <i>vò.</i> trabajar	<b>yellow</b> amarillo -a
<b>world</b> mundo <i>m.</i>	<b>yes</b> sí
<b>worth</b> : be worth valer	<b>yesterday</b> ayer
<b>wrap</b> abrigo <i>m.</i>	<b>yet</b> todavía, aun ( <i>or</i> aún); as yet hasta ahora
<b>write</b> escribir, <i>p.p.</i> escrito	<b>yield</b> dar
<b>writer</b> el que escribe; ( <i>author</i> ) es- critor	<b>young</b> joven; <b>younger</b> menor
<b>wrong</b> : be wrong no tener razón	<b>your</b> tu; vuestro -a; su, el (la, los, las) . . . de Vd.

# INDEX

Figures refer to sections

- a**, after verbs of motion, 101; 106, 5, *a*  
before direct personal object, 57;  
134  
with infinitives, 106, 1; Appendix II, 2  
**a — en**, 221  
**a lo que**, 167, 3, *a*  
**a ver**, 106, 1, *a*  
absolute superlative, 146  
**acá**, 208, *a*  
**acabar de**, with infinitive, 107, 4  
**acaso**, 213  
accent, 8  
written, 9  
accusative case, *see* direct object  
adjectives  
agreement, 28; 140  
apocopation, 46; 137  
as adverbs, 148  
as nouns, 147  
comparison, 47  
comparison, irregular, 48; 142, 6  
comparison of equality, 50  
comparative, *use*, 142  
compound, 138  
expressing dimension, 155  
gender, 29; 135  
meaning, before or after noun, 139  
modifying two nouns, 140  
plural, 30  
position, 52; 139  
superlative, 145  
superlative absolute, 146  
adverbs, 208 ff.  
in *-mente*, 83; 211, *a*  
position, 216  
agent after passive verb, 270, 2  
agreement of verb with its subject,  
259 ff.  
after relative, 164, 5; 260, *a*  
**al**, with infinitives, 62, *b*; 106, 2  
**algo**, 182; 210, 3; 277, 4  
**alguno**, 179, 2; 180; 181, note; 185  
alguno que otro, 179, 5  
"all," 192  
**allí**, 208, *a, b*  
alphabet, 1  
**andar**, 283  
**ante — delante — antes**, 222  
approximation, 160  
**aquí**, 208, *a, b*  
arithmetical signs, 154  
articles, *see* definite article *and*  
indefinite article  
**así**, in wishes, 282, 3, *c*  
augmentatives, 132  
**bajo — debajo**, 223  
**bastante**, 214, 6  
"become," 295  
**bien**, 216, *b*  
"both," 186; 236  
"but," 232  
**caer**, 284  
**cada vez**, 142, 3  
**caer**, 285  
capitalization, 12  
cardinal numerals, 39; 149  
"certain," 194  
**ciento**, 39, *c*; 137, 3; 152, *b*  
**con** with infinitives, 106, 3; Appendix II, 3

- conditional, 77; 268  
 conditional clauses contrary to fact,  
 112; 279  
 conjugation, 15; Chapter XIV  
 conjunctions, 232 ff.  
**conocer**, 286  
**conque**, 214, 9  
 consonants, 5  
   spelling for consonant sounds, 7  
 correlatives, 236  
**cosa**, 160; 176, 2; 182; 183  
**cuál**, relative pronoun, 168  
**cuál**, interrogative pronoun, 174  
**cuál . . . cuál**, indefinite correlatives,  
 168, 1  
**cualquiera**, 197, 3  
**cuán**, 177, 3  
**cuando**, 165, *b*; 209, *e*  
**cuanto**, relative pronoun, 170  
   **cuanto — tanto**, 142, 1  
**cuánto**, interrogative pronoun, 175  
**cuatro**, 149, 3  
**cuyo**, relative pronoun, 169  
**cúyo**, interrogative pronoun, 172,  
 2, *b*
- dar**, 287  
 dates, 40, *c, d*  
 days, 43  
**de**, before collective numerals, 152, *d*  
   between words in apposition, 128,  
   3; 237, 8  
   denotes agent, 270, 2  
   denotes means, 276, 6  
   denotes possession, 33  
   with infinitives, 106, 4; 277, 2;  
   Appendix II, 4  
   **de a**, 157, *b*; 230  
**deber de**, 100, *c*; Appendix II, 7  
**decir**, followed by noun clause, 104, *a*  
 definite article  
   as demonstrative, 162, 6  
   for possessive adjective, 56, *b*;  
   161, 2  
   forms, 21; 123  
   omission, 126; 179, 1  
   repeated, 141  
   uses, 26; 124  
**dejar**  
   with infinitive, 104, *b*  
   **dejar de**, 100, *c*  
 demonstratives, 34; 162  
   **de los que, de estos que**, = "the  
   sort of," 162, 6, *c, d*  
 dimensions, 155  
 diminutives, 132, 2; 214, 8  
 diphthongs, 3  
 direct object, 57; 134; 203, 2  
 distance, 156  
 divisions of day, 45  
**donde**, 165, *a*; 208, *f*
- "each," 189; 190  
**echar**, 288  
 "either," 187; 236; 261, *d*  
**el**, feminine, 123, *a*  
   **el cual**, 167  
   **el que**, 108; 162, 6; 167  
   **el que**, after comparatives, 143  
 "else," 183  
**en**, 221; 225; 274, 5  
   **en ésta**, 162, 4  
**estar**, 25  
   conjugation, 250  
   ethical dative, 204  
 "ever," 197  
 "every," 191  
 exclamations, 177
- faltar**, 289  
 family names, 113, 2, note  
 "few," 185  
 "former . . . latter," 162, 3  
**fulano**, 196, 4
- gender, 20; 129  
 gerund, 274  
 "give," 287

**grande**, 46, 2; 137, 1  
**gusta**, 99

**haber**

auxiliary, 70; 71; 276  
 conjugation, 250  
 finite verb, page 229, note  
 impersonal, 253  
**haber de**, with infinitive, 107, 3

**hacer**

with infinitive, 104, *c*  
 idiomatic uses, 58; 64; 290

**hacia**, 208, *c*

**hasta**, 226; 227

**hay que**, with infinitive, 107, 2

**hème aquí**, *see haber*, 250

idiomatic expressions, 23

(The following references to idioms in Part I are given in order of occurrence to facilitate review.)

una lección de español, 13  
 una carta en español, 23  
 Buenos días, ¿cómo está Vd.? 24  
 está bueno, 25, *e*  
 no hay, 31  
 ¿Cuántos libros hay? 31  
 ¿no es verdad? 38, *d*  
 adiós, 38, *e*  
 hasta luego, 38, *e*  
 ¿A cuántos estamos? 40, *d*  
 ¿Cuántos años tienes? 53, *b*  
 hace buen tiempo, 58, *a*  
 hay sol, 58, *b*  
 ¿Tiene Vd. calor? 58, *c*  
 ¿Quiere Vd.? 58, *e*  
 ¿Qué quiere decir? 58, *e*  
 Aquí se habla español, 61  
 ¿Cómo se llama Vd.? 61  
 Me quito el sombrero, 62  
 al levantarme, 62, *b*  
 hace ocho días, 64, *a, b*  
 ¿Qué hay de nuevo? 64, *c*  
 Muchas gracias, señor, 64, *d*

No hay de qué, 64, *d*

todos los días, 66, *b*

todo el mundo, 66, *b*

¿Qué hora es? — Son las seis menos cuarto, 78

Tiene Vd. su casa, 85

Servidor de Vd., 85

Sírvase Vd., 93

Hágame Vd. el favor de repetir, 93

Tenga Vd. la bondad de cerrar la puerta, 93

¿Qué le parece? 99

a mí me gusta mucho, 99

¿Le gustan las manzanas? 99

Tengo que despedirme, 107, 1

Hay que hablar, 107, 2

Ha de venir, 107, 3

Acabo de llegar, 107, 4

Vuelve a gritar, 107, 5

imperative mood, 86; 87; 277, 5

imperfect subjunctive as a pluperfect, 280

imperfect tense, 65; 264

impersonal verbs

conjugation, 252; 253; 256

substitute for passive, 272; 273

use, 269

indefinite article

form, 127

use, 128

omission, 128; 149, 1

indefinite feminine, 201

indefinite pronouns, 178 ff.

indefinite subject, 196

indirect object, 56

infinitive mood, 55; Lesson XIX;

277; Appendix II

inversion of verb, 115

intensification of statements, 214

interjections, 237

interrogative pronouns, 171 ff.

interrogative sentences, 17

"it," 199

- la**, indefinite, 201  
**le — lo — la — les**, 200  
 letter-writing, 113  
 "little," 185  
**llevar**, as auxiliary, 276, 2, *a*  
**lo**, neuter article, 125  
   neuter pronoun, 206  
   **lo cual**, 167, 3  
   **lo de ayer**, 162, 5, *c*  
   **lo que**, 167, 3  
   **lo que**, for **cuánto**, 177, 3, *a*  
   **lo que es**, 167, 3, *b*  
 "long," referring to time, 209, *d*
- más**, 144  
 measure, 158  
**medio**, 106, 1, *b*; 151, *c*  
**-mente**, 83; 211  
 meter, 292  
 methods of address, 198  
**mismo**, 139, 5, *b*; 205; 209, *b*  
 months, 42  
 "most," as a noun, 145, 7  
**mucho**, 96; 184; 210, 2; 277, 4  
**muy**, 96; 210, 1
- nada**, 182; 210, 3; 277, 4  
 negation, 18; 212  
 negative indefinite expressions after  
   comparatives, 142, 4  
   neuter article, 125; 208, *d*  
   neuter pronouns, 206  
**ni**, 212, 4; 236  
**ninguno**, 179, 2; 180; 181, note  
**no**, 212  
   position, 118; 212  
   redundant after comparatives,  
     142, 5
- nouns**  
   gender, 20; 129  
   number, 22; 130  
   idiomatic use of plural, 133  
   idiomatic use of singular, 66, *c*  
   compound, 131
- numerals**  
   cardinal, 39; 149  
   ordinal, 40; 150  
   fractional, 151  
   collective, 152  
   multiplicative, 153
- o**, 232, 2  
**ojalá**, 282  
 "other," 188  
**otro**, 183; 188
- para**, 229; 230, 2  
   with infinitives, 106, 5  
**parte**, 151, *a*; 208, *c*  
**participle**, 67  
   absolute constructions, 276, 5, 7  
   past, 69; 249; 276  
   present, 68; 274  
**passive voice**, 270; 271  
   substitutes for, 271; 272; 273  
**perfect tense**, 70  
   use, 73  
**periphrastic conjugation**, 258; 275  
**personal a**, 57  
**personal endings**, 14  
**personal pronouns**, 36; 79; 80; 81;  
   82; 198; 200  
   position of objective pronouns,  
     81; 207  
   position with present participle,  
     68, *a*  
   position with imperative, 91; 92  
   prepositional (disjunctive) forms,  
     82; 202  
   redundant, 203  
   two object pronouns, 94; 203  
   = "some" with **hay**, 95; 179, 4  
**pluperfect tense**, 71  
**poco**, 185; 277, 4  
**poder**, 291  
**poner**, 292  
**por**, 217; 229; 270, 2; 272, *a*  
   with infinitives, 106, 6

- position of adjectives, 52; 139  
 of adverbs, 117; 212; 216  
 of infinitive, 120, *a*  
 of predicate adjective, 116  
 of subject of participle and infinitive, 121  
 of subject pronoun, 119  
 possession denoted by *de*, 33  
 possessive adjectives, 37; 97  
 possessive pronouns, 98; 161  
 prepositions, 217 to 231  
 before clauses, 231  
 before infinitives, Appendix II  
 double, 230  
**prestar**, 293  
 preterit tense, 63  
 radical changes, 63, *c*  
 use, 63; 65, *a*; 73, 2  
 price, 157  
 progressive action, 258; 275  
**propio**, 205, *a*  
**pues**, 233, 1  
 punctuation, 11; page 101, note 1
- que**  
 conjunction, 233, 2; 234; 277, 4;  
 279  
 a *que*, 233, 2, *c*  
 to intensify, 214, 3  
 relative pronoun, 75; 165  
 for *cuando*, 165, *b*
- qué**, interrogative pronoun, 173;  
 174, *a*  
 in exclamations, 177, 1; 128, 6  
**qué de**, 177, 2  
**qué tal**, 176, 1  
**qué tante**, 176, 4
- querer**, 58, *c*  
**quien**, relative pronoun, 166  
**quién**, interrogative pronoun, 172  
 in wishes, 282, 3, *d*
- quién . . . quién**, indefinite correlatives, 166, 5  
**quisiera**, 112, *b*
- radical-changing verbs, 54; 89; 244  
 to 247  
 rates, 159  
**recién**, 211, 2  
 reciprocal verbs, 190; 257  
 reflexive verbs, 59; 60; 61; 92;  
 255  
 impersonal, 256; 273  
 substitute for passive, 272  
 relative pronouns, 75; 108; 163 ff.
- saber**, 286; 291  
 "said," 195  
**se la escribí**, 94, *c*  
 seasons, 44  
**ser**  
 as auxiliary, 254; 270, 1; 276, 3  
 as auxiliary, substitutes for, 270,  
 1, *a*  
 idiomatic uses, 295  
 impersonal, 269, 2  
**ser** and *estar*, 25  
**ser de**, with infinitive, 107, 6  
**servir**, 294  
**si**, 112, *c*; 214, 4  
 in wishes, 282, 3, *e*  
**si**, 212, 6  
*si que*, 214, 2  
**sino**, 232, 4  
**sobrar**, 289  
 subjunctive mood, 88; 109; 278 ff.  
 as imperative, 90; 91  
 future tense, 281  
 imperfect tense, 110; 279; 280  
 in dependent clauses, 109; 278  
 in unreal conditions, 112; 279  
 in wishes, 90, 2; 282  
 sequence of tenses after, 111  
 with adverbs of doubt, 213  
 "such," 193  
 suffixes, 132, 4  
 superlative, 47; 48; 145; 146  
 absolute, 146  
 syllabication, 10



**tanto**

- to intensify, 214, 5
- with comparatives, 142
- tanto (tan) . . . como, 50

tardar en, 209, *d*, (1)

**tener**

- as auxiliary, 276, 2
- idiomatic uses, 53, *b*; 58, *c*; 85; 296
- tener que, with infinitive, 107, 1

**tenses, use**

- future, 76; 266
- future perfect, 267
- imperfect, 65; 264
- perfect, 70; 73
- pluperfect, 71
- present, 16; 262
- preterit, 63; 65, *a*; 73, 2
- preterit perfect, 265
- sequence of, 111

"than," 49; 143

"the . . . the," correlatives, 142, 1

time of day, 78

todo, 191; 192; 203, *a*; 212, 5

triphthongs, 4

tú, 36, *a*

uno a otro, 190

uno u otro, 187

uno y otro, 186; 190

unos, 179, 3

with numbers, 149, 2

Usía, 198, 1, *a*

usted, 36, *a*; 80, *a*; 198

valer, 297

vaya, 237, 6

**verb**

forms, 238 ff. *For particular verbs, see list, Appendix I*

compound tenses, 120; 241

defective, 251

impersonal, 252; 253; 269

impersonal reflexive, 256; 273

inceptive, 242, note, *a*, 10, page 212; 295, *a* (2)

in *-lar* and *-uar*, 242, *d*

in *-uir*, 248

irregular, 250

irregular past participles, 249

orthographic changes, 242

passive voice, 254; 270; 271

passive voice, substitutes for, 271; 272; 273

periphrastic conjugation, 258; 275

principal parts, 243

radical-changing, 244 ff.

reciprocal, 190; 257

reflexive, 255; 272

*See also* tenses, participle, subjunctive mood, *etc.*

verbal idioms, 283 to 297

vez, 41

volver a, with infinitive, 107, 5

vos, 198, 2, *a*

vosotros, 36, *a*; 198, 2

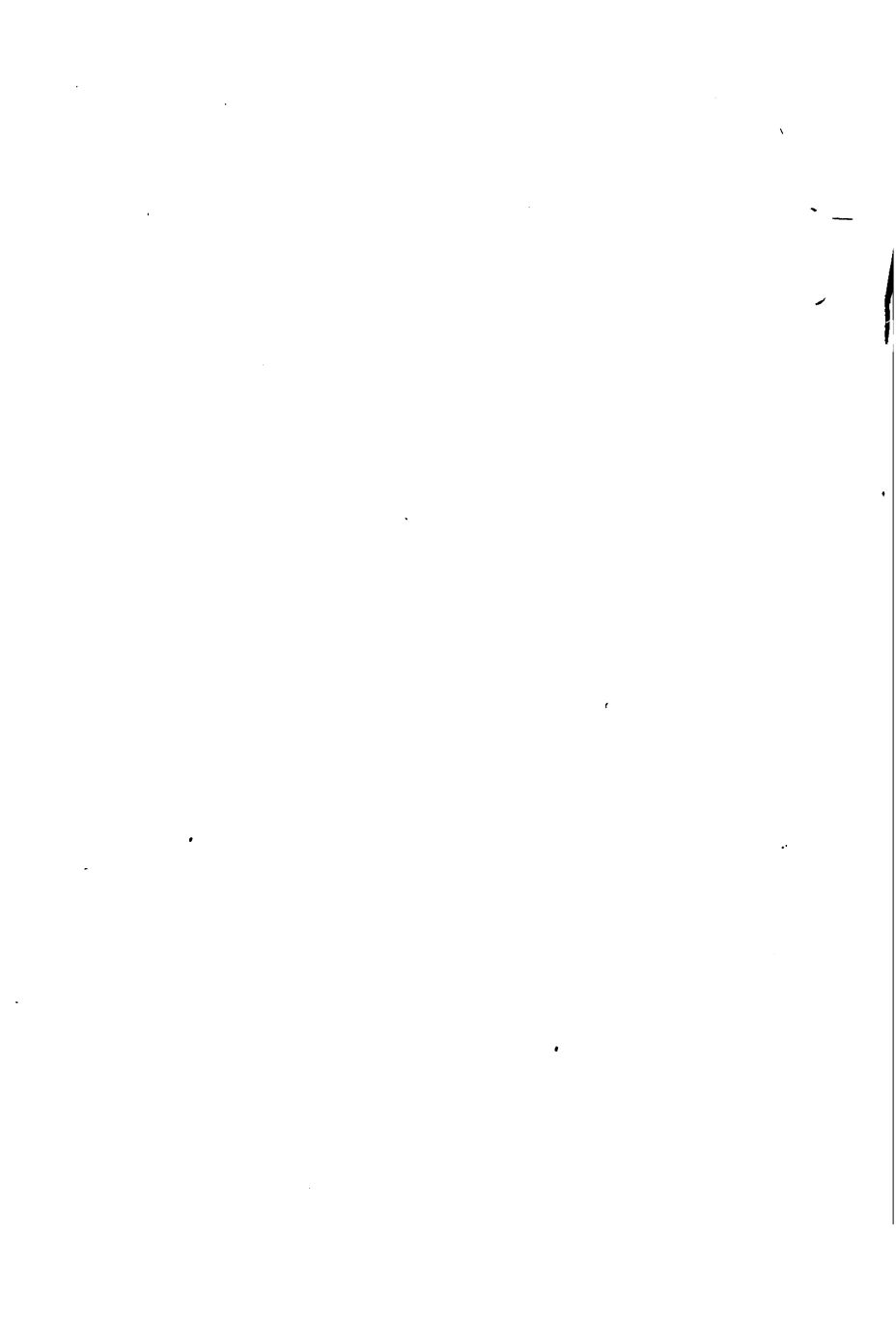
vowels, 2

wishes, 90, 2; 282

word-order, 114

y, 232, 1

ya, 209, *c*



**UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY  
BERKELEY**

**Return to desk from which borrowed.**

**This book is DUE on the last date stamped below.**

MAR 26 1953

EDUCATION LIBRARY

LD 21-100m-7,'52(A2528s16)476

YR 36287

U.C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



C024192010

633500

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

